

**FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION
WILLIAM J. HUGHES TECHNICAL CENTER (WJHTC)
ATLANTIC CITY INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT, NEW JERSEY**

BIDDING SUBMISSION

SPECIFICATIONS

17 DECEMBER 2018

MASER CONSULTING P.A. PROJECT NO. 18500002G

Contract Number DTFAC-14-D-00016

Requisition/Reference No. CT-18-00164-A2

WORK ORDER NO. 2017008

SPECIFICATIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS**DIVISION 01**

01 33 00	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
01 57 19	TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS
01 78 23	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

DIVISION 02

02 41 00	DEMOLITION AND DECONSTRUCTION
02 82 13.00 10	ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

DIVISION 03

03 30 00	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
----------	------------------------

DIVISION 05

05 12 00	STRUCTURAL STEEL
05 30 00	STEEL DECKS
05 51 33	METAL LADDERS

DIVISION 07

07 22 00	ROOF AND DECK INSTALLATION
07 54 19	POLY VINYL-CHLORINE ROOFING
07 60 00	FLASHING AND SHEET METAL
07 72 00	ROOF HATCHES
07 72 73	ROOF EDGE PROTECTION SYSTEMS
07 92 00	JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 08

08 11 13	STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES
08 71 00	DOOR HARDWARE

DIVISION 09

09 22 00	SUPPORTS FOR PLASTER AND GYPSUM BOARD
09 29 00	GYPSUM BOARD
09 51 00	ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS
09 90 00	PAINTS AND COATINGS

DIVISION 21

21 22 00.00 40	CLEAN AGENT FIRE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS
----------------	--

DIVISION 23

23 00 00	AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS
23 07 00	THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS
23 09 54	DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL SYSTEMS
23 31 13.00 40	METAL DUCTS

DIVISION 26

26 00 00.00 20	BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIAL AND METHODS
26 20 00	INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM
26 41 00	LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM

SECTION 01 33 00

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 DEFINITIONS

1.1.1 Submittal Descriptions (SD)

Submittals requirements are specified in the technical sections. Submittals are identified by Submittal Description (SD) numbers and titles as follows:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Submittals which are required prior to or commencing work on site.

Certificates of insurance

Surety bonds

List of proposed Subcontractors

List of proposed products

Construction progress schedule

Network Analysis Schedule (NAS)

Submittal register

Schedule of prices or Earned Value Report

Health and safety plan

Work plan

Quality Control(QC) plan

Environmental protection plan

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Drawings, diagrams and schedules specifically prepared to illustrate some portion of the work.

Diagrams and instructions from a manufacturer or fabricator for use in producing the product and as aids to the Contractor for integrating the product or system into the project.

Drawings prepared by or for the Contractor to show how multiple systems and interdisciplinary work will be coordinated.

SD-03 Product Data

Catalog cuts, illustrations, schedules, diagrams, performance charts,

instructions and brochures illustrating size, physical appearance and other characteristics of materials, systems or equipment for some portion of the work.

Samples of warranty language when the contract requires extended product warranties.

SD-04 Samples

Fabricated or unfabricated physical examples of materials, equipment or workmanship that illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of a material or product and establish standards by which the work can be judged.

Color samples from the manufacturer's standard line (or custom color samples if specified) to be used in selecting or approving colors for the project.

Field samples and mock-ups constructed on the project site establish standards by which the ensuring work can be judged. Includes assemblies or portions of assemblies which are to be incorporated into the project and those which will be removed at conclusion of the work.

SD-05 Design Data

Design calculations, mix designs, analyses or other data pertaining to a part of work.

SD-06 Test Reports

Report signed by authorized official of testing laboratory that a material, product or system identical to the material, product or system to be provided has been tested in accord with specified requirements. Unless specified in another section, testing must have been within three years of date of contract award for the project.

Report which includes findings of a test required to be performed by the Contractor on an actual portion of the work or prototype prepared for the project before shipment to job site.

Report which includes finding of a test made at the job site or on sample taken from the job site, on portion of work during or after installation.

Investigation reports.

Daily logs and checklists.

Final acceptance test and operational test procedure.

SD-07 Certificates

Statements printed on the manufacturer's letterhead and signed by responsible officials of manufacturer of product, system or material attesting that the product, system, or material meets specification requirements. Must be dated after award of project contract and clearly name the project.

Document required of Contractor, or of a manufacturer, supplier,

installer or Subcontractor through Contractor. The document purpose is to further promote the orderly progression of a portion of the work by documenting procedures, acceptability of methods, or personnel qualifications.

Confined space entry permits.

Text of posted operating instructions.

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Preprinted material describing installation of a product, system or material, including special notices and (MSDS) concerning impedances, hazards and safety precautions.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Data that is furnished by the manufacturer, or the system provider, to the equipment operating and maintenance personnel, including manufacturer's help and product line documentation necessary to maintain and install equipment. This data is needed by operating and maintenance personnel for the safe and efficient operation, maintenance and repair of the item.

This data is intended to be incorporated in an operations and maintenance manual or control system.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Documentation to record compliance with technical or administrative requirements or to establish an administrative mechanism.

Submittals required for Guiding Principle Validation (GPV) or Third Party Certification (TPC).

Special requirements necessary to properly close out a construction contract. For example, Record Drawings and as-built drawings. Also, submittal requirements necessary to properly close out a major phase of construction on a multi-phase contract.

1.1.2 Approving Authority

Office or designated person authorized to approve submittal.

1.1.3 Work

As used in this section, on- and off-site construction required by contract documents, including labor necessary to produce submittals, construction, materials, products, equipment, and systems incorporated or to be incorporated in such construction.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation. Submit the following in accordance with this section.

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Submittal Register

1.3 SUBMITTAL CLASSIFICATION

Submittals are classified as follows:

1.3.1 Government Approved (G)

Government approval is required for extensions of design, critical materials, deviations, equipment whose compatibility with the entire system must be checked, and other items as designated by the Contracting Officer. Within the terms of the Contract Clause SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONSTRUCTION, they are considered to be "shop drawings."

1.4 PREPARATION

1.4.1 Transmittal Form

1.4.2 Source Drawings for Shop Drawings

The entire set of Source Drawing files (DWG) will not be provided to the Contractor. Only those requested by the Contractor to prepare shop drawings may be provided. Request the specific Drawing Number only for the preparation of Shop Drawings. These drawings may only be provided after award.

1.4.2.1 Terms and Conditions

Data contained on these electronic files must not be used for any purpose other than as a convenience in the preparation of construction data for the referenced project. Any other use or reuse shall be at the sole risk of the Contractor and without liability or legal exposure to the Government. The Contractor must make no claim and waives to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claim or cause of action of any nature against the Government, its agents or sub consultants that may arise out of or in connection with the use of these electronic files. The Contractor must, to the fullest extent permitted by law, indemnify and hold the Government harmless against all damages, liabilities or costs, including reasonable attorney's fees and defense costs, arising out of or resulting from the use of these electronic files.

These electronic Source Drawing files are not construction documents. Differences may exist between the Source Drawing files and the corresponding construction documents. The Government makes no representation regarding the accuracy or completeness of the electronic Source Drawing files, nor does it make representation to the compatibility of these files with the Contractor hardware or software. In the event that a conflict arises between the signed and sealed construction documents prepared by the Government and the furnished Source Drawing files, the signed and sealed construction documents govern. The Contractor is responsible for determining if any conflict exists. Use of these Source Drawing files does not relieve the Contractor of duty to fully comply with the contract documents, including and without limitation, the need to check, confirm and coordinate the work of all contractors for the project. If the Contractor uses, duplicates or modifies these electronic Source Drawing files for use in producing construction data related to this contract, remove all previous indicia of ownership (seals, logos, signatures, initials and dates).

1.4.3 Electronic File Format

Provide submittals in electronic format, with the exception of material samples required for SD-04 Samples items. In addition to the electronic submittal, provide three hard copies of the submittals. Compile the submittal file as a single, complete document, to include the Transmittal Form described within. Name the electronic submittal file specifically according to its contents, coordinate the file naming convention with the Contracting Officer. Electronic files must be of sufficient quality that all information is legible. **Electronic format shall be in PDF, unless otherwise specified or directed by the Contracting Officer.** Generate PDF files from original documents with bookmarks so that the text included in the PDF file is both searchable and can be copied. If documents are scanned, Optical Character Resolution (OCR) routines are required. Index and bookmark files exceeding 30 pages to allow efficient navigation of the file. When required, the electronic file must include a valid electronic signature, or scan of a signature.

Email electronic submittal documents fewer than 10MB to an email address as directed by the Contracting Officer. Provide electronic documents over 10MB on an optical disc, or through an electronic file sharing system such as the AMRDEC SAFE Web Application located at the following website:
<https://safe.amrdec.army.mil/safe/>.

Provide hard copies of submittals when requested by the Contracting Officer. Up to 6 additional hard copies of any submittal may be requested at the discretion of the Contracting Officer, at no additional cost to the Government.

1.5 QUANTITY OF SUBMITTALS

1.5.1 Number of Copies of SD-02 Shop Drawings

Submit six copies of submittals of shop drawings requiring review and approval only by QC organization and seven copies of shop drawings requiring review and approval by Contracting Officer.

1.5.2 Number of Copies of SD-03 Product Data and SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

1.5.3 Number of Samples SD-04 Samples

- a. Submit two samples, or two sets of samples showing range of variation, of each required item. One approved sample or set of samples will be retained by approving authority and one will be returned to Contractor.
- b. Submit one sample panel or provide one sample installation where directed. Include components listed in technical section or as directed.
- c. Submit one sample installation, where directed.
- d. Submit one sample of non-solid materials.

1.5.4 Number of Copies SD-05 Design Data and SD-07 Certificates

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

1.5.5 Number of Copies SD-06 Test Reports and SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Submit in compliance with quantity and quality requirements specified for shop drawings other than field test results that will be submitted with QC reports.

1.5.6 Number of Copies of SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Submit five copies of O&M Data to the Contracting Officer for review and approval.

1.5.7 Number of Copies of SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals and SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Unless otherwise specified, submit three sets of administrative submittals.

1.6 VARIATIONS

Variations from contract requirements require both Designer of Record (DOR) and Government approval pursuant to contract Clause FAR 52.236-21 and will be considered where advantageous to Government.

1.6.1 Considering Variations

Discussion with Contracting Officer prior to submission, after consulting with the DOR, will help ensure functional and quality requirements are met and minimize rejections and re-submittals. When contemplating a variation which results in lower cost, consider submission of the variation as a Value Engineering Change Proposal (VECP).

Specifically point out variations from contract requirements in transmittal letters. Failure to point out deviations may result in the Government requiring rejection and removal of such work at no additional cost to the Government.

1.6.2 Proposing Variations

When proposing variation, deliver written request to the Contracting Officer, with documentation of the nature and features of the variation and why the variation is desirable and beneficial to Government, including the DOR's written analysis and approval. If lower cost is a benefit, also include an estimate of the cost savings. In addition to documentation required for variation, include the submittals required for the item. Clearly mark the proposed variation in all documentation.

1.6.3 Warranting that Variations are Compatible

When delivering a variation for approval, Contractor, including its Designer(s) of Record, warrants that this contract has been reviewed to establish that the variation, if incorporated, will be compatible with other elements of work.

1.6.4 Review Schedule is Modified

In addition to normal submittal review period, a period of 10 working days will be allowed for consideration by the Government of submittals with

variations.

1.7 SUBMITTAL REGISTER

Prepare and maintain submittal register, as the work progresses. Do not change data which is output in columns (c), (d), (e), and (f) as delivered by Government; retain data which is output in columns (a), (g), (h), and (i) as approved. A submittal register showing items of equipment and materials for which submittals are required by the specifications is provided as an attachment. This list may not be all inclusive and additional submittals may be required. The Government will provide the initial submittal register in electronic format with the following fields completed, to the extent that will be required by the Government during subsequent usage.

Column (c): Lists specification section in which submittal is required.

Column (d): Lists each submittal description (SD No. and type, e.g. SD-02 Shop Drawings) required in each specification section.

Column (e): Lists one principal paragraph in specification section where a material or product is specified. This listing is only to facilitate locating submitted requirements. Do not consider entries in column (e) as limiting project requirements.

Thereafter, the Contractor is to track all submittals by maintaining a complete list, including completion of all data columns, including dates on which submittals are received and returned by the Government.

1.7.1 Use of Submittal Register

Submit submittal register. Submit with QC plan and project schedule. Verify that all submittals required for project are listed and add missing submittals. Coordinate and complete the following fields on the register submitted with the QC plan and the project schedule:

Column (a) Activity Number: Activity number from the project schedule.

Column (g) Contractor Submit Date: Scheduled date for approving authority to receive submittals.

Column (h) Contractor Approval Date: Date Contractor needs approval of submittal.

Column (i) Contractor Material: Date that Contractor needs material delivered to Contractor control.

1.7.2 Contractor Use of Submittal Register

Update the following fields in the Government-furnished submittal register program or equivalent fields in program utilized by Contractor with each submittal throughout contract.

Column (b) Transmittal Number: Contractor assigned list of consecutive numbers.

Column (j) Action Code (k): Date of action used to record

Contractor's review when forwarding submittals to QC.

Column (l) List date of submittal transmission.

Column (q) List date approval received.

1.7.3 Approving Authority Use of Submittal Register

Update the following fields in the Government-furnished submittal register program or equivalent fields in program utilized by Contractor.

Column (b) Transmittal Number: Contractor assigned list of consecutive numbers.

Column (l) List date of submittal receipt.

Column (m) through (p) List Date related to review actions.

Column (q) List date returned to Contractor.

1.7.4 Copies Delivered to the Government

Deliver one copy of submittal register updated by Contractor to Government with each invoice request.

1.8 SCHEDULING

Schedule and submit concurrently submittals covering component items forming a system or items that are interrelated. Include certifications to be submitted with the pertinent drawings at the same time. No delay damages or time extensions will be allowed for time lost in late submittals.

- a. Coordinate scheduling, sequencing, preparing and processing of submittals with performance of work so that work will not be delayed by submittal processing. Allow for potential resubmittal of requirements.
- b. Submittals called for by the contract documents will be listed on the register. If a submittal is called for but does not pertain to the contract work, the Contractor is to include the submittal in the register and annotate it "N/A" with a brief explanation. Approval by the Contracting Officer does not relieve the Contractor of supplying submittals required by the contract documents but which have been omitted from the register or marked "N/A."
- c. Re-submit register and annotate monthly by the Contractor with actual submission and approval dates. When all items on the register have been fully approved, no further re-submittal is required.
- d. Carefully control procurement operations to ensure that each individual submittal is made on or before the Contractor scheduled submittal date shown on the approved "Submittal Register."

1.9 GOVERNMENT APPROVING AUTHORITY

When approving authority is Contracting Officer, the Government will:

- a. Note date on which submittal was received.
- b. Review submittals for approval within scheduling period specified and only for conformance with project design concepts and compliance with

contract documents.

- c. Identify returned submittals with one of the actions defined in paragraph REVIEW NOTATIONS and with markings appropriate for action indicated.

Upon completion of review of submittals requiring Government approval, stamp and date submittals. Two (2) copies of the submittal will be retained by the Contracting Officer and 2 copies of the submittal will be returned to the Contractor.

1.9.1 Review Notations

Submittals will be returned to the Contractor with the following notations:

- a. Submittals marked "approved" or "accepted" authorize the Contractor to proceed with the work covered.
- b. Submittals marked "approved as noted" or "approved, except as noted, resubmittal not required," authorize the Contractor to proceed with the work covered provided he takes no exception to the corrections.
- c. Submittals marked "not approved" or "disapproved," or "revise and resubmit," indicate noncompliance with the contract requirements or design concept, or that submittal is incomplete. Resubmit with appropriate changes. No work shall proceed for this item until resubmittal is approved.
- d. Submittals marked "not reviewed" will indicate submittal has been previously reviewed and approved, is not required, does not have evidence of being reviewed and approved by Contractor, or is not complete. A submittal marked "not reviewed" will be returned with an explanation of the reason it is not reviewed. Resubmit submittals returned for lack of review by Contractor or for being incomplete, with appropriate action, coordination, or change.

1.10 DISAPPROVED OR REJECTED SUBMITTALS

Contractor shall make corrections required by the Contracting Officer. If the Contractor considers any correction or notation on the returned submittals to constitute a change to the contract drawings or specifications; notice as required under the Contract clause CHANGES, is to be given to the Contracting Officer. Contractor is responsible for the dimensions and design of connection details and construction of work. Failure to point out deviations may result in the Government requiring rejection and removal of such work at the Contractor's expense.

If changes are necessary to submittals, make such revisions and submission of the submittals in accordance with the procedures above. No item of work requiring a submittal change is to be accomplished until the changed submittals are approved.

1.11 APPROVED/ACCEPTED SUBMITTALS

The Contracting Officer's approval or acceptance of submittals is not to be construed as a complete check, and indicates only that.

Approval or acceptance will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for any error which may exist, as the Contractor under the

Contractor Quality Control (CQC) requirements of this contract is responsible for.

After submittals have been approved or accepted by the Contracting Officer, no resubmittal for the purpose of substituting materials or equipment will be considered unless accompanied by an explanation of why a substitution is necessary.

1.12 APPROVED SAMPLES

Approval of a sample is only for the characteristics or use named in such approval and is not be construed to change or modify any contract requirements. Before submitting samples, the Contractor to assure that the materials or equipment will be available in quantities required in the project. No change or substitution will be permitted after a sample has been approved.

Match the approved samples for materials and equipment incorporated in the work. If requested, approved samples, including those which may be damaged in testing, will be returned to the Contractor, at his expense, upon completion of the contract. Samples not approved will also be returned to the Contractor at its expense, if so requested.

Failure of any materials to pass the specified tests will be sufficient cause for refusal to consider, under this contract, any further samples of the same brand or make of that material. Government reserves the right to disapprove any material or equipment which previously has proved unsatisfactory in service.

Samples of various materials or equipment delivered on the site or in place may be taken by the Contracting Officer for testing. Samples failing to meet contract requirements will automatically void previous approvals. Contractor to replace such materials or equipment to meet contract requirements.

Approval of the Contractor's samples by the Contracting Officer does not relieve the Contractor of his responsibilities under the contract.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 57 19

TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.120	Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response
40 CFR 112	Oil Pollution Prevention
40 CFR 122.26	Storm Water Discharges (Applicable to State NPDES Programs, see section 123.25)
40 CFR 261	Identification and Listing of Hazardous Waste
40 CFR 261.7	Residues of Hazardous Waste in Empty Containers
40 CFR 263	Standards Applicable to Transporters of Hazardous Waste
40 CFR 268	Land Disposal Restrictions
40 CFR 273	Standards For Universal Waste Management
40 CFR 279	Standards for the Management of Used Oil
40 CFR 61	National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants
40 CFR 745	Lead-Based Paint Poisoning Prevention in Certain Residential Structures
40 CFR 761	Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) Manufacturing, Processing, Distribution in Commerce, and Use Prohibitions
49 CFR 171	General Information, Regulations, and Definitions
49 CFR 172	Hazardous Materials Table, Special Provisions, Hazardous Materials Communications, Emergency Response Information, and Training Requirements
49 CFR 173	Shippers - General Requirements for

Shipments and Packagings

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Class I and II Ozone Depleting Substance (ODS)

Class I ODS is defined in Section 602(a) of The Clean Air Act. A list of Class I ODS can be found on the EPA website at the following weblink.

<http://www.epa.gov/ozone/science/ods/classone.html>.

Class II ODS is defined in Section 602(s) of The Clean Air Act. A list of Class II ODS can be found on the EPA website at the following weblink.

<http://www.epa.gov/ozone/science/ods/classtwo.html>.

1.2.2 Contractor Generated Hazardous Waste

Contractor generated hazardous waste is materials that, if abandoned or disposed of, may meet the definition of a hazardous waste. These waste streams would typically consist of material brought on site by the Contractor to execute work, but are not fully consumed during the course of construction. Examples include, but are not limited to, excess paint thinners (i.e. methyl ethyl ketone, toluene), waste thinners, excess paints, excess solvents, waste solvents, excess pesticides, and contaminated pesticide equipment rinse water.

1.2.3 Electronics Waste

Electronics waste is discarded electronic devices intended for salvage, recycling, or disposal.

1.2.4 Environmental Pollution and Damage

Environmental pollution and damage is the presence of chemical, physical, or biological elements or agents which adversely affect human health or welfare; unfavorably alter ecological balances of importance to human life; affect other species of importance to humankind; or degrade the environment aesthetically, culturally or historically.

1.2.5 Environmental Protection

Environmental protection is the prevention/control of pollution and habitat disruption that may occur to the environment during construction. The control of environmental pollution and damage requires consideration of land, water, and air; biological and cultural resources; and includes management of visual aesthetics; noise; solid, chemical, gaseous, and liquid waste; radiant energy and radioactive material as well as other pollutants.

1.2.6 Hazardous Debris

As defined in paragraph SOLID WASTE, debris that contains listed hazardous waste (either on the debris surface, or in its interstices, such as pore structure) in accordance with 40 CFR 261. Hazardous debris also includes debris that exhibits a characteristic of hazardous waste in accordance with 40 CFR 261.

1.2.7 Hazardous Materials

Hazardous materials as defined in 49 CFR 171 and listed in 49 CFR 172.

Hazardous material is any material that: Is regulated as a hazardous material in accordance with 49 CFR 173; or requires a Safety Data Sheet (SDS) in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.120; or during end use, treatment, handling, packaging, storage, transportation, or disposal meets or has components that meet or have potential to meet the definition of a hazardous waste as defined by 40 CFR 261 Subparts A, B, C, or D. Designation of a material by this definition, when separately regulated or controlled by other sections or directives, does not eliminate the need for adherence to that hazard-specific guidance which takes precedence over this section for "control" purposes. Such material includes ammunition, weapons, explosive actuated devices, propellants, pyrotechnics, chemical and biological warfare materials, medical and pharmaceutical supplies, medical waste and infectious materials, bulk fuels, radioactive materials, and other materials such as asbestos, mercury, and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs).

1.2.8 Hazardous Waste

Hazardous Waste is any material that meets the definition of a solid waste and exhibit a hazardous characteristic (ignitability, corrosivity, reactivity, or toxicity) as specified in 40 CFR 261, Subpart C, or contains a listed hazardous waste as identified in 40 CFR 261, Subpart D.

1.2.9 Installation Pest Management Coordinator

Installation Pest Management Coordinator (IPMC) is the individual officially designated by the Installation Commander to oversee the Installation Pest Management Program and the Installation Pest Management Plan.

1.2.10 Land Application

Land Application means spreading or spraying discharge water at a rate that allows the water to percolate into the soil. No sheeting action, soil erosion, discharge into storm sewers, discharge into defined drainage areas, or discharge into the "waters of the United States" must occur. Comply with federal, state, and local laws and regulations.

1.2.11 Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) Permit

MS4 permits are those held by installations to obtain NPDES permit coverage for their stormwater discharges.

1.2.12 National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES)

The NPDES permit program controls water pollution by regulating point sources that discharge pollutants into waters of the United States.

1.2.13 Oily Waste

Oily waste are those materials that are, or were, mixed with Petroleum, Oils, and Lubricants (POLs) and have become separated from that POLs. Oily wastes also means materials, including wastewaters, centrifuge solids, filter residues or sludges, bottom sediments, tank bottoms, and sorbents which have come into contact with and have been contaminated by, POLs and may be appropriately tested and discarded in a manner which is in compliance with other state and local requirements.

This definition includes materials such as oily rags, "kitty litter" sorbent clay and organic sorbent material. These materials may be land filled provided that: It is not prohibited in other state regulations or local ordinances; the amount generated is "de minimus" (a small amount); it is the result of minor leaks or spills resulting from normal process operations; and free-flowing oil has been removed to the practicable extent possible. Large quantities of this material, generated as a result of a major spill or in lieu of proper maintenance of the processing equipment, are a solid waste. As a solid waste, perform a hazardous waste determination prior to disposal. As this can be an expensive process, it is recommended that this type of waste be minimized through good housekeeping practices and employee education.

1.2.14 Pesticide

Pesticide is any substance or mixture of substances intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating any pest, or intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant or desiccant.

1.2.15 Pesticide Treatment Plan

A plan for the prevention, monitoring, and control to eliminate pest infestation.

1.2.16 Pests

Pests are arthropods, birds, rodents, nematodes, fungi, bacteria, viruses, algae, snails, marine borers, snakes, weeds and other organisms (except for human or animal disease-causing organisms) that adversely affect readiness, military operations, or the well-being of personnel and animals; attack or damage real property, supplies, equipment, or vegetation; or are otherwise undesirable.

1.2.17 Project Pesticide Coordinator

The Project Pesticide Coordinator (PPC) is an individual who resides at a Civil Works Project office and who is responsible overseeing of pesticide application on project grounds.

1.2.18 Regulated Waste

Regulated waste are solid wastes that have specific additional federal, state, or local controls for handling, storage, or disposal.

1.2.19 Sediment

Sediment is soil and other debris that have eroded and have been transported by runoff water or wind.

1.2.20 Solid Waste

Solid waste is a solid, liquid, semi-solid or contained gaseous waste. A

solid waste can be a hazardous waste, non-hazardous waste, or non-Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) regulated waste. Types of solid waste typically generated at construction sites may include:

1.2.20.1 Debris

Debris is non-hazardous solid material generated during the construction, demolition, or renovation of a structure that exceeds 2.5-inch particle size that is: a manufactured object; plant or animal matter; or natural geologic material (for example, cobbles and boulders), broken or removed concrete, masonry, and rock asphalt paving; ceramics; roofing paper and shingles. Inert materials may be reinforced with or contain ferrous wire, rods, accessories and weldments. A mixture of debris and other material such as soil or sludge is also subject to regulation as debris if the mixture is comprised primarily of debris by volume, based on visual inspection.

1.2.20.2 Green Waste

Green waste is the vegetative matter from landscaping, land clearing and grubbing, including, but not limited to, grass, bushes, scrubs, small trees and saplings, tree stumps and plant roots. Marketable trees, grasses and plants that are indicated to remain, be re-located, or be re-used are not included.

1.2.20.3 Material not regulated as solid waste

Material not regulated as solid waste is nuclear source or byproduct materials regulated under the Federal Atomic Energy Act of 1954 as amended; suspended or dissolved materials in domestic sewage effluent or irrigation return flows, or other regulated point source discharges; regulated air emissions; and fluids or wastes associated with natural gas or crude oil exploration or production.

1.2.20.4 Non-Hazardous Waste

Non-hazardous waste is waste that is excluded from, or does not meet, hazardous waste criteria in accordance with 40 CFR 263.

1.2.20.5 Recyclables

Recyclables are materials, equipment and assemblies such as doors, windows, door and window frames, plumbing fixtures, glazing and mirrors that are recovered and sold as recyclable, wiring, insulated/non-insulated copper wire cable, wire rope, and structural components. It also includes commercial-grade refrigeration equipment with Freon removed, household appliances where the basic material content is metal, clean polyethylene terephthalate bottles, cooking oil, used fuel oil, textiles, high-grade paper products and corrugated cardboard, stackable pallets in good condition, clean crating material, and clean rubber/vehicle tires. Metal meeting the definition of lead contaminated or lead based paint contaminated may not be included as recyclable if sold to a scrap metal company. Paint cans that meet the definition of empty containers in accordance with 40 CFR 261.7 may be included as recyclable if sold to a scrap metal company.

1.2.20.6 Surplus Soil

Surplus soil is existing soil that is in excess of what is required for

this work, including aggregates intended, but not used, for on-site mixing of concrete, mortars, and paving. Contaminated soil meeting the definition of hazardous material or hazardous waste is not included and must be managed in accordance with paragraph HAZARDOUS MATERIAL MANAGEMENT.

1.2.20.7 Scrap Metal

This includes scrap and excess ferrous and non-ferrous metals such as reinforcing steel, structural shapes, pipe, and wire that are recovered or collected and disposed of as scrap. Scrap metal meeting the definition of hazardous material or hazardous waste is not included.

1.2.20.8 Wood

Wood is dimension and non-dimension lumber, plywood, chipboard, hardboard. Treated or painted wood that meets the definition of lead contaminated or lead based contaminated paint is not included. Treated wood includes, but is not limited to, lumber, utility poles, crossties, and other wood products with chemical treatment.

1.2.21 Surface Discharge

Surface discharge means discharge of water into drainage ditches, storm sewers, creeks or "waters of the United States". Surface discharges are discrete, identifiable sources and require a permit from the governing agency. Comply with federal, state, and local laws and regulations.

1.2.22 Wastewater

Wastewater is the used water and solids from a community that flow to a treatment plant.

1.2.22.1 Stormwater

Stormwater is any precipitation in an urban or suburban area that does not evaporate or soak into the ground, but instead collects and flows into storm drains, rivers, and streams.

1.2.23 Waters of the United States

Waters of the United States means Federally jurisdictional waters, including wetlands, that are subject to regulation under Section 404 of the Clean Water Act or navigable waters, as defined under the Rivers and Harbors Act.

1.2.24 Wetlands

Wetlands are those areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or groundwater at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions.

1.2.25 Universal Waste

The universal waste regulations streamline collection requirements for certain hazardous wastes in the following categories: batteries, pesticides, mercury-containing equipment (for example, thermostats), and lamps (for example, fluorescent bulbs). The rule is designed to reduce hazardous waste in the municipal solid waste (MSW) stream by making it

easier for universal waste handlers to collect these items and send them for recycling or proper disposal. These regulations can be found at [40 CFR 273](#).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES](#):

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Preconstruction Survey; G

Solid Waste Management Permit; G

Regulatory Notifications; G

Environmental Protection Plan; G

Stormwater Notice of Intent (for NPDES coverage under the general permit for construction activities); G

Dirt and Dust Control Plan; G

Contractor Hazardous Material Log; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Laboratory Analysis; G

Inspection Reports; G

Solid Waste Management Report; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Compliance Notebook; G

Stormwater Notice of Termination (for NPDES coverage under the general permit for construction activities); G

Waste Determination Documentation; G

Disposal Documentation for Hazardous and Regulated Waste; G

Assembled Employee Training Records; G

Solid Waste Management Permit; G

Solid Waste Management Report; G

Hazardous Waste/Debris Management; G

Regulatory Notifications; G

Sales Documentation; G

Contractor Certification

As-Built Topographic Survey

Recycling Report; G

1.4 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS

Provide and maintain, during the life of the contract, environmental protection as defined. Plan for and provide environmental protective measures to control pollution that develops during construction practice. Plan for and provide environmental protective measures required to correct conditions that develop during the construction of permanent or temporary environmental features associated with the project. Protect the environmental resources within the project boundaries and those affected outside the limits of permanent work during the entire duration of this Contract. Comply with federal, state, and local regulations pertaining to the environment, including water, air, solid waste, hazardous waste and substances, oily substances, and noise pollution.

Tests and procedures assessing whether construction operations comply with Applicable Environmental Laws may be required. Analytical work must be performed by qualified laboratories; and where required by law, the laboratories must be certified.

1.4.1 Conformance with the Environmental Management System

Perform work under this contract consistent with the policy and objectives identified in the installation's Environmental Management System (EMS). Perform work in a manner that conforms to objectives and targets of the environmental programs and operational controls identified by the EMS. Support Government personnel when environmental compliance and EMS audits are conducted by escorting auditors at the Project site, answering questions, and providing proof of records being maintained. Provide monitoring and measurement information as necessary to address environmental performance relative to environmental, energy, and transportation management goals. In the event an EMS nonconformance or environmental noncompliance associated with the contracted services, tasks, or actions occurs, take corrective and preventative actions. In addition, employees must be aware of their roles and responsibilities under the installation EMS and of how these EMS roles and responsibilities affect work performed under the contract.

Coordinate with the installation's EMS coordinator to identify training needs associated with environmental aspects and the EMS, and arrange training or take other action to meet these needs. Provide training documentation to the Contracting Officer. The Installation Environmental Office will retain associated environmental compliance records. Make EMS Awareness training completion certificates available to Government auditors during EMS audits and include the certificates in the Employee Training Records. See paragraph EMPLOYEE TRAINING RECORDS.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Preconstruction Survey and Protection of Features

This paragraph supplements the Contract Clause PROTECTION OF EXISTING VEGETATION, STRUCTURES, EQUIPMENT, UTILITIES, AND IMPROVEMENTS. Prior to

start of any onsite construction activities, perform a [Preconstruction Survey](#) of the project site with the Contracting Officer, and take photographs showing existing environmental conditions in and adjacent to the site. Submit a report for the record. Include in the report a plan describing the features requiring protection under the provisions of the Contract Clauses, which are not specifically identified on the drawings as environmental features requiring protection along with the condition of trees, shrubs and grassed areas immediately adjacent to the site of work and adjacent to the Contractor's assigned storage area and access route(s), as applicable. The Contractor and the Contracting Officer will sign this survey report upon mutual agreement regarding its accuracy and completeness. Protect those environmental features included in the survey report and any indicated on the drawings, regardless of interference that their preservation may cause to the work under the Contract.

1.5.2 Regulatory Notifications

Provide regulatory notification requirements in accordance with federal, state and local regulations. In cases where the Government will also provide public notification (such as stormwater permitting), coordinate with the Contracting Officer. Submit copies of regulatory notifications to the Contracting Officer at least 7 days prior to commencement of work activities. Typically, regulatory notifications must be provided for the following (this listing is not all-inclusive): demolition, renovation, NPDES defined site work, construction, removal or use of a permitted air emissions source, and remediation of controlled substances (asbestos, hazardous waste, lead paint).

1.5.3 Environmental Brief

Attend an environmental brief to be included in the preconstruction meeting. Provide the following information: types, quantities, and use of hazardous materials that will be brought onto the installation; and types and quantities of wastes/wastewater that may be generated during the Contract. Discuss the results of the Preconstruction Survey at this time.

Prior to initiating any work on site, meet with the Contracting Officer and installation Environmental Office to discuss the proposed Environmental Protection Plan (EPP). Develop a mutual understanding relative to the details of environmental protection, including measures for protecting natural and cultural resources, required reports, required permits, permit requirements (such as mitigation measures), and other measures to be taken.

1.5.4 Environmental Manager

Appoint in writing an Environmental Manager for the project site. The Environmental Manager is directly responsible for coordinating contractor compliance with federal, state, local, and installation requirements. The Environmental Manager must ensure compliance with Hazardous Waste Program requirements (including hazardous waste handling, storage, manifesting, and disposal); implement the EPP; ensure environmental permits are obtained, maintained, and closed out; ensure compliance with Stormwater Program requirements; ensure compliance with Hazardous Materials (storage, handling, and reporting) requirements; and coordinate any remediation of regulated substances (lead, asbestos, PCB transformers). This can be a collateral position; however, the person in this position must be trained to adequately accomplish the following duties: ensure waste segregation and storage compatibility requirements are met; inspect and manage Satellite Accumulation areas; ensure only authorized personnel add wastes to

containers; ensure Contractor personnel are trained in 40 CFR requirements in accordance with their position requirements; coordinate removal of waste containers; and maintain the Environmental Records binder and required documentation, including environmental permits compliance and close-out. Submit [Environmental Manager Qualifications](#) to the Contracting Officer.

1.5.5 Employee Training Records

Prepare and maintain [Employee Training Records](#) throughout the term of the contract meeting applicable 40 CFR requirements. Provide Employee Training Records in the Environmental Records Binder. Submit these [Assembled Employee Training Records](#) to the Contracting Officer at the conclusion of the project, unless otherwise directed.

Train personnel to meet EPA requirements. Conduct environmental protection/pollution control meetings for personnel prior to commencing construction activities. Contact additional meetings for new personnel and when site conditions change. Include in the training and meeting agenda: methods of detecting and avoiding pollution; familiarization with statutory and contractual pollution standards; installation and care of devices, vegetative covers, and instruments required for monitoring purposes to ensure adequate and continuous environmental protection/pollution control; anticipated hazardous or toxic chemicals or wastes, and other regulated contaminants; recognition and protection of archaeological sites, artifacts, waters of the United States, and endangered species and their habitat that are known to be in the area.

1.5.6 Pest Control Training

Trained personnel in pest control. Conduct a pest control meeting for personnel prior to commencing construction activities. Conduct additional meetings for new personnel and when site conditions change. Include in the training and meeting agenda: methods of detecting and pest infestation; familiarization with statutory and contractual pest control standards; installation and care of devices, and instruments, if required, for monitoring purposes to ensure adequate and continuous pest control; anticipated hazardous or toxic chemicals or wastes, and other regulated contaminants; recognition and protection of waters of the United States, and endangered species and their habitat that are known to be in the area. Provide a Certificate of Competency for the personnel who will be conducting the pesticide application and management of pest control.

1.5.7 Non-Compliance Notifications

The Contracting Officer will notify the Contractor in writing of any observed noncompliance with federal, state or local environmental laws or regulations, permits, and other elements of the Contractor's EPP. After receipt of such notice, inform the Contracting Officer of the proposed corrective action and take such action when approved by the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. No time extensions will be granted or equitable adjustments allowed for any such suspensions. This is in addition to any other actions the Contracting Officer may take under the contract, or in accordance with the Federal Acquisition Regulation or Federal Law.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION PLAN

The purpose of the EPP is to present an overview of known or potential

environmental issues that must be considered and addressed during construction. Incorporate construction related objectives and targets from the installation's EMS into the EPP. Include in the EPP measures for protecting natural and cultural resources, required reports, and other measures to be taken. Meet with the Contracting Officer or Contracting Officer Representative to discuss the EPP and develop a mutual understanding relative to the details for environmental protection including measures for protecting natural resources, required reports, and other measures to be taken. Submit the EPP within 15 days after notice to proceed and not less than 7 days before the preconstruction meeting. Revise the EPP throughout the project to include any reporting requirements, changes in site conditions, or contract modifications that change the project scope of work in a way that could have an environmental impact. No requirement in this section will relieve the Contractor of any applicable federal, state, and local environmental protection laws and regulations. During Construction, identify, implement, and submit for approval any additional requirements to be included in the EPP. Maintain the current version onsite.

The EPP includes, but is not limited to, the following elements:

1.6.1 General Overview and Purpose

1.6.1.1 Descriptions

A brief description of each specific plan required by environmental permit or elsewhere in this Contract such as stormwater pollution prevention plan, spill control plan, solid waste management plan, wastewater management plan, air pollution control plan, contaminant prevention plan, and Non-Hazardous Solid Waste Disposal Plan.

1.6.1.2 Duties

The duties and level of authority assigned to the person(s) on the job site who oversee environmental compliance, such as who is responsible for adherence to the EPP, who is responsible for spill cleanup and training personnel on spill response procedures, who is responsible for manifesting hazardous waste to be removed from the site (if applicable), and who is responsible for training the Contractor's environmental protection personnel.

1.6.1.3 Procedures

A copy of any standard or project-specific operating procedures that will be used to effectively manage and protect the environment on the project site.

1.6.1.4 Communications

Communication and training procedures that will be used to convey environmental management requirements to Contractor employees and subcontractors.

1.6.1.5 Contact Information

Emergency contact information contact information (office phone number, cell phone number, and e-mail address).

1.6.2 General Site Information

1.6.2.1 Drawings

Drawings showing locations of proposed temporary excavations or embankments for haul roads, stream crossings, jurisdictional wetlands, material storage areas, structures, sanitary facilities, storm drains and conveyances, and stockpiles of excess soil.

1.6.2.2 Work Area

Work area plan showing the proposed activity in each portion of the area and identify the areas of limited use or nonuse. Include measures for marking the limits of use areas, including methods for protection of features to be preserved within authorized work areas and methods to control runoff and to contain materials on site, and a traffic control plan.

1.6.2.3 Documentation

A letter signed by an officer of the firm appointing the Environmental Manager and stating that person is responsible for managing and implementing the Environmental Program as described in this contract. Include in this letter the Environmental Manager's authority to direct the removal and replacement of non-conforming work.

1.6.3 Management of Natural Resources

- a. Land resources
- b. Tree protection
- c. Replacement of damaged landscape features
- d. Temporary construction
- e. Stream crossings
- f. Fish and wildlife resources
- g. Wetland areas

1.6.4 Protection of Historical and Archaeological Resources

- a. Objectives
- b. Methods

1.6.5 Stormwater Management and Control

- a. Ground cover
- b. Erodible soils
- c. Temporary measures
 - (1) Structural Practices
 - (2) Temporary and permanent stabilization

- d. Effective selection, implementation and maintenance of Best Management Practices (BMPs).

1.6.6 Protection of the Environment from Waste Derived from Contractor Operations

Control and disposal of solid and sanitary waste. Control and disposal of hazardous waste.

This item consist of the management procedures for hazardous waste to be generated. The elements of those procedures will coincide with the Installation Hazardous Waste Management Plan. The Contracting Officer will provide a copy of the Installation Hazardous Waste Management Plan. As a minimum, include the following:

- a. List of the types of hazardous wastes expected to be generated
- b. Procedures to ensure a written waste determination is made for appropriate wastes that are to be generated
- c. Sampling/analysis plan, including laboratory method(s) that will be used for waste determinations and copies of relevant laboratory certifications
- d. Methods and proposed locations for hazardous waste accumulation/storage (that is, in tanks or containers)
- e. Management procedures for storage, labeling, transportation, and disposal of waste (treatment of waste is not allowed unless specifically noted)
- f. Management procedures and regulatory documentation ensuring disposal of hazardous waste complies with Land Disposal Restrictions (40 CFR 268)
- g. Management procedures for recyclable hazardous materials such as lead-acid batteries, used oil, and similar
- h. Used oil management procedures in accordance with 40 CFR 279; Hazardous waste minimization procedures
- i. Plans for the disposal of hazardous waste by permitted facilities; and Procedures to be employed to ensure required employee training records are maintained.

1.6.7 Prevention of Releases to the Environment

Procedures to prevent releases to the environment

Notifications in the event of a release to the environment

1.6.8 Regulatory Notification and Permits

List what notifications and permit applications must be made. Some permits require up to 180 days to obtain. Demonstrate that those permits have been obtained or applied for by including copies of applicable environmental permits. The EPP will not be approved until the permits have been obtained.

1.6.9 Clean Air Act Compliance

1.6.9.1 Haul Route

Submit truck and material haul routes along with a [Dirt and Dust Control Plan](#) for controlling dirt, debris, and dust on Installation roadways. As a minimum, identify in the plan the subcontractor and equipment for cleaning along the haul route and measures to reduce dirt, dust, and debris from roadways.

1.6.9.2 Pollution Generating Equipment

Identify air pollution generating equipment or processes that may require federal, state, or local permits under the Clean Air Act. Determine requirements based on any current installation permits and the impacts of the project. Provide a list of all fixed or mobile equipment, machinery or operations that could generate air emissions during the project to the Installation Environmental Office (Air Program Manager).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION OF NATURAL RESOURCES

Minimize interference with, disturbance to, and damage to fish, wildlife, and plants, including their habitats. Prior to the commencement of activities, consult with the [Contracting Officer and the FAA Natural Resources Program Manager](#) regarding rare species or sensitive habitats that need to be protected. The protection of rare, threatened, and endangered animal and plant species identified, including their habitats, is the Contractor's responsibility.

Preserve the natural resources within the project boundaries and outside the limits of permanent work. Restore to an equivalent or improved condition upon completion of work that is consistent with the requirements of the Installation Environmental Office or as otherwise specified. Confine construction activities to within the limits of the work indicated or specified.

3.1.1 Flow Ways

Do not alter water flows or otherwise significantly disturb the native habitat adjacent to the project and critical to the survival of fish and wildlife, except as specified and permitted.

3.1.2 Vegetation

Except in areas to be cleared, do not remove, cut, deface, injure, or destroy trees or shrubs without the Contracting Officer's permission. Do not fasten or attach ropes, cables, or guys to existing nearby trees for anchorages unless authorized by the Contracting Officer. Where such use of attached ropes, cables, or guys is authorized, the Contractor is responsible for any resultant damage.

Protect existing trees that are to remain to ensure they are not injured, bruised, defaced, or otherwise damaged by construction operations. Remove

displaced rocks from uncleared areas. Coordinate with the Contracting Officer and Installation Environmental Office to determine appropriate action for trees and other landscape features scarred or damaged by equipment operations.

3.1.3 Streams

Stream crossings must allow movement of materials or equipment without violating water pollution control standards of the federal, state, and local governments. Construction of stream crossing structures must be in compliance with any required permits including, but not limited to, Clean Water Act Section 404, and Section 401 Water Quality.

The Contracting Officer's approval and appropriate permits are required before any equipment will be permitted to ford live streams. In areas where frequent crossings are required, install temporary culverts or bridges. Obtain Contracting Officer's approval prior to installation. Remove temporary culverts or bridges upon completion of work, and repair the area to its original condition unless otherwise required by the Contracting Officer.

3.1.4 Wetlands

Except in conformance with an issued Federal or State permit, do not disturb, alter, fill, affect, drain, encroach upon or destroy any wetlands. Do not disturb, alter, fill, affect, encroach upon, or destroy upland buffers within 150 feet (and where specified by FAA as much as 300 feet) of a wetlands or alter surface or ground water flows into or from wetlands. Do not allow the discharge of petroleum products, pesticides, hazardous substances, chemicals, solid wastes or silt into wetlands. Do not stage construction materials, supplies, or equipment in wetlands or floodplains. All activities must comply with NJAC 7:7A, Freshwater Wetlands Protection Act Rules. When cement work is being done in close proximity to or within a 150 foot buffer zone, a concrete wash out will be used.

3.1.5 Dewatering Operations

There are currently 25 separate parcels of land called Areas of Concern (AOC's) located throughout the Center on which the disposal of hazardous wastes did occur or is suspected of having occurred. Because of these AOC's the entire Technical Center was placed on the National Priorities List on October 1, 1990. Consequently, if dewatering operations are contemplated the Superfund Program Manager must be consulted in writing to determine if contaminated ground water plumes associated with these AOC's will be adversely affected.

3.1.6 Fish and Wildlife Resources

Do not disturb fish and wildlife. Do not alter water flows or otherwise significantly disturb the native habitat adjacent to the project and critical to the survival of fish and wildlife, except as indicated or specified. Protect and do not alter, modify or affect endangered or threatened species habitat. Protect other noted critical fish and wildlife habitats. Comply with all Federal and State law and guidance regarding threatened and endangered species. If wildlife is encountered during construction activities the contractor must inform the FAA's Natural

Resource Manager immediately.

3.1.7 Spill Prevention

Prevent oil based or other hazardous substances from entering soil, drainage areas, groundwater or surface water. Any tank utilized for storage of oils or other hazardous substances shall be double walled and designed to contain the type of liquids required for the project as well as providing secondary containment. All fuel oil tanks and other storage containers of hazardous substances must have secondary containment that can contain 110% by volume of the tank or containers contents in the event of a spill or leak. The secondary containment can include but not limited to dikes, berms, or impervious walls, curbing, culverts, weirs, booms or sorbent materials. All spills and discharges of oils or other hazardous substances shall be immediately reported by calling the Trouble Desk at (609) 485-4122 and contacting the Contracting Officer or authorized representative in accordance with NJAC 7:1E-2.14, Standard Operating Procedures.

3.2 STORMWATER

Do not discharge stormwater from construction sites to the sanitary sewer. If the water is noted or suspected of being contaminated, it may only be released to the storm drain system if the discharge is specifically permitted. Obtain authorization in advance from the Installation Environmental Office for any release of contaminated water.

3.2.1 Construction General Permit

Provide a Construction General Permit as required by 40 CFR 122.26 or EPA. Under the terms and conditions of the permit, install, inspect, prepare stormwater erosion and sediment control inspection reports, and submit SWPPP inspection reports. Maintain construction operations and management in compliance with the terms and conditions of the general permit for stormwater discharges from construction activities.

3.2.1.1 Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan

Submit a project-specific Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) to the Contracting Officer for approval, prior to the commencement of work. The SWPPP must meet the requirements of 40 CFR 122.26 and the EPA General Permit for stormwater discharges from construction sites.

Include the following:

- a. Comply with terms of the EPA general permit for stormwater discharges from construction activities. Prepare SWPPP in accordance with EPA requirements. Use EPA guide Developing your Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan located at <http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/npdes/stormwater/Stormwater-Pollution-Prevention-Plans-for-Construction-Activities.cfm> to prepare the SWPPP.

3.2.1.2 Inspection Reports

Submit "Inspection Reports" to the Contracting Officer in accordance with

EPA

3.2.1.3 Stormwater Notice of Termination for Construction Activities

Submit a Notice of Termination to the Contracting Officer for approval once construction is complete and final stabilization has been achieved on all portions of the site for which the permittee is responsible. Once approved, submit the Notice of Termination to the appropriate state or federal agency. Prepare [as-built topographic survey](#) information required by the permitting agency for certification of the stormwater management system, and provide to the Contracting Officer.

3.2.2 Erosion and Sediment Control Measures

Provide erosion and sediment control measures in accordance with state and local laws and regulations. Preserve vegetation to the maximum extent practicable.

Erosion control inspection reports may be compiled as part of a stormwater pollution prevention plan inspection reports.

3.2.3 Work Area Limits

Mark the areas that need not be disturbed under this Contract prior to commencing construction activities. Mark or fence isolated areas within the general work area that are not to be disturbed. Protect monuments and markers before construction operations commence. Where construction operations are to be conducted during darkness, any markers must be visible in the dark. Personnel must be knowledgeable of the purpose for marking and protecting particular objects.

3.2.4 Contractor Facilities and Work Areas

Place field offices, staging areas, stockpile storage, and temporary buildings in areas designated on the drawings or as directed by the Contracting Officer. Move or relocate the Contractor facilities only when approved by the Government. Provide erosion and sediment controls for onsite borrow and spoil areas to prevent sediment from entering nearby waters. Control temporary excavation and embankments for plant or work areas to protect adjacent areas.

3.3 AIR RESOURCES

3.3.1 Dust Control

Keep dust down at all times, including during nonworking periods. Sprinkle or treat, with dust suppressants, the soil at the site, haul roads, and other areas disturbed by operations. Dry power brooming will not be permitted. Instead, use vacuuming, wet mopping, wet sweeping, or wet power brooming. Air blowing will be permitted only for cleaning nonparticulate debris such as steel reinforcing bars. Only wet cutting will be permitted for cutting concrete blocks, concrete, and bituminous concrete. Do not unnecessarily shake bags of cement, concrete mortar, or plaster.

3.4 WASTE MINIMIZATION

Minimize the use of hazardous materials and the generation of waste. Include procedures for pollution prevention/ hazardous waste minimization in the Hazardous Waste Management Section of the EPP. Obtain a copy of the

installation's Pollution Prevention/Hazardous Waste Minimization Plan for reference material when preparing this part of the EPP. If no written plan exists, obtain information by contacting the Contracting Officer. Describe the anticipated types of the hazardous materials to be used in the construction when requesting information.

3.4.1 Salvage, Reuse and Recycle

Identify anticipated materials and waste for salvage, reuse, and recycling. Describe actions to promote material reuse, resale or recycling. To the extent practicable, all scrap metal must be sent for reuse or recycling and will not be disposed of in a landfill.

Include the name, physical address, and telephone number of the hauler, if transported by a franchised solid waste hauler. Include the destination and, unless exempted, provide a copy of the state or local permit (cover) or license for recycling.

Provide a written report to the Contracting Officer with a list of all itmes that were recycled. The list shall include the item, the quantity and where it was recycled.

3.4.2 Nonhazardous Solid Waste Diversion Report

Maintain an inventory of nonhazardous solid waste diversion and disposal of construction and demolition debris. Submit a report to the Contracting Officer on the first working day after each fiscal year quarter, starting the first quarter that nonhazardous solid waste has been generated. Include the following in the report:

Construction and Demolition (C&D) Debris Disposed	cubic yards as appropriate
C&D Debris Recycled	cubic yards as appropriate
Total C&D Debris Generated	cubic yards as appropriate
Waste Sent to Waste-To-Energy Incineration Plant (This amount should not be included in the recycled amount)	cubic yards as appropriate

3.5 WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

3.5.1 Waste Determination Documentation

Complete a Waste Determination form (provided at the pre-construction conference) for Contractor-derived wastes to be generated. All potentially hazardous solid waste streams that are not subject to a specific exclusion or exemption from the hazardous waste regulations (e.g. scrap metal, domestic sewage) or subject to special rules, (lead-acid batteries and precious metals) must be characterized in accordance with the requirements of 40 CFR 261 or corresponding applicable state or local regulations. Base

waste determination on user knowledge of the processes and materials used, and analytical data when necessary. Consult with the Installation environmental staff for guidance on specific requirements. Attach support documentation to the Waste Determination form. As a minimum, provide a Waste Determination form for the following waste (this listing is not inclusive): oil- and latex -based painting and caulking products, solvents, adhesives, aerosols, petroleum products, and containers of the original materials.

3.6 HAZARDOUS MATERIAL MANAGEMENT

Include hazardous material control procedures in the Safety Plan, in accordance with Section 01 35 26 GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS. Address procedures and proper handling of hazardous materials, including the appropriate transportation requirements. Do not bring hazardous material onto Government property that does not directly relate to requirements for the performance of this contract. Submit an SDS and estimated quantities to be used for each hazardous material to the Contracting Officer prior to bringing the material on the installation. Typical materials requiring SDS and quantity reporting include, but are not limited to, oil and latex based painting and caulking products, solvents, adhesives, aerosol, and petroleum products. Use hazardous materials in a manner that minimizes the amount of hazardous waste generated. Containers of hazardous materials must have National Fire Protection Association labels or their equivalent. Certify that hazardous materials removed from the site are hazardous materials and do not meet the definition of hazardous waste, in accordance with 40 CFR 261.

3.7 PREVIOUSLY USED EQUIPMENT

Clean previously used construction equipment prior to bringing it onto the project site. Equipment must be free from soil residuals, egg deposits from plant pests, noxious weeds, and plant seeds. Consult with the U.S. Department of Agriculture jurisdictional office for additional cleaning requirements.

3.8 CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIAL (ACM)

Manage and dispose of asbestos- containing waste in accordance with 40 CFR 61. Manifest asbestos-containing waste and provide the manifest to the Contracting Officer. Notifications to the state and Installation Air Program Manager are required before starting any asbestos work.

3.9 CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT OF LEAD-BASED PAINT (LBP)

Manage and dispose of lead-contaminated waste in accordance with 40 CFR 745. Manifest any lead-contaminated waste and provide the manifest to the Contracting Officer.

3.10 CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT OF POLYCHLORINATED BIPHENYLS (PCBS)

Manage and dispose of PCB-contaminated waste in accordance with 40 CFR 761 and Section 02 84 33 REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF POLYCHLORINATED BIPHENYLS (PCBS).

3.11 CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT OF LIGHTING BALLAST AND LAMPS CONTAINING PCBS

Manage and dispose of contaminated waste in accordance with 40 CFR 761.

3.12 MILITARY MUNITIONS

In the event military munitions, as defined in 40 CFR 260, are discovered or uncovered, immediately stop work in that area and immediately inform the Contracting Officer.

3.13 PETROLEUM, OIL, LUBRICANT (POL) STORAGE AND FUELING

POL products include flammable or combustible liquids, such as gasoline, diesel, lubricating oil, used engine oil, hydraulic oil, mineral oil, and cooking oil. Store POL products and fuel equipment and motor vehicles in a manner that affords the maximum protection against spills into the environment. Manage and store POL products in accordance with EPA 40 CFR 112, and other federal, state, regional, and local laws and regulations. Use secondary containments, dikes, curbs, and other barriers, to prevent POL products from spilling and entering the ground, storm or sewer drains, stormwater ditches or canals, or navigable waters of the United States. Describe in the EPP (see paragraph ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION PLAN) how POL tanks and containers must be stored, managed, and inspected and what protections must be provided. Storage of fuel on the project site must be in accordance with EPA, state, and local laws and regulations and paragraph OIL STORAGE INCLUDING FUEL TANKS.

3.13.1 Used Oil Management

Manage used oil generated on site in accordance with 40 CFR 279. Determine if any used oil generated while onsite exhibits a characteristic of hazardous waste. Used oil containing 1,000 parts per million of solvents is considered a hazardous waste and disposed of at the Contractor's expense. Used oil mixed with a hazardous waste is also considered a hazardous waste. Dispose in accordance with paragraph HAZARDOUS WASTE DISPOSAL.

3.13.2 Oil Storage Including Fuel Tanks

Provide secondary containment and overflow protection for oil storage tanks. A berm used to provide secondary containment must be of sufficient size and strength to contain the contents of the tanks plus 5 inches freeboard for precipitation. Construct the berm to be impervious to oil for 72 hours that no discharge will permeate, drain, infiltrate, or otherwise escape before cleanup occurs. Use drip pans during oil transfer operations; adequate absorbent material must be onsite to clean up any spills and prevent releases to the environment. Cover tanks and drip pans during inclement weather. Provide procedures and equipment to prevent overflowing of tanks. If tanks and containers with an aggregate aboveground capacity greater than 1320 gallons will be used onsite (only containers with a capacity of 55 gallons or greater are counted), provide and implement a SPCC plan meeting the requirements of 40 CFR 112. Do not bring underground storage tanks to the installation for Contractor use during a project. Submit the SPCC plan to the Contracting Officer for approval.

Monitor and remove any rainwater that accumulates in open containment dikes or berms. Inspect the accumulated rainwater prior to draining from a containment dike to the environment, to determine there is no oil sheen present.

3.14 INADVERTENT DISCOVERY OF PETROLEUM-CONTAMINATED SOIL OR HAZARDOUS WASTES

If petroleum-contaminated soil, or suspected hazardous waste is found during construction that was not identified in the Contract documents, immediately notify the Contracting Officer. Do not disturb this material until authorized by the Contracting Officer.

3.15 POST CONSTRUCTION CLEANUP

Clean up areas used for construction in accordance with Contract Clause: "Cleaning Up". Unless otherwise instructed in writing by the Contracting Officer, remove traces of temporary construction facilities such as haul roads, work area, structures, foundations of temporary structures, stockpiles of excess or waste materials, and other vestiges of construction prior to final acceptance of the work. Grade parking area and similar temporarily used areas to conform with surrounding contours.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 78 23

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E1971 (2005; R 2011) Stewardship for the Cleaning of Commercial and Institutional Buildings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

O&M Database ; G

Training Outline ; G

Training Content ; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Training Video Recording ; G

Validation of Training Completion ; G

1.3 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

Submit Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Data for the provided equipment, product, or system, defining the importance of system interactions, troubleshooting, and long-term preventive operation and maintenance. Compile, prepare, and aggregate O&M data to include clarifying and updating the original sequences of operation to as-built conditions. Organize and present information in sufficient detail to clearly explain O&M requirements at the system, equipment, component, and subassembly level. Include an index preceding each submittal. Submit in accordance with this section and Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

1.3.1 Package Quality

Documents must be fully legible. Operation and Maintenance data must be consistent with the manufacturer's standard brochures, schematics, printed instructions, general operating procedures, and safety precautions.

1.3.2 Package Content

Provide data package content in accordance with paragraph SCHEDULE OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA PACKAGES. Comply with the data package requirements specified in the individual technical sections, including the content of the packages and addressing each product, component, and system designated for data package submission, except as follows.

1.3.3 Changes to Submittals

Provide manufacturer-originated changes or revisions to submitted data if a component of an item is so affected subsequent to acceptance of the O&M Data. Submit changes, additions, or revisions required by the Contracting Officer for final acceptance of submitted data within 30 calendar days of the notification of this change requirement.

1.4 O&M DATABASE

Develop an editable, electronic spreadsheet based on the equipment in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals that contains the information required to start a preventive maintenance program. As a minimum, provide list of system equipment, location installed, warranty expiration date, manufacturer, model, and serial number.

1.5 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL FILE FORMAT

Assemble data packages into electronic Operation and Maintenance Manuals. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file using the most current version of Adobe Acrobat or similar software capable of producing PDF file format. Provide compact disks (CD) or data digital versatile disk (DVD) as appropriate, so that each one contains operation, maintenance and record files, and project record documents. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.

1.5.1 Organization

Bookmark Product and Drawing Information documents using the current version of CSI Masterformat numbering system, and arrange submittals using the specification sections as a structure. Use CSI Masterformat and UFGS numbers along with descriptive bookmarked titles that explain the content of the information that is being bookmarked.

1.5.2 CD or DVD Label and Disk Holder or Case

Provide the following information on the disk label and disk holder or case:

- a. Building Number
- b. Project Title
- c. Activity and Location
- d. Construction Contract Number
- e. Prepared For: (Contracting Agency)
- f. Prepared By: (Name, title, phone number and email address)
- g. Include the disk content on the disk label

h. Date

1.6 TYPES OF INFORMATION REQUIRED IN O&M DATA PACKAGES

The following are a detailed description of the data package items listed in paragraph SCHEDULE OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA PACKAGES.

1.6.1 Operating Instructions

Provide specific instructions, procedures, and illustrations for the following phases of operation for the installed model and features of each system:

1.6.1.1 Safety Precautions and Hazards

List personnel hazards and equipment or product safety precautions for operating conditions. List all residual hazards identified in the Activity Hazard Analysis provided under Section 01 35 26 GOVERNMENT SAFETY REQUIREMENTS. Provide recommended safeguards for each identified hazard.

1.6.1.2 Operator Prestart

Provide procedures required to install, set up, and prepare each system for use.

1.6.1.3 Startup, Shutdown, and Post-Shutdown Procedures

Provide narrative description for Startup, Shutdown and Post-shutdown operating procedures including the control sequence for each procedure.

1.6.1.4 Normal Operations

Provide Control Diagrams with data to explain operation and control of systems and specific equipment. Provide narrative description of Normal Operating Procedures.

1.6.1.5 Emergency Operations

Provide Emergency Procedures for equipment malfunctions to permit a short period of continued operation or to shut down the equipment to prevent further damage to systems and equipment. Provide Emergency Shutdown Instructions for fire, explosion, spills, or other foreseeable contingencies. Provide guidance and procedures for emergency operation of utility systems including required valve positions, valve locations and zones or portions of systems controlled.

1.6.1.6 Operator Service Requirements

Provide instructions for services to be performed by the operator such as lubrication, adjustment, inspection, and recording gauge readings.

1.6.1.7 Environmental Conditions

Provide a list of Environmental Conditions (temperature, humidity, and other relevant data) that are best suited for the operation of each product, component or system. Describe conditions under which the item

equipment should not be allowed to run.

1.6.1.8 Operating Log

Provide forms, sample logs, and instructions for maintaining necessary operating records.

1.6.1.9 Additional Requirements for HVAC Control Systems

Provide Data Package 5 and the following for control systems:

- a. Narrative description on how to perform and apply functions, features, modes, and other operations, including unoccupied operation, seasonal changeover, manual operation, and alarms. Include detailed technical manual for programming and customizing control loops and algorithms.
- b. Full as-built sequence of operations.
- c. Copies of checkout tests and calibrations performed by the Contractor (not Cx tests).
- d. Full points list. Provide a listing of rooms with the following information for each room:
 - (1) Floor
 - (2) Room number
 - (3) Room name
 - (4) Air handler unit ID
 - (5) Reference drawing number
 - (6) Air terminal unit tag ID
 - (7) Heating or cooling valve tag ID
 - (8) Minimum cfm
 - (9) Maximum cfm
- e. Full print out of all schedules and set points after testing and acceptance of the system.
- f. Full as-built print out of software program.
- g. Marking of system sensors and thermostats on the as-built floor plan and mechanical drawings with their control system designations.

1.6.2 Preventive Maintenance

Provide the following information for preventive and scheduled maintenance to minimize repairs for the installed model and features of each system. Include potential environmental and indoor air quality impacts of recommended maintenance procedures and materials.

1.6.2.1 Lubrication Data

Include the following preventive maintenance lubrication data, in addition to instructions for lubrication required under paragraph OPERATOR SERVICE REQUIREMENTS:

- a. A table showing recommended lubricants for specific temperature ranges and applications.
- b. Charts with a schematic diagram of the equipment showing lubrication points, recommended types and grades of lubricants, and capacities.
- c. A Lubrication Schedule showing service interval frequency.

1.6.2.2 Preventive Maintenance Plan, Schedule, and Procedures

Provide manufacturer's schedule for routine preventive maintenance, inspections, condition monitoring (predictive tests) and adjustments required to ensure proper and economical operation and to minimize repairs. Provide instructions stating when the systems should be retested. Provide manufacturer's projection of preventive maintenance work-hours on a daily, weekly, monthly, and annual basis including craft requirements by type of craft. For periodic calibrations, provide manufacturer's specified frequency and procedures for each separate operation.

- a. Define the anticipated time required to perform each of each test (work-hours), test apparatus, number of personnel identified by responsibility, and a testing validation procedure permitting the record operation capability requirements within the schedule. Provide a remarks column for the testing validation procedure referencing operating limits of time, pressure, temperature, volume, voltage, current, acceleration, velocity, alignment, calibration, adjustments, cleaning, or special system notes. Delineate procedures for preventive maintenance, inspection, adjustment, lubrication and cleaning necessary to minimize repairs.
- b. Repair requirements must inform operators how to check out, troubleshoot, repair, and replace components of the system. Include electrical and mechanical schematics and diagrams and diagnostic techniques necessary to enable operation and troubleshooting of the system after acceptance.

1.6.2.3 Cleaning Recommendations

Provide environmentally preferable cleaning recommendations in accordance with ASTM E1971.

1.6.3 Repair

Provide manufacturer's recommended procedures and instructions for correcting problems and making repairs for the installed model and features of each system. Include potential environmental and indoor air quality impacts of recommended maintenance procedures and materials.

1.6.3.1 Troubleshooting Guides and Diagnostic Techniques

Provide step-by-step procedures to promptly isolate the cause of typical malfunctions. Describe clearly why the checkout is performed and what

conditions are to be sought. Identify tests or inspections and test equipment required to determine whether parts and equipment may be reused or require replacement.

1.6.3.2 Wiring Diagrams and Control Diagrams

Provide point-to-point drawings of wiring and control circuits including factory-field interfaces. Provide a complete and accurate depiction of the actual job specific wiring and control work. On diagrams, number electrical and electronic wiring and pneumatic control tubing and the terminals for each type, identically to actual installation configuration and numbering.

1.6.3.3 Repair Procedures

Provide instructions and a list of tools required to repair or restore the product or equipment to proper condition or operating standards.

1.6.3.4 Removal and Replacement Instructions

Provide step-by-step procedures and a list of required tools and supplies for removal, replacement, disassembly, and assembly of components, assemblies, subassemblies, accessories, and attachments. Provide tolerances, dimensions, settings and adjustments required. Use a combination of text and illustrations.

1.6.3.5 Spare Parts and Supply Lists

Provide lists of spare parts and supplies required for repair to ensure continued service or operation without unreasonable delays. Special consideration is required for facilities at remote locations. List spare parts and supplies that have a long lead-time to obtain.

1.6.3.6 Repair Work-Hours

Provide manufacturer's projection of repair work-hours including requirements by type of craft. Identify, and tabulate separately, repair that requires the equipment manufacturer to complete or to participate.

1.6.4 Appendices

Provide information required below and information not specified in the preceding paragraphs but pertinent to the maintenance or operation of the product or equipment. Include the following:

1.6.4.1 Product Submittal Data

Provide a copy of SD-03 Product Data submittals documented with the required approval.

1.6.4.2 Manufacturer's Instructions

Provide a copy of SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions submittals documented with the required approval.

1.6.4.3 O&M Submittal Data

Provide a copy of SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data submittals documented with the required approval.

1.6.4.4 Parts Identification

Provide identification and coverage for the parts of each component, assembly, subassembly, and accessory of the end items subject to replacement. Include special hardware requirements, such as requirement to use high-strength bolts and nuts. Identify parts by make, model, serial number, and source of supply to allow reordering without further identification. Provide clear and legible illustrations, drawings, and exploded views to enable easy identification of the items. When illustrations omit the part numbers and description, both the illustrations and separate listing must show the index, reference, or key number that will cross-reference the illustrated part to the listed part. Group the parts shown in the listings by components, assemblies, and subassemblies in accordance with the manufacturer's standard practice. Parts data may cover more than one model or series of equipment, components, assemblies, subassemblies, attachments, or accessories, such as typically shown in a master parts catalog.

1.6.4.5 Warranty Information

List and explain the various warranties and clearly identify the servicing and technical precautions prescribed by the manufacturers or contract documents in order to keep warranties in force. Include warranty information for primary components of the system. Provide copies of warranties required by Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS.

1.6.4.6 Extended Warranty Information

List all warranties for products, equipment, components, and sub-components whose duration exceeds one year. For each warranty listed, indicate the applicable specification section, duration, start date, end date, and the point of contact for warranty fulfillment. Also, list or reference the specific operation and maintenance procedures that must be performed to keep the warranty valid. Provide copies of warranties required by Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS.

1.6.4.7 Personnel Training Requirements

Provide information available from the manufacturers that is needed for use in training designated personnel to properly operate and maintain the equipment and systems.

1.6.4.8 Testing Equipment and Special Tool Information

Include information on test equipment required to perform specified tests and on special tools needed for the operation, maintenance, and repair of components. Provide final set points.

1.6.4.9 Testing and Performance Data

Include completed prefunctional checklists, functional performance test forms, and monitoring reports. Include recommended schedule for retesting and blank test forms. Provide final set points.

1.6.4.10 Field Test Reports

Provide a copy of Field Test Reports (SD-06) submittals documented with the required approval.

1.6.4.11 Contractor Information

Provide a list that includes the name, address, and telephone number of the General Contractor and each Subcontractor who installed the product or equipment, or system. For each item, also provide the name address and telephone number of the manufacturer's representative and service organization that can provide replacements most convenient to the project site. Provide the name, address, and telephone number of the product, equipment, and system manufacturers.

1.7 SCHEDULE OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA PACKAGES

Provide the O&M data packages specified in individual technical sections. The information required in each type of data package follows:

1.7.1 Data Package 1

- a. Safety precautions and hazards
- b. Cleaning recommendations
- c. Maintenance and repair procedures
- d. Warranty information
- e. Extended warranty information
- f. Contractor information
- g. Spare parts and supply list

1.7.2 Data Package 2

- a. Safety precautions and hazards
- b. Normal operations
- c. Environmental conditions
- d. Lubrication data
- e. Preventive maintenance plan, schedule, and procedures
- f. Cleaning recommendations
- g. Maintenance and repair procedures
- h. Removal and replacement instructions
- i. Spare parts and supply list
- j. Parts identification
- k. Warranty information
- l. Extended warranty information
- m. Contractor information

1.7.3 Data Package 3

- a. Safety precautions and hazards
- b. Operator prestart
- c. Startup, shutdown, and post-shutdown procedures
- d. Normal operations
- e. Emergency operations
- f. Environmental conditions
- g. Operating log
- h. Lubrication data
- i. Preventive maintenance plan, schedule, and procedures
- j. Cleaning recommendations
- k. Troubleshooting guides and diagnostic techniques
- l. Wiring diagrams and control diagrams
- m. Maintenance and repair procedures
- n. Removal and replacement instructions
- o. Spare parts and supply list
- p. Product submittal data
- q. O&M submittal data
- r. Parts identification
- s. Warranty information
- t. Extended warranty information
- u. Testing equipment and special tool information
- v. Testing and performance data
- w. Contractor information
- x. Field test reports

1.7.4 Data Package 4

- a. Safety precautions and hazards
- b. Operator prestart
- c. Startup, shutdown, and post-shutdown procedures

- d. Normal operations
 - e. Emergency operations
 - f. Operator service requirements
 - g. Environmental conditions
 - h. Operating log
 - i. Lubrication data
 - j. Preventive maintenance plan, schedule, and procedures
 - k. Cleaning recommendations
 - l. Troubleshooting guides and diagnostic techniques
 - m. Wiring diagrams and control diagrams
 - n. Repair procedures
 - o. Removal and replacement instructions
 - p. Spare parts and supply list
 - q. Repair work-hours
 - r. Product submittal data
 - s. O&M submittal data
 - t. Parts identification
 - u. Warranty information
 - v. Extended warranty information
 - w. Personnel training requirements
 - x. Testing equipment and special tool information
 - y. Testing and performance data
 - z. Contractor information
 - aa. Field test reports
- 1.7.5 Data Package 5
- a. Safety precautions and hazards
 - b. Operator prestart
 - c. Start-up, shutdown, and post-shutdown procedures
 - d. Normal operations
 - e. Environmental conditions

- f. Preventive maintenance plan, schedule, and procedures
- g. Troubleshooting guides and diagnostic techniques
- h. Wiring and control diagrams
- i. Maintenance and repair procedures
- j. Removal and replacement instructions
- k. Spare parts and supply list
- l. Product submittal data
- m. Manufacturer's instructions
- n. O&M submittal data
- o. Parts identification
- p. Testing equipment and special tool information
- q. Warranty information
- r. Extended warranty information
- s. Testing and performance data
- t. Contractor information
- u. Field test reports
- v. Additional requirements for HVAC control systems

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 TRAINING

Prior to acceptance of the facility by the Contracting Officer for Beneficial Occupancy, provide comprehensive training for the systems and equipment specified in the technical specifications. The training must be targeted for the building maintenance personnel, and applicable building occupants. Instructors must be well-versed in the particular systems that they are presenting. Address aspects of the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Training must include classroom or field lectures based on the system operating requirements. The location of classroom training requires approval by the Contracting Officer.

3.1.1 Training Content

The core of this training must be based on manufacturer's recommendations and the operation and maintenance information. Spend 95 percent of the instruction time during the presentation on the OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA. Include the following for each system training presentation:

- a. Start-up, normal operation, shutdown, unoccupied operation, seasonal changeover, manual operation, controls set-up and programming, troubleshooting, and alarms.
- b. Relevant health and safety issues.
- c. Discussion of how the feature or system is environmentally responsive. Advise adjustments and optimizing methods for energy conservation.
- d. Design intent.
- e. Use of O&M Manual Files.
- f. Review of control drawings and schematics.
- g. Interactions with other systems.
- h. Special maintenance and replacement sources.
- i. Tenant interaction issues.

3.1.2 [Training Outline](#)

Provide the Operation and Maintenance Manual Files (Bookmarked PDF) and a written course outline listing the major and minor topics to be discussed by the instructor on each day of the course to each trainee in the course. Provide the course outline 14 calendar days prior to the training.

3.1.3 [Unresolved Questions from Attendees](#)

If, at the end of the training course, there are questions from attendees that remain unresolved, the instructor must send the answers, in writing, to the Contracting Officer for transmittal to the attendees.

3.1.4 [Validation of Training Completion](#)

Ensure that each attendee at each training session signs a class roster daily to confirm Government participation in the training. At the completion of training, submit a signed validation letter that includes a sample record of training for reporting what systems were included in the training, who provided the training, when and where the training was performed, and copies of the signed class rosters. Provide two copies of the validation to the Contracting Officer, and one copy to the Operation and Maintenance Manual Preparer for inclusion into the Manual's documentation.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 02 41 00

DECONSTRUCTION
05/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI Guideline K (2009) Guideline for Containers for Recovered Non-Flammable Fluorocarbon Refrigerants

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY ENGINEERS (ASSE/SAFE)

ASSE/SAFE A10.6 (2006) Safety Requirements for Demolition Operations

CARPET AND RUG INSTITUTE (CRI)

CRI 104 (2015) Carpet Installation Standard for Commercial Carpet

CRI 105 (2015) Carpet Installation Standard for Residential Carpet

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

U.S. DEFENSE LOGISTICS AGENCY (DLA)

DLA 4145.25 (Jun 2000; Reaffirmed Oct 2010) Storage and Handling of Liquefied and Gaseous Compressed Gases and Their Full and Empty Cylinders
<http://www.aviation.dla.mil/UserWeb/aviationengineering/>

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DOD 4000.25-1-M (2006) MILSTRIP - Military Standard Requisitioning and Issue Procedures

MIL-STD-129 (2014; Rev R) Military Marking for Shipment and Storage

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 61 National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants

40 CFR 82

Protection of Stratospheric Ozone

49 CFR 173.301

Shipment of Compressed Gases in Cylinders
and Spherical Pressure Vessels

1.2 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 Demolition/Deconstruction Plan

Prepare a [Deconstruction Plan](#) and submit proposed salvage, deconstruction, and removal procedures for approval before work is started. Include in the plan procedures for careful removal and disposition of materials specified to be salvaged, coordination with other work in progress, a disconnection schedule of utility services, a detailed description of methods and equipment to be used for each operation and of the sequence of operations. [Identify components and materials to be salvaged for reuse or recycling with reference to paragraph Existing Facilities to be Removed.](#) Append tracking forms for all removed materials indicating type, quantities, condition, destination, and end use. Coordinate with Waste Management Plan.

Provide procedures for safe conduct of the work in accordance with [EM 385-1-1](#). Plan shall be approved by Contracting Officer prior to work beginning.

1.2.2 General Requirements

Do not begin demolition or deconstruction until authorization is received from the Contracting Officer. [The work of this section is to be performed in a manner that maximizes the value derived from the salvage and recycling of materials.](#) Remove rubbish and debris from the project site; do not allow accumulations inside or outside the building. The work includes deconstruction, salvage of identified items and materials, and removal of resulting rubbish and debris. Remove rubbish and debris from Government property daily, unless otherwise directed. Store materials that cannot be removed daily in areas specified by the Contracting Officer. In the interest of occupational safety and health, perform the work in accordance with [EM 385-1-1](#), Section 23, Demolition, and other applicable Sections.

1.3 ITEMS TO REMAIN IN PLACE

Take necessary precautions to avoid damage to existing items to remain in place, to be reused, or to remain the property of the Government. Repair or replace damaged items as approved by the Contracting Officer. Coordinate the work of this section with all other work indicated. Construct and maintain shoring, bracing, and supports as required. Ensure that structural elements are not overloaded. Increase structural supports or add new supports as may be required as a result of any cutting, removal, deconstruction, or demolition work performed under this contract. Do not overload structural elements. Provide new supports and reinforcement for existing construction weakened by demolition, deconstruction, or removal work. Repairs, reinforcement, or structural replacement require approval by the Contracting Officer prior to performing such work.

1.3.1 Existing Construction Limits and Protection

Do not disturb existing construction beyond the extent indicated or necessary for installation of new construction. Provide temporary shoring and bracing for support of building components to prevent settlement or other movement. Provide protective measures to control accumulation and

migration of dust and dirt in all work areas. Remove dust, dirt, and debris from work areas daily.

1.3.2 Utility Service

Maintain existing utilities indicated to stay in service and protect against damage during demolition and deconstruction operations. Prior to start of work, utilities serving each area of alteration or removal will be shut off by the Government and disconnected and sealed by the Contractor.

1.3.3 Facilities

Protect electrical and mechanical services and utilities. Where removal of existing utilities and pavement is specified or indicated, provide approved barricades, temporary covering of exposed areas, and temporary services or connections for electrical and mechanical utilities. Floors, roofs, walls, columns, pilasters, and other structural components that are designed and constructed to stand without lateral support or shoring, and are determined to be in stable condition, must remain standing without additional bracing, shoring, or lateral support until demolished or deconstructed, unless directed otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Ensure that no elements determined to be unstable are left unsupported and place and secure bracing, shoring, or lateral supports as may be required as a result of any cutting, removal, deconstruction, or demolition work performed under this contract.

1.4 BURNING

The use of burning at the project site for the disposal of refuse and debris will not be permitted. Where burning is permitted, adhere to federal, state, and local regulations.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Deconstruction Plan; G
Existing Conditions

SD-07 Certificates

Notification; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Receipts

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Submit timely notification of deconstruction and renovation projects to Federal, State, regional, and local authorities in accordance with 40 CFR 61, Subpart M. Notify the Regional Office of the United States Environmental

Protection Agency (USEPA) and the Contracting Officer in writing 10 working days prior to the commencement of work in accordance with 40 CFR 61, Subpart M. Comply with federal, state, and local hauling and disposal regulations. In addition to the requirements of the "Contract Clauses," conform to the safety requirements contained in ASSE/SAFE A10.6. Comply with the Environmental Protection Agency requirements specified. Use of explosives will not be permitted.

1.6.1 Dust and Debris Control

Prevent the spread of dust and debris to occupied portions of the building and avoid the creation of a nuisance or hazard in the surrounding area. Do not use water if it results in hazardous or objectionable conditions such as, but not limited to, ice, flooding, or pollution. Vacuum and dust the work area daily.

1.7 PROTECTION

1.7.1 Traffic Control Signs

a. Where pedestrian and driver safety is endangered in the area of removal work, use traffic barricades with flashing lights. Notify the Contracting Officer prior to beginning such work.

1.7.2 Protection of Personnel

Before, during and after the deconstruction work continuously evaluate the condition of the structure being deconstructed and take immediate action to protect all personnel working in and around the project site. No area, section, or component of floors, roofs, walls, columns, pilasters, or other structural element will be allowed to be left standing without sufficient bracing, shoring, or lateral support to prevent collapse or failure while workmen remove debris or perform other work in the immediate area.

1.8 RELOCATIONS

Perform the removal and reinstallation of relocated items as indicated with workmen skilled in the trades involved. Repair or replace items to be relocated which are damaged by the Contractor with new undamaged items as approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.9 EXISTING CONDITIONS

Before beginning any demolition or deconstruction work, survey the site and examine the drawings and specifications to determine the extent of the work. Record existing conditions in the presence of the Contracting Officer showing the condition of structures and other facilities adjacent to areas of alteration or removal. Photographs sized 4 inch will be acceptable as a record of existing conditions. Include in the record the elevation of the top of foundation walls, finish floor elevations, possible conflicting electrical conduits, plumbing lines, alarms systems, the location and extent of existing cracks and other damage and description of surface conditions that exist prior to before starting work. It is the Contractor's responsibility to verify and document all required outages which will be required during the course of work, and to note these outages on the record document. Submit survey results.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED) PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXISTING FACILITIES TO BE REMOVED

Inspect and evaluate existing structures onsite for reuse. Existing construction scheduled to be removed for reuse shall be disassembled. Dismantled and removed materials are to be separated, set aside, and prepared as specified, and stored or delivered to a collection point for reuse, remanufacture, recycling, or other disposal, as specified. Materials shall be designated for reuse onsite whenever possible.

3.1.1 Utilities and Related Equipment

3.1.1.1 General Requirements

Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or used facilities, except when authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied and used by the Government except when approved in writing and then only after temporary utility services have been approved and provided. Do not begin demolition or deconstruction work until all utility disconnections have been made. Shut off and cap utilities for future use, as indicated.

3.1.1.2 Disconnecting Existing Utilities

Remove existing utilities , as indicated and terminate in a manner conforming to the nationally recognized code covering the specific utility and approved by the Contracting Officer. When utility lines are encountered but are not indicated on the drawings, notify the Contracting Officer prior to further work in that area. Remove meters and related equipment and deliver to a location in accordance with instructions of the Contracting Officer.

3.1.2 Carpet

Remove existing carpet for reclamation in accordance with manufacturer recommendations and as follows. Remove used carpet in large pieces, roll tightly, and pack neatly in a container. Remove adhesive according to recommendations of the Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI). Adhesive removal solvents shall comply with CRI 104/CRI 105. Recycle removed carpet cushion.

3.1.3 Acoustic Ceiling Tile

Remove, neatly stack, and recycle acoustic ceiling tiles. Recycling may be available with manufacturer. Otherwise, priority shall be given to a local recycling organization. Recycling is not required if the tiles contain or may have been exposed to asbestos material.

3.1.4 Patching

Where removals leave holes and damaged surfaces exposed in the finished work, patch and repair these holes and damaged surfaces to match adjacent finished surfaces, using on-site materials when available. Where new work is to be applied to existing surfaces, perform removals and patching in a manner to produce surfaces suitable for receiving new work. Finished surfaces of patched area shall be flush with the adjacent existing surface and shall match the existing adjacent surface as closely as possible as to texture and finish. Patching shall be as specified and indicated, and shall include:

- a. Concrete and Masonry: Completely fill holes and depressions, caused by previous physical damage or left as a result of removals in existing masonry walls to remain, with an approved masonry patching material, applied in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.
- b. Where existing partitions have been removed leaving damaged or missing resilient tile flooring, patch to match the existing floor tile.
- c. Patch acoustic lay-in ceiling where partitions have been removed. The transition between the different ceiling heights shall be effected by continuing the higher ceiling level over to the first runner on the lower ceiling and closing the vertical opening with a painted sheet metal strip.

3.1.5 Locksets on Swinging Doors

Remove all locksets from all swinging doors indicated to be removed and disposed of. Deliver the locksets and related items to a designated location for receipt by the Contracting Officer after removal.

3.1.6 Mechanical Equipment and Fixtures

Disconnect mechanical hardware at the nearest connection to existing services to remain, unless otherwise noted. Disconnect mechanical equipment and fixtures at fittings. Remove service valves attached to the unit. Salvage each item of equipment and fixtures as a whole unit; listed, indexed, tagged, and stored. Salvage each unit with its normal operating auxiliary equipment. Transport salvaged equipment and fixtures, including motors and machines, to a designated storage area as directed by the Contracting Officer. Do not remove equipment until approved. Do not offer low-efficiency equipment for reuse; provide to recycling service for disassembly and recycling of parts.

3.1.6.1 Preparation for Storage

Remove water, dirt, dust, and foreign matter from units; tanks, piping and fixtures shall be drained; interiors, if previously used to store flammable, explosive, or other dangerous liquids, shall be steam cleaned. Seal openings with caps, plates, or plugs. Secure motors attached by flexible connections to the unit. Change lubricating systems with the proper oil or grease.

3.1.6.2 Piping

Disconnect piping at unions, flanges and valves, and fittings as required to reduce the pipe into straight lengths for practical storage. Store salvaged piping according to size and type. If the piping that remains can become pressurized due to upstream valve failure, end caps, blind flanges, or other types of plugs or fittings with a pressure gage and bleed valve shall be attached to the open end of the pipe to ensure positive leak control. Carefully dismantle piping that previously contained gas, gasoline, oil, or other dangerous fluids, with precautions taken to prevent injury to persons and property. Store piping outdoors until all fumes and residues are removed. Box prefabricated supports, hangers, plates, valves, and specialty items according to size and type. Wrap sprinkler heads individually in plastic bags before boxing. Classify piping not designated for salvage, or not reusable, as scrap metal.

3.1.6.3 Ducts

Classify removed duct work as scrap metal.

3.1.6.4 Fixtures, Motors and Machines

Remove and salvage fixtures, motors and machines associated with plumbing, heating, air conditioning, refrigeration, and other mechanical system installations. Salvage, box and store auxiliary units and accessories with the main motor and machines. Tag salvaged items for identification, storage, and protection from damage. Classify non-porcelain broken, damaged, or otherwise unserviceable units and not caused to be broken, damaged, or otherwise unserviceable as debris to be disposed of by the Contractor.

3.1.7 Electrical Equipment and Fixtures

Salvage motors, motor controllers, and operating and control equipment that are attached to the driven equipment. Salvage wiring systems and components. Box loose items and tag for identification. Disconnect primary, secondary, control, communication, and signal circuits at the point of attachment to their distribution system.

3.1.7.1 Fixtures

Remove and salvage electrical fixtures. Salvage unprotected glassware from the fixture and salvage separately. Salvage incandescent, mercury-vapor, and fluorescent lamps and fluorescent ballasts manufactured prior to 1978, boxed and tagged for identification, and protected from breakage.

3.1.7.2 Electrical Devices

Remove and salvage switches, switchgear, transformers, conductors including wire and nonmetallic sheathed and flexible armored cable, regulators, meters, instruments, plates, circuit breakers, panelboards, outlet boxes, and similar items. Box and tag these items for identification according to type and size.

3.1.7.3 Wiring Ducts or Troughs

Remove and salvage wiring ducts or troughs. Dismantle plug-in ducts and wiring troughs into unit lengths. Remove plug-in or disconnecting devices from the busway and store separately.

3.1.7.4 Conduit and Miscellaneous Items

Salvage conduit except where embedded in concrete or masonry. Consider corroded, bent, or damaged conduit as scrap metal. Sort straight and undamaged lengths of conduit according to size and type. Classify supports, knobs, tubes, cleats, and straps as debris to be removed and disposed.

3.1.8 Elevators and Hoists

Remove elevators, hoists, and similar conveying equipment and salvage as whole units, to the most practical extent. Remove and prepare items for salvage without damage to any of the various parts. Salvage and store rails for structural steel with the equipment as an integral part of the unit.

3.1.9 Items With Unique/Regulated Disposal Requirements

Remove and dispose of items with unique or regulated disposal requirements in the manner dictated by law or in the most environmentally responsible manner.

3.2 DISPOSITION OF MATERIAL

3.2.1 Title to Materials

Except for salvaged items specified in related Sections, and for materials or equipment scheduled for salvage, all materials and equipment removed and not reused or salvaged, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from Government property. Title to materials resulting from demolition and deconstruction, and materials and equipment to be removed, is vested in the Contractor upon approval by the Contracting Officer of the Contractor's demolition, deconstruction, and removal procedures, and authorization by the Contracting Officer to begin demolition and deconstruction. The Government will not be responsible for the condition or loss of, or damage to, such property after contract award. Showing for sale or selling materials and equipment on site is prohibited.

3.2.2 Reuse of Materials and Equipment

Remove and store materials and equipment listed Deconstruction Plan indicated to be reused or relocated to prevent damage, and reinstall as the work progresses.

3.2.3 Salvaged Materials and Equipment

Remove materials and equipment that are listed Deconstruction Plan indicated and specified to be removed by the Contractor and that are to remain the property of the Government, and deliver to a storage site.

- a. Salvage items and material to the maximum extent possible.
- b. Store all materials salvaged for the Contractor as approved by the Contracting Officer and remove from Government property before completion of the contract. On site sales of salvaged material is prohibited.
- c. Remove historical items in a manner to prevent damage. Deliver the following historical items to the Government for disposition: Corner stones, contents of corner stones, and document boxes wherever located on the site.

f.

The Government will remove and capture Class I ODS refrigerants. To view the web site for ODS, link to:
<https://www.osd.mil/denix/Public/News/DLA/ODS/sect1.html>

3.2.4 Disposal of Ozone Depleting Substance (ODS)

Class I and Class II ODS are defined in Section, 602(a) and (b), of The Clean Air Act. Prevent discharge of Class I and Class II ODS to the atmosphere. Place recovered ODS in cylinders meeting **AHRI Guideline K** suitable for the type ODS (filled to no more than 80 percent capacity) and

provide appropriate labeling. Recovered ODS shall be removed from Government property and disposed of in accordance with 40 CFR 82. Products, equipment and appliances containing ODS in a sealed, self-contained system (e.g. residential refrigerators and window air conditioners) shall be disposed of in accordance with 40 CFR 82. Submit Receipts or bills of lading, as specified. Submit a shipping receipt or bill of lading for all containers of ozone depleting substance (ODS) shipped to the Defense Depot, Richmond, Virginia.

3.2.4.1 Special Instructions

No more than one type of ODS is permitted in each container. A warning/hazardous label shall be applied to the containers in accordance with Department of Transportation regulations. All cylinders including but not limited to fire extinguishers, spheres, or canisters containing an ODS shall have a tag with the following information:

- a. Activity name and unit identification code
- b. Activity point of contact and phone number
- c. Type of ODS and pounds of ODS contained
- d. Date of shipment
- e. National stock number (for information, call (804) 279-4525).

3.2.4.2 Fire Suppression Containers

Deactivate fire suppression system cylinders and canisters with electrical charges or initiators prior to shipment. Also, safety caps must be used to cover exposed actuation mechanisms and discharge ports on these special cylinders.

3.2.5 Transportation Guidance

Ship all ODS containers in accordance with MIL-STD-129, DLA 4145.25 (also referenced one of the following: Army Regulation 700-68, Naval Supply Instruction 4440.128C, Marine Corps Order 10330.2C, and Air Force Regulation 67-12), 49 CFR 173.301, and DOD 4000.25-1-M.

3.2.6 Unsalvageable and Non-Recyclable Material

Dispose of unsalvageable and non-recyclable combustible material in the sanitary fill area located off the site.

3.3 CLEANUP

Remove debris and rubbish from basement and similar excavations. Remove and transport the debris in a manner that prevents spillage on streets or adjacent areas. Apply local regulations regarding hauling and disposal.

3.4 DISPOSAL OF REMOVED MATERIALS

3.4.1 Regulation of Removed Materials

Dispose of debris, rubbish, scrap, and other nonsalvageable materials resulting from removal operations with all applicable federal, state and local regulations as contractually specified in the Waste Management Plan.

Storage of removed materials on the project site is prohibited.

3.4.2 Burning on Government Property

Burning of materials removed from demolished and deconstructed structures will not be permitted on Government property.

3.4.3 Removal from Government Property

Transport waste materials removed from demolished and deconstructed structures from Government property for legal disposal.

3.5 REUSE OF SALVAGED ITEMS

Recondition salvaged materials and equipment designated for reuse before installation. Replace items damaged during removal and salvage operations or restore them as necessary to usable condition.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 02 82 13.00 10

ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 PAYMENT PROCEDURES

Submit copies of [weight bills and delivery tickets](#) for payment to the Contracting Officer during the progress of the work. Furnish scale tickets for each load of ACM weighed and certified. These tickets shall include tare weight; identification mark for each vehicle weighed; and date, time and location of loading and unloading. Tickets shall be furnished at the point and time individual trucks arrive at the worksite. A master log of all vehicle loading shall be furnished for each day of loading operations. Before the final statement is allowed, file with the Contracting Officer certified weigh bills and/or certified tickets and manifests of all ACM actually disposed by the Contractor for this contract.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

[ASTM D4397](#) (2010) Standard Specification for Polyethylene Sheeting for Construction, Industrial, and Agricultural Applications

COMPRESSED GAS ASSOCIATION (CGA)

[CGA G-7](#) (2014) Compressed Air for Human Respiration; 6th Edition

INTERNATIONAL SAFETY EQUIPMENT ASSOCIATION (ISEA)

[ANSI/ISEA Z87.1](#) (2015) Occupational and Educational Personal Eye and Face Protection Devices

NATIONAL INSTITUTE FOR OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH (NIOSH)

[NIOSH NMAM](#) (2016; 5th Ed) NIOSH Manual of Analytical Methods

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

[EM 385-1-1](#) (2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

[EP 1110-1-11](#) (1992; Change 1 1997) Engineering and Design -- Asbestos Abatement Guideline Detail Sheets

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

EPA 340/1-90/018 (1990) Asbestos/NESHAP Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials Guidance

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

- 29 CFR 1910.134 Respiratory Protection
- 29 CFR 1910.147 Control of Hazardous Energy (Lock Out/Tag Out)
- 29 CFR 1926.1101 Asbestos
- 29 CFR 1926.32 Safety and Health Regulations for Construction - Definition
- 40 CFR 61 National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants
- 40 CFR 763 Asbestos
- 42 CFR 84 Approval of Respiratory Protective Devices
- 49 CFR 107 Hazardous Materials Program Procedures
- 49 CFR 171 General Information, Regulations, and Definitions
- 49 CFR 172 Hazardous Materials Table, Special Provisions, Hazardous Materials Communications, Emergency Response Information, and Training Requirements
- 49 CFR 173 Shippers - General Requirements for Shipments and Packagings

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1.3.1 Asbestos-Containing Material (ACM)

Any materials containing more than one percent asbestos.

1.3.2 Authorized Person

Any person authorized by the Contractor and required by work duties to be present in the regulated areas.

1.3.3 Building Inspector

Individual who inspects buildings for asbestos and has EPA Model Accreditation Plan (MAP) "Building Inspector" training; accreditation required by 40 CFR 763, Subpart E, Appendix C, has EPA/State certification/license as a "Building Inspector".

1.3.4 Class II Asbestos Work

Activities defined by OSHA involving the removal of ACM which is not thermal system insulation or surfacing material. This includes, but is not

limited to, the removal of asbestos - containing wallboard, floor tile and sheeting, roofing and siding shingles, and construction mastic. Certain "incidental" roofing materials such as mastic, flashing and cements when they are still intact are excluded from Class II asbestos work. Removal of small amounts of these materials which would fit into a glovebag may be classified as a Class III job.

1.3.5 Competent Person

In addition to the definition in 29 CFR 1926.32(f), a person who is capable of identifying existing asbestos hazards as defined in 29 CFR 1926.1101, selecting the appropriate control strategy, has the authority to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them and has EPA Model Accreditation Plan (MAP) "Contractor/Supervisor" training; has EPA/State certification/license as a "Contractor/Supervisor".

1.3.6 Contractor/Supervisor

Individual who supervises asbestos abatement work and has EPA Model Accreditation Plan "Contractor/Supervisor" training; has EPA/State certification as a "Contractor/Supervisor".

1.3.7 Critical Barrier

One or more layers of plastic sealed over all openings into a regulated area or any other similarly placed physical barrier sufficient to prevent airborne asbestos in a regulated area from migrating to an adjacent area.

1.3.8 Demolition

The wrecking or taking out of any load-supporting structural member and any related razing, removing, or stripping of asbestos products.

1.3.9 Fiber

A fibrous particulate, 5 micrometers or longer, with a length to width ratio of at least 3 to 1.

1.3.10 Intact

ACM which has not crumbled, been pulverized, or otherwise deteriorated so that the asbestos is no longer likely to be bound with its matrix. Removal of "intact" asphaltic, resinous, cementitious products does not render the ACM non-intact simply by being separated into smaller pieces.

1.3.11 Negative Initial Exposure Assessment

A demonstration by the Contractor to show that employee exposure during an operation is expected to be consistently below the OSHA Permissible Exposure Limits (PELs).

1.3.12 NESHAP

National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants. The USEPA NESHAP regulation for asbestos is at 40 CFR 61, Subpart M.

1.3.13 Nonfriable ACM

A NESHAP term defined in 40 CFR 61, Subpart M and EPA 340/1-90/018 meaning

any material containing more than 1 percent asbestos that, when dry, cannot be crumbled, pulverized or reduced to powder by hand pressure.

1.3.14 Nonfriable ACM (Category I)

A NESHAP term defined in [40 CFR 61](#), Subpart E and [EPA 340/1-90/018](#) meaning asbestos-containing packings, gaskets, resilient floor covering, and asphalt roofing products containing more than 1 percent asbestos.

1.3.15 Nonfriable ACM (Category II)

A NESHAP term defined in [40 CFR 61](#), Subpart E and [EPA 340/1-90/018](#) meaning any material, excluding Category I nonfriable ACM, containing more than 1 percent asbestos.

1.3.16 Permissible Exposure Limits (PELs)

1.3.16.1 PEL-Time Weighted Average (TWA)

Concentration of asbestos not in excess of 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter of air (f/cc) as an 8 hour time weighted average (TWA).

1.3.16.2 PEL-Excursion Limit

An airborne concentration of asbestos not in excess of 1.0 f/cc of air as averaged over a sampling period of 30 minutes.

1.3.17 Regulated Area

An OSHA term defined in [29 CFR 1926.1101](#) meaning an area established by the Contractor to demarcate areas where Class I, II, and III asbestos work is conducted; also any adjoining area where debris and waste from such asbestos work accumulate; and an area within which airborne concentrations of asbestos exceed, or there is a reasonable possibility they may exceed, the permissible exposure limit.

1.3.18 Removal

All operations where ACM is taken out or stripped from structures or substrates, and includes demolition operations.

1.3.19 Worker

Individual (not designated as the Competent Person or a supervisor) who performs asbestos work and has completed asbestos worker training required by [29 CFR 1926.1101](#), to include EPA Model Accreditation Plan (MAP) "Worker" training; accreditation if required by the OSHA Class of work to be performed or by the state where the work is to be performed.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

This section covers all operations in which asbestos-containing materials (ACM) are encountered. These procedures and equipment are required to protect workers and building occupants from airborne asbestos fibers and ACM dust and debris. Activities include OSHA Class II work operations. This section also includes containment, storage, transportation and disposal of the generated ACM wastes. Submit [Detailed Drawings](#) in accordance with [EP 1110-1-11](#) and containing descriptions, and site layout to include [and](#) boundaries of each regulated area.

1.4.1 [Enter Appropriate Subpart Title Here]

1.4.2 Unexpected Discovery of Asbestos

For any previously untested building components suspected to contain asbestos and located in areas impacted by the work, notify the Contracting Officer (CO) who will have the option of ordering up to **six (6)** bulk samples to be obtained at the Contractor's expense and delivered to a laboratory accredited under the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) "National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP)" and analyzed by PLM. If the asbestos content is less than 10 percent, as determined by a method other than point counting, the asbestos content shall be verified by point counting. Sampling shall be conducted by personnel who have successfully completed the EPA Model Accreditation Plan (MAP) "Building Inspector" training course and is EPA/State certified/licensed as a "Building Inspector".

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detailed Drawings

SD-03 Product Data

Asbestos Waste Shipment Records; G

Weight Bills and Delivery Tickets

Respiratory Protection Program; G

Cleanup and Disposal; G

Qualifications; G

Training Program

Licenses, Permits and Notifications

Asbestos Management Plan; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Exposure Assessment and Air Monitoring

SD-07 Certificates

Medical Surveillance Requirements

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

In addition to detailed requirements of this specification, work performed under this contract shall comply with EM 385-1-1, applicable federal, state, and local laws, ordinances, criteria, rules and regulations regarding handling, storing, transporting, and disposing of asbestos waste materials. Matters of interpretation of standards shall be submitted to the appropriate administrative agency for resolution before starting work. Where the requirements of this specification, applicable laws, criteria, ordinances, regulations, and referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirements shall apply. The following state and local laws, rules and regulations apply: See Section 1.2.

1.6.1 Written Qualifications and Organization Report

Submit a written qualifications and organization report providing evidence of qualifications of the Contractor, Contractor's Project Supervisor, Designated Competent Person, supervisors and workers; independent testing laboratory; all subcontractors to be used including disposal transportation and disposal facility firms, subcontractor supervisors, subcontractor workers. Include in the report an organization chart showing the Contractor's staff organization chain of command and reporting relationship with all subcontractors. The report shall be signed by the Contractor, the Contractor's onsite project manager, Designated Competent Person, designated testing laboratory and the principals of all subcontractors to be used. Include the following statement in the report: "By signing this report I certify that the personnel I am responsible for during the course of this project fully understand the contents of 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61, Subpart M, and the federal, state and local requirements for those activities that they will be involved in."

1.6.2 Specific Requirements

Designate in writing, personnel meeting the following qualifications:

- a. Asbestos Abatement Contractor: Certified/licensed New Jersey Department of Community Affairs (NJDCA) to perform asbestos-related activities.
- b. Designated Competent Person: Qualified in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.32 and 29 CFR 1926.1101, has EPA MAP "Contractor/Supervisor" training accreditation, has EPA/State certification/license as a "Contractor/Supervisor" and is experienced in the administration and supervision of asbestos abatement projects. The Designated Competent Person shall be responsible for compliance with applicable federal, state and local requirements, the Contractor's Accident Prevention Plan (APP) and Asbestos Hazard Plan (AHAP). Submit the "Contractor/Supervisor" course completion certificate and the most recent certificate for required refresher training and NJDCA license. Submit evidence that this person has a minimum of 2 years of on-the-job asbestos abatement experience relevant to OSHA competent person requirements. The Designated Competent Person shall be onsite at all times during the conduct of this project.
- c. Project and Other Supervisors:
- d. Asbestos Abatement Workers: Meet the requirements contained in 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61, Subpart M, and other applicable federal, state and local requirements. Worker training documentation shall be

provided as required on the "Certificate of Workers Acknowledgment". Training documentation is required for each employee who will perform OSHA Class II, asbestos abatement operations. Such documentation shall be submitted on a Contractor generated form titled "Certificate of Workers Acknowledgment", to be completed for each employee in the same format and containing the same information as the example certificate at the end of this section. Training course completion certificates (initial and most recent update refresher) required by the information checked on the form shall be attached.

- d. Physician: Resume of the physician who will or has performed the medical examinations and evaluations of the persons who will conduct the asbestos abatement work tasks. The physician shall be currently licensed by the state where the workers will be or have been examined, have expertise in pneumoconiosis and shall be responsible for the determination of medical surveillance protocols and for review of examination/test results performed in compliance with 29 CFR 1926.1101. The physician shall be familiar with the site's hazards and the scope of this project.
- f. Independent Testing Laboratory: identify the independent testing laboratory selected to perform the sample analyses and report the results. The testing laboratory shall be completely independent from the Contractor as recognized by federal, state or local regulations. Written verification of the following criteria, signed by the testing laboratory principal and the Contractor, shall be submitted:
 - (1) Phase contrast microscopy (PCM): The laboratory is fully equipped and proficient in conducting PCM of airborne samples using the methods specified by 29 CFR 1926.1101, OSHA method ID-160, the most current version of NIOSH NMAM Method 7400 as shown in Table 3 at the end of this Section. The laboratory shall be currently judged proficient (classified as acceptable) in counting airborne asbestos samples by PCM by successful participation in each of the last 4 rounds in the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) Proficiency Analytical Testing (PAT) Program or by participating in the AIHA PAT Program, and being judged proficient in counting samples.
 - (2) Polarized light microscopy (PLM): The laboratory is fully equipped and proficient in conducting PLM analyses of suspect ACM bulk samples in accordance with 40 CFR 763, Subpart E, Appendix E; the laboratory is currently accredited by NIST under the NVLAP for bulk asbestos analysis and will use analysts with demonstrated proficiency to conduct PLM analyses.
- g. Disposal Facility, Transporter: Written evidence that the landfill to be used is approved for asbestos disposal by the USEPA and state and local regulatory agencies. Copies of signed agreements between the Contractor (including subcontractors and transporters) and the asbestos waste disposal facility to accept and dispose of all asbestos containing waste shall be provided. The Contractor and transporters shall meet the DOT requirements of 49 CFR 171, 49 CFR 172, and 49 CFR 173 as well as registration requirements of 49 CFR 107 and other applicable state or local requirements. The disposal facility shall meet the requirements of 40 CFR 61, Sections .154 or .155, as required in 40 CFR 61 150(b), and other applicable state or local requirements.

1.6.3 Preconstruction Conference

The Contractor and the Contractor's Designated Competent Person, Project Supervisor, shall meet with the Contracting Officer (CO) prior to beginning work at a safety preconstruction conference to discuss the details of the Contractor's submitted APP to include the AHAP and AHAS appendices. Deficiencies in the APP will be discussed. Onsite work shall not begin until the APP has been accepted.

1.7 SAFETY

Prepare a written comprehensive site-specific Accident Prevention Plan (APP) at least 30 days prior to the preconstruction conference. The APP shall be in accordance with the format and requirements in Appendix A of EM 385-1-1. The APP shall incorporate an Asbestos Hazard Plan (AHAP), and Activity Hazard Analyses (AHAs) as separate appendices into one site-specific document.

1.7.1 Asbestos Hazard Plan Appendix

The AHAP shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- a. The personal protective equipment to be used;
- b. The location and description of regulated areas , as needed;
- c. Initial exposure assessment in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101;
- d. Level of supervision;
- e. Method of notification of other employers at the worksite;
- f. containment and control procedures;
- g. Interface of trades;
- h. Sequencing work;
- i. disposal procedures
- j. wetting agent ;
- l. Air monitoring methods (personal, environmental);
- m. Bulk sampling and analytical methods (if required);
- n. A detailed description of the method to be employed in order to control the spread of ACM wastes and airborne fiber;
- o. Fire and medical emergency response procedures;
- p. The security procedures to be used for all regulated areas.

1.7.2 Activity Hazard Analyses Appendix

AHAs for each major phase of work, shall be submitted and updated during the project. The AHAs format shall be in accordance with Figure 1-1 of

EM 385-1-1. The analysis shall define the activities to be performed for a major phase of work, identify the sequence of work, the specific hazards anticipated, and the control measures to be implemented to eliminate or reduce each hazard to an acceptable level. Work shall not proceed on that phase until the AHA has been accepted and a preparatory meeting has been conducted by the Contractor to discuss its contents with everyone engaged in the activities, including the onsite Government representatives. The AHAs shall be continuously reviewed and, when appropriate, modified to address changing site conditions or operations.

1.8 SECURITY

Entry into regulated areas shall only be by personnel authorized by the Contractor and the CO. Personnel authorized to enter regulated areas shall be trained, and wear the required personal protective equipment.

1.8.1 Licenses, Permits and Notifications

Obtain necessary licenses, permits and notifications in conjunction with the project's asbestos abatement, transportation and disposal actions and timely notification furnished of such actions as required by federal, state, regional, and local authorities. Notify the Regional Office of the USEPA and the appropriate State agencies in writing, at least 10 days prior to the commencement of work, in accordance with 40 CFR 61, Subpart M, and state and local requirements to include the mandatory "Notification of Demolition and Renovation Record" form and other required notification documents. Notify by Certified Mail, Return Receipt Requested. Furnish copies of the receipts to the CO, in writing, prior to the commencement of work. The associated fees/costs for licenses, permits, and notifications are in contract.

1.8.2 Regulated Areas

All Class II, asbestos work shall be conducted within regulated areas. The regulated area shall be demarcated to minimize the number of persons within the area and to protect persons outside the area from exposure to airborne asbestos. Control access to regulated areas, ensure that only authorized personnel enter, and verify that Contractor required medical surveillance, training and respiratory protection program requirements are met prior to allowing entrance.

1.8.3 Warning Signs and Tape

Warning signs and tape printed in English and Spanish shall be provided at the regulated boundaries and entrances to regulated areas. Signs shall be located to allow personnel to read the signs and take the necessary protective steps required before entering the area. Warning signs, as shown, and displaying the following legend in the lower panel:

DANGER
ASBESTOS
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY
[RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING ARE REQUIRED IN THIS AREA]

1.8.4 Warning Labels

Warning labels shall be affixed to all asbestos disposal containers,

asbestos materials, scrap, waste debris, and other products contaminated with asbestos. Containers with preprinted warning labels conforming to requirements are acceptable.

1.9 MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE REQUIREMENTS

Medical surveillance requirements shall conform to 29 CFR 1926.1101. Asbestos workers shall be enrolled in a medical surveillance program that meets 29 CFR 1926.1101 (m) requirements and other pertinent state or local requirements. This requirement shall have been satisfied within the last 12 months. Submit required medical certification and the Physician's written opinion.

1.9.1 Respiratory Protection Program

The Contractor shall establish in writing, and implement a respiratory protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101 and 29 CFR 1910.134. The Contractor shall establish minimum respiratory protection requirements based on measured or anticipated levels of airborne asbestos fiber concentrations.

1.9.2 Respiratory Fit Testing

The Contractor shall conduct a qualitative or quantitative fit test conforming to Appendix A of 29 CFR 1910.134 for each worker required to wear a respirator, and any authorized visitors who enter a regulated area where respirators are required to be worn. A respirator fit test shall be performed prior to initially wearing a respirator and every 12 months thereafter. If physical changes develop that will affect the fit, a new fit test shall be performed. Functional fit checks shall be performed each time a respirator is put on and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

1.9.3 Respirator Selection and Use Requirements

Provide respirators, and ensure that they are used as required by 29 CFR 1926.1101 and in accordance with CGA G-7 and the manufacturer's recommendations. Respirators shall be approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health NIOSH, under the provisions of 42 CFR 84, for use in environments containing airborne asbestos fibers. The initial respirator selection and the decisions regarding the upgrading or downgrading of respirator type shall be made by the Contractor based on the measured or anticipated airborne asbestos fiber concentrations to be encountered.

1.9.4 Personal Protective Equipment

Three complete sets of personal protective equipment shall be made available to the CO and authorized visitors for entry to the regulated area. The CO and authorized visitors shall be provided with training equivalent to that provided to Contractor employees in the selection, fitting, and use of personal protective equipment and the site safety and health requirements. Provide workers with personal protective clothing and equipment and ensure that it is worn properly. The Designated Competent Person shall select and approve all the required personal protective clothing and equipment.

1.9.5 Whole Body Protection

Personnel exposed to or having the potential to be exposed to airborne concentrations of asbestos that exceed the PELs, or for all OSHA Classes of work for which a required negative exposure assessment is not produced, shall be provided with whole body protection and such protection shall be worn properly. Disposable whole body protection shall be disposed of as asbestos contaminated waste upon exiting from the regulated area. Reusable whole body protection worn shall be either disposed of as asbestos contaminated waste upon exiting from the regulated area or be properly laundered in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101. The Contractor's Designated Competent Person has the authority to take immediate action to upgrade or downgrade whole body protection when there is an immediate danger to the health and safety of the wearer.

1.9.5.1 Gloves

Gloves shall be provided to protect the hands where there is the potential for hand injuries (i.e., scrapes, punctures, cuts, etc.).

1.9.5.2 Foot Coverings

Footwear, as required by OSHA and EM 385-1-1, that is appropriate for safety and health hazards in the area shall be worn.

1.9.5.3 Head Covering

protective head gear (hard hats) shall be provided as required.

1.9.5.4 Protective Eye Wear

Eye protection shall be provided, when operations present a potential eye injury hazard, and shall meet the requirements of ANSI/ISEA Z87.1.

1.10 HYGIENE

Establish a decontamination area for the decontamination of employees, material and equipment. Ensure that employees enter and exit the regulated area through the decontamination area.

1.10.1 Single Stage Decontamination Area

A decontamination area (equipment room/area) shall be provided for Class II asbestos work operations where exposures exceed the PELs or where there is no negative exposure assessment. The equipment room or area shall be adjacent to the regulated area for the decontamination of employees, material, and their equipment which could be contaminated with asbestos. The area shall be covered by an impermeable drop cloth on the floor or horizontal working surface. The area must be of sufficient size to accommodate cleaning of equipment and removing personal protective equipment without spreading contamination beyond the area.

1.10.2 Smoking

Smoking, if allowed by the Contractor, shall only be permitted in designated areas approved by the CO.

1.11 TRAINING PROGRAM

Establish and submit a training program as specified by the State of [New Jersey](#), OSHA requirements at [29 CFR 1926.1101](#) (k)(9). Contractor employees shall complete the required training for the type of work they are to perform and such training shall be documented and provided to the CO.

- a. Class I and II operations 32 hours Asbestos Worker Training
- b. Class II generic removal 8 hour Asbestos Worker Training
- c. Class III operations 16 hour O & M Training
- d. Class IV operations 2 hour Awareness Training

Prior to commencement of work the Contractor's Competent Person shall instruct each worker about:

- a. The hazards and health effects of the ACM and
- b. The content and requirements of the Contractor's APP to include the AHAP and AHAs and site-specific safety and health precautions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 RECYCLABLE MATERIALS

Recyclable materials shall conform to EPA requirements.

2.2 EXPENDABLE SUPPLIES

2.2.1 Duct Tape

Industrial grade duct tape of appropriate widths suitable for bonding sheet plastic and disposal container.

2.2.2 Disposal Containers

Leak-tight (defined as solids, liquids, or dust that cannot escape or spill out) disposal containers shall be provided for ACM wastes as required by [29 CFR 1926.1101](#). Disposal containers can be in the form of:

- a. Disposal Bags
- b. Fiberboard Drums
- c. Cardboard Boxes

2.2.3 Sheet Plastic

Sheet plastic shall be polyethylene of [6 mil](#) minimum thickness and shall be provided in the largest sheet size necessary to minimize seams. Film shall be frosted and conform to [ASTM D4397](#),

2.3 EQUIPMENT

2.3.1 Scales

Scales used for measurement shall be public scales. Weighing shall be at a point nearest the work at which a public scale is available. Scales shall be standard truck scales of the beam type; scales shall be equipped with the type registering beam and an "over and under" indicator; and shall be

capable of accommodating the entire vehicle. Scales shall be tested, approved and sealed by an inspector of the State of [New Jersey](#). Scales shall be calibrated and resealed as often as necessary and at least once every three months to ensure continuous accuracy. Vehicles used for hauling ACM shall be weighed empty daily at such time as directed and each vehicle shall bear a plainly legible identification mark.

2.3.2 Tools

Power tools shall not be used to remove ACM unless the tool is equipped with effective, integral HEPA filtered exhaust ventilation capture and collection system. Reusable tools shall be thoroughly decontaminated prior to being removed from regulated areas.

2.3.3 Rental Equipment

If rental equipment is to be used, written notification shall be provided to the rental agency, concerning the intended use of the equipment, the possibility of asbestos contamination of the equipment and the steps that will be taken to decontaminate such equipment.

2.3.4 Air Monitoring Equipment

The Contractor shall approve air monitoring equipment.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Use the engineering controls and work practices required in [29 CFR 1926.1101](#) (g) in all operations regardless of the levels of exposure. Personnel shall wear and utilize protective clothing and equipment. Do not permit eating, smoking, drinking, chewing or applying cosmetics in the regulated area. Personnel of other trades, shall not be exposed at any time to airborne concentrations of asbestos unless all the administrative and personal protective provisions of the Contractor's APP are complied with. Power to the regulated area shall be locked-out and tagged in accordance with [29 CFR 1910.147](#), and temporary electrical service with ground fault circuit interrupters shall be provided as needed. Temporary electrical service shall be disconnected when necessary for wet removal.

3.2 PROTECTION OF ADJACENT WORK OR AREAS TO REMAIN

Perform asbestos abatement without damage to or contamination of adjacent work or area. Where such work or area is damaged or contaminated, it shall be restored to its original condition or decontaminated at no expense to the Government. When spills occur, work shall stop in all effected areas immediately and the spill shall be cleaned. When satisfactory visual inspection results are obtained and have been evaluated by the Contractor and the CO, work shall proceed.

3.3 METHODS OF COMPLIANCE

3.3.1 Mandated Practices

The specific abatement techniques and items identified shall be detailed in the Contractor's AHAP. Use the following engineering controls and work practices in all operations, regardless of the levels of exposure:

- b. Wet methods except where it can be demonstrated that the use of wet methods is unfeasible .
- c. Prompt clean-up and disposal.

- e. Cleaning of equipment prior to removing them from the equipment area.

3.3.2 Control Methods

Use the following control methods:

- a. isolation of processes producing asbestos dust;

- c. Power tools shall not be used to remove ACM unless the tool is equipped with effective, integral HEPA filtered exhaust ventilation capture and collection system.

3.3.3 Unacceptable Practices

The following work practices shall not be used:

- a. High-speed abrasive disc saws that are not equipped with point of cut ventilator or enclosures with HEPA filtered exhaust air.

- c. Dry sweeping, shoveling, or other dry clean up.

3.3.4 Class II Work

In addition to the requirements of paragraphs Mandated Practices and Control Methods, the following engineering controls and work practices shall be used:

- a. A Competent Person shall supervise the work.

3.4 EXPOSURE ASSESSMENT AND AIR MONITORING

3.4.1 General Requirements

- a. Exposure assessment, air monitoring and analysis of airborne concentration of asbestos fibers shall be performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101, and the Contractor's air monitoring plan. Results of breathing zone samples shall be posted at the job site and made available to the CO. Submit all documentation regarding initial exposure assessments, negative exposure assessments, and air-monitoring

results.

b. Worker Exposure.

(1) The Contractor shall collect samples representative of the exposure of each employee who is assigned to work within a regulated area. Breathing zone samples shall be taken for at least 25 percent of the workers in each shift, or a minimum of 2, whichever is greater. Air monitoring results at the 95 percent confidence level shall be calculated as shown in Table 1 at the end of this section.

(1) All environmental air monitoring shall be performed by the .

(2) Environmental air monitoring shall be performed using NIOSH NMAM Method 7400 (PCM)

(3) For environmental monitoring shall be conducted at a sufficient velocity and duration to establish the limit of detection of the method used at 0.005 f/cc.

(4)

(5) Monitoring may be duplicated by the Government at the discretion of the CO and at the Government's expense.

(6) Maintain a fiber concentration inside a regulated area less than or equal to 0.1 f/cc expressed as an 8 hour, time-weighted average (TWA) .

(7) stop work immediately, notify the Contracting Officer, and implement additional engineering controls and work practice controls to reduce airborne fiber levels below prescribed limits in the work area. Work shall not restart until authorized by the CO.

3.4.2 Initial Exposure Assessment

The Contractor shall conduct an exposure assessment immediately before or at the initiation of an operation to ascertain expected exposures during that operation. The assessment shall be completed in time to comply with the requirements, which are triggered by exposure data or the lack of a negative exposure assessment, and to provide information necessary to assure that all control systems planned are appropriate for that operation. The assessment shall take into consideration monitoring results and all observations, information or calculations which indicate employee exposure to asbestos, including any previous monitoring conducted in the workplace, or of the operations of the Contractor which indicate the levels of airborne asbestos likely to be encountered on the job.

3.4.3 Negative Exposure Assessment

Provide a negative exposure assessment for the specific asbestos job which will be performed within five (5) days of the initiation of the project and conform to the following criteria:

a. Initial Exposure Monitoring: The results of initial exposure

monitoring of the current job, made from breathing zone air samples that are representative of the 8-hour PEL-TWA and 30-minute short-term exposures of each employee. The monitoring covered exposure from operations which are most likely during the performance of the entire asbestos job to result in exposures over the PELs.

3.4.4 Independent Environmental Monitoring

The Government has retained an independent air monitoring firm to perform **environmental** air monitoring. The air monitoring Contractor has been provided a copy of the contract that includes this work. The Contractor will provide the air monitoring Contractor with an up-to-date copy of the accepted AHAP, APP and pertinent detailed drawings. The air monitoring Contractor is required to comply with the Contractor's safety and health requirements. The Contractor will coordinate all onsite activities with the air monitoring Contractor, the COR, and other affected parties as directed by the COR. The Contractor will provide the air monitoring Contractor with an up-to-date schedule of Contractor work activities. The air monitoring Contractor will coordinate with the Contractor and the COR during the performance Government required air monitoring. The Contractor is responsible for performing exposure assessment and personal air monitoring of Contractor's work. The air monitoring Contractor is responsible for performing these tasks for its employee.

3.4.5 Environmental Air Monitoring

Until an exposure assessment is provided to the CO, environmental air monitoring shall be conducted at locations and frequencies that will accurately characterize any evolving airborne asbestos fiber concentrations. The assessment shall demonstrate that the product or material containing asbestos minerals, or the abatement involving such product or material, cannot release airborne asbestos fibers in concentrations exceeding 0.01 f/cc as a TWA under those work conditions having the greatest potential for releasing asbestos. The monitoring shall be at least once per shift at locations including, but not limited to, close to the work inside a regulated area; **and** representative locations outside of the perimeter of a regulated area. If the sampling outside regulated area shows airborne fiber levels have exceeded 0.01 f/cc, work shall be stopped immediately, and the Contracting Officer notified. The condition causing the increase shall be corrected. Work shall not restart until authorized by the CO.

3.4.6 Air-Monitoring Results and Documentation

Air sample fiber counting shall be completed and results provided within 24 hours (breathing zone samples), and 24 hours (environmental monitoring) after completion of a sampling period. The CO shall be notified immediately of any airborne levels of asbestos fibers in excess of established requirements. Written sampling results shall be provided within 5 working days of the date of collection. The written results shall be signed by testing laboratory analyst **and** testing laboratory principal. The air sampling results shall be documented on a Contractor's **and CO's IH** daily air monitoring log. The air monitoring log shall contain the following information for each sample:

- a. Sampling and analytical method used;
- b. Date sample collected;

- c. Sample number;
- d. Sample type: BZ = Breathing Zone (Personal), E = Environmental;
- e. Location/activity/name where sample collected;
- f. Sampling pump manufacturer, model and serial number, beginning flow rate, end flow rate, average flow rate (L/min);
- g. Calibration date, time, method, location, name of calibrator, signature;
- h. Sample period (start time, stop time, elapsed time (minutes));
- i. Total air volume sampled (liters);
- j. Sample results (f/cc);
- k. Laboratory name, location, analytical method, analyst, confidence level. In addition, the printed name and a signature and date block for who conducted the sampling and who reviewed the daily air monitoring log verifying the accuracy of the information.

3.5 CLEARANCE CERTIFICATION

When final clean-up is completed, the CO will allow the warning signs and boundary warning tape to be removed. The Contractor and the CO shall visually inspect all surfaces **work areas** for residual material or accumulated debris. Reclean all areas showing residual materials. The CO will certify in writing that the area is safe before unrestricted entry is permitted.

3.6 CLEANUP AND DISPOSAL

3.6.1 Title to ACM Materials

ACM material resulting from abatement work, except as specified otherwise, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be disposed of as specified and in accordance with applicable federal, state and local regulations.

3.6.2 Collection and Disposal of Asbestos

All ACM waste shall be collected disposed of at an EPA, state and local approved asbestos landfill off Government property. Procedure for hauling and disposal shall comply with **40 CFR 61**, Subpart M, state, regional, and local standards. Submit manufacturer's catalog data for all materials and equipment to be used, including brand name, model, capacity, performance characteristics and any other pertinent information. Safety Data Sheets for all chemicals to be used onsite in the same format as implemented in the Contractor's HAZARD COMMUNICATION PROGRAM. Data shall include, but shall not be limited to, the following items:

- b. Air monitoring equipment
- c. Respirators
- d. Personal protective clothing and equipment

k. Safety Data Sheets (for all chemicals proposed)

3.6.3 Records and Management Plan

3.6.3.1 Asbestos Waste Shipment Records

Complete and provide the CO final completed copies of the Waste Shipment Record for all shipments of waste material as specified in 40 CFR 61, Subpart M and other required state waste manifest shipment records, within 3 days of delivery to the landfill. Each Waste Shipment Record shall be signed and dated by the CO or COR, the waste transporter and disposal facility operator.

3.6.3.2 Asbestos Management Plan

Provide a summary, in electronic form, of site activities (bulk samples, asbestos removed, repaired, encased, etc.) for updating the installation Asbestos Management Plan.

TABLE 1

FORMULA FOR CALCULATION OF THE 95 PERCENT CONFIDENCE LEVEL
(Reference: NIOSH 7400)

$$\text{Fibers/cc(01.95 percent CL)} = X + [(X) * (1.645) * (CV)]$$

Where: $X = ((E)(AC)) / ((V)(1000))$

$$E = ((F/Nf) - (B/Nb)) / Af$$

CV = The precision value; 0.45 shall be used unless the analytical laboratory provides the Contracting Officer with documentation (Round Robin Program participation and results) that the laboratory's precision is better.

AC = Effective collection area of the filter in square millimeters

V = Air volume sampled in liters

E = Fiber density on the filter in fibers per square millimeter

F/Nf = Total fiber count per graticule field

B/Nb = Mean field blank count per graticule field

Af = Graticule field area in square millimeters

$$\text{TWA} = C1/T1 + C2/T2 = Cn/Tn$$

Where: C = Concentration of contaminant

T = Time sampled.

CERTIFICATE OF WORKER'S ACKNOWLEDGMENT

PROJECT NAME _____ CONTRACT NO. _____
PROJECT ADDRESS _____
CONTRACTOR FIRM NAME _____
EMPLOYEE'S NAME _____
(Print) (Last) (First) (MI)

Social Security Number: _____ - _____ - _____, (Optional)

WORKING WITH ASBESTOS CAN BE DANGEROUS. INHALING ASBESTOS FIBERS HAS BEEN LINKED WITH TYPES OF LUNG DISEASE AND CANCER. IF YOU SMOKE AND INHALE ASBESTOS FIBERS, THE CHANCE THAT YOU WILL DEVELOP LUNG CANCER IS GREATER THAN THAT OF THE NONSMOKING PUBLIC.

Your employer's contract for the above project requires that you be provided and you complete formal asbestos training specific to the type of work you will perform and project specific training; that you be supplied with proper personal protective equipment including a respirator, that you be trained in its use; and that you receive a medical examination to evaluate your physical capacity to perform your assigned work tasks, under the environmental conditions expected, while wearing the required personal protective equipment. These things are to be done at no cost to you. By signing this certification, you are acknowledging that your employer has met these obligations to you. The Contractor's Designated Industrial Hygienist will check the block(s) for the type of formal training you have completed. Review the checked blocks prior to signing this certification.

FORMAL TRAINING:

a. For Competent Persons and Supervisors: I have completed EPA's Model Accreditation Program (MAP) training course, "Contractor/Supervisor", that meets this State's requirements.

b. For Workers:

(1) For OSHA Class I work: I have completed EPA's MAP training course, "Worker", that meets this State's requirements.

(2) For OSHA Class II work (where there will be abatement of more than one type of Class II materials, i.e., roofing, siding, floor tile, etc.): I have completed EPA's MAP training course, "Worker", that meets this State's requirements.

(3) For OSHA Class II work (there will only be abatement of one type of Class II material):

(a) I have completed an 8-hour training class on the elements of 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii), in addition to the specific work practices and engineering controls of 29 CFR 1926.1101(g) and hands-on training.

(b) I have completed EPA's MAP training course, "Worker", that meets this State's requirements.

(4) For OSHA Class III work: I have completed at least a 16-hour course consistent with EPA requirements for training of local education agency maintenance and custodial staff at 40 CFR 763, Section .92(a)(2) and the elements of 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii), in addition to the specific work practices and engineering controls at 29 CFR 1926.1101, and hands-on training.

CERTIFICATE OF WORKER'S ACKNOWLEDGMENT

_____ (5) For OSHA Class IV work: I have completed at least a 2-hr course consistent with EPA requirements for training of local education agency maintenance and custodial staff at 40 CFR 763, (a)(1), and the elements of 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii), in addition to the specific work practices and engineering controls at 29 CFR 1926.1101(g) and hands-on training.

_____ c. Workers, Supervisors and the Designated Competent Person: I have completed annual refresher training as required by EPA's MAP that meets this State's requirements.

PROJECT SPECIFIC TRAINING:

_____ I have been provided and have completed the project specific training required by this Contract. My employer's Designated Industrial Hygienist and Designated Competent Person conducted the training.

RESPIRATORY PROTECTION:

_____ I have been trained in accordance with the criteria in the Contractor's Respiratory Protection program. I have been trained in the dangers of handling and breathing asbestos dust and in the proper work procedures and use and limitations of the respirator(s) I will wear. I have been trained in and will abide by the facial hair and contact lens use policy of my employer.

RESPIRATOR FIT-TEST TRAINING:

_____ I have been trained in the proper selection, fit, use, care, cleaning, maintenance, and storage of the respirator(s) that I will wear. I have been fit-tested in accordance with the criteria in the Contractor's Respiratory Program and have received a satisfactory fit. I have been assigned my individual respirator. I have been taught how to properly perform positive and negative pressure fit-check upon donning negative pressure respirators each time.

EPA/NEW JERSEY CERTIFICATION/LICENSE

I have an EPA/NJ certification/license as:
Building Inspector/Management Planner; Certification # _____
Contractor/Supervisor, Certification # _____
Project Designer, Certification # _____
Worker, Certification # _____

MEDICAL EXAMINATION:

_____ I have had a medical examination within the last twelve months which was paid for by my employer. The examination included: health history, pulmonary function tests, and may have included an evaluation of a chest x-ray. A physician made a determination regarding my physical capacity to perform work tasks on the project while wearing personal protective equipment including a respirator. I was personally provided a copy and informed of the results of that examination. My employer's Industrial Hygienist evaluated the medical certification provided by the physician and checked the appropriate blank below. The physician determined that there:

_____ were no limitations to performing the required work tasks.
_____ were identified physical limitations to performing the required work tasks.

CERTIFICATE OF WORKER'S ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Date of the medical examination _____

Employee Signature _____ date _____

Contractor's Industrial

Hygienist Signature _____ date _____

-- End of Section --

SECTION 03 30 00

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE INTERNATIONAL (ACI)

ACI 117	(2010; Errata 2011) Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials and Commentary
ACI 121R	(2008) Guide for Concrete Construction Quality Systems in Conformance with ISO 9001
ACI 211.1	(1991; R 2009) Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight and Mass Concrete
ACI 301	(2010; ERTA 2015) Specifications for Structural Concrete
ACI 302.1R	(2015) Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction
ACI 304.2R	(1996; R 2008) Placing Concrete by Pumping Methods
ACI 304R	(2000; R 2009) Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete
ACI 305R	(2010) Guide to Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 306.1	(1990; R 2002) Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 306R	(2010) Guide to Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 308.1	(2011) Specification for Curing Concrete
ACI 318	(2014; Errata 1-2 2014; Errata 3-5 2015; Errata 6 2016) Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary
ACI 347	(2004; Errata 2008; Errata 2012) Guide to Formwork for Concrete
ACI SP-15	(2011) Field Reference Manual: Standard Specifications for Structural Concrete ACI 301-05 with Selected ACI References

ACI SP-2 (2007; Abstract: 10th Edition) ACI Manual of Concrete Inspection

ACI SP-66 (2004) ACI Detailing Manual

AMERICAN HARDBOARD ASSOCIATION (AHA)

AHA A135.4 (1995; R 2004) Basic Hardboard

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1064 (2016a) Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete

ASTM A615 (2016) Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A706 (2016) Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A934 (2016) Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel Reinforcing Bars

ASTM A996 (2016) Standard Specification for Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM C1017 (2013; E 2015) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete

ASTM C1077 (2016) Standard Practice for Laboratories Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Laboratory Evaluation

ASTM C1107 (2014a) Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)

ASTM C1260 (2014) Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates (Mortar-Bar Method)

ASTM C138 (2016) Standard Test Method for Density ("Unit Weight"), Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete

ASTM C143 (2015a) Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete

ASTM C150 (2016) Standard Specification for Portland Cement

ASTM C1602	(2012) Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM C172	(2014a) Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C173	(2016) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method
ASTM C192	(2016) Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory
ASTM C231	(2014) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C260	(2010a) Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C31	(2015a; E 2016) Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
ASTM C33	(2016) Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C39	(2016) Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
ASTM C42	(2013) Standard Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete
ASTM C494	(2015a) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C552	(2016) Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
ASTM C567	(2014) Determining Density of Structural Lightweight Concrete
ASTM C578	(2015b) Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
ASTM C591	(2016) Standard Specification for Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation
ASTM C78	(2015b) Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam with Third-Point Loading)
ASTM C920	(2014a) Standard Specification for

Elastomeric Joint Sealants

- ASTM C94 (2016) Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
- ASTM D1751 (2004; E 2013; R 2013) Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
- ASTM D1752 (2004a; R 2013) Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion
- ASTM D412 (2015a) Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers - Tension
- ASTM D471 (2016) Standard Test Method for Rubber Property - Effect of Liquids
- ASTM D6690 (2015) Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements
- ASTM E1155 (2014) Standard Test Method for Determining Floor Flatness and Floor Levelness Numbers
- ASTM E1643 (2011) Standard Practice for Selection, Design, Installation, and Inspection of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs
- ASTM E1745 (2011) Standard Specification for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs
- ASTM E329 (2014a) Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in the Testing and/or Inspection of Materials Used in Construction

CONCRETE REINFORCING STEEL INSTITUTE (CRSI)

- CRSI 10MSP (2009; 28th Ed) Manual of Standard Practice

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

- NIST PS 1 (2009) DOC Voluntary Product Standard PS 1-07, Structural Plywood

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

- COE CRD-C 513 (1974) Corps of Engineers Specifications for Rubber Waterstops
- COE CRD-C 572 (1974) Corps of Engineers Specifications

for Polyvinylchloride Waterstops

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- a. "Cementitious material" as used herein must include all portland cement, pozzolan, fly ash, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.
- b. "Exposed to public view" means situated so that it can be seen from eye level from a public location after completion of the building. A public location is accessible to persons not responsible for operation or maintenance of the building.
- c. "Chemical admixtures" are materials in the form of powder or fluids that are added to the concrete to give it certain characteristics not obtainable with plain concrete mixes.
- d. "Supplementary cementing materials" (SCM) include coal fly ash, granulated blast-furnace slag, natural or calcined pozzolans, and ultra-fine coal ash when used in such proportions to replace the portland cement that result in improvement to sustainability and durability and reduced cost.
- e. "Design strength" (f'c) is the specified compressive strength of concrete at time(s) specified in this section to meet structural design criteria.
- f. "Mass Concrete" is any concrete system that approaches a maximum temperature of 158 degrees F within the first 72 hours of placement. In addition, it includes all concrete elements with a section thickness of 3 feet or more regardless of temperature.
- g. "Mixture proportioning" is the process of designing concrete mixture proportions to enable it to meet the strength, service life and constructability requirements of the project while minimizing the initial and life-cycle cost.
- h. "Mixture proportions" are the masses or volumes of individual ingredients used to make a unit measure (cubic yard) of concrete.
- i. "Pozzolan" is a siliceous or siliceous and aluminous material, which in itself possesses little or no cementitious value but will, in finely divided form and in the presence of moisture, chemically react with calcium hydroxide at ordinary temperatures to form compounds possessing cementitious properties.
- j. "Workability (or consistence)" is the ability of a fresh (plastic) concrete mix to fill the form/mould properly with the desired work (vibration) and without reducing the concrete's quality. Workability depends on water content, chemical admixtures, aggregate (shape and size distribution), cementitious content and age (level of hydration).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Concrete Curing Plan

Quality Control Plan;

Quality Control Personnel Certifications;

Quality Control Organizational Chart

Laboratory Accreditation;

Form Removal Schedule;

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Reinforcing Steel;

SD-03 Product Data

Joint Sealants

Joint Filler

Materials for Forms

Cementitious Materials

Vapor Retarder and Vapor Barrier

Concrete Curing Materials

Reinforcement

Liquid Chemical Floor Hardener

Admixtures

Synthetic Reinforcing Fibers

Mechanical Reinforcing Bar Connectors

Waterstops

SD-05 Design Data

Concrete Mix Design; G

Formwork Calculations

SD-06 Test Reports

Concrete Mix Design; G

Fly Ash

Pozzolan

Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag

Aggregates

Compressive Strength Tests; G

Unit Weight of Structural Concrete

Water

Air Content; G

Slump Test; G

Temperature Test; G

SD-07 Certificates

Reinforcing Bars

Welder Qualifications

Field Testing Technician and Testing Agency

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Liquid Chemical Floor Hardener

Curing Compound

1.4 MODIFICATION OF REFERENCES

Accomplish work in accordance with ACI publications except as modified herein. Consider the advisory or recommended provisions to be mandatory. Interpret reference to the "Building Official," the "Structural Engineer," and the "Architect/Engineer" to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Follow [ACI 301](#), [ACI 304R](#) and [ASTM A934](#) requirements and recommendations. Do not deliver concrete until vapor retarder, forms, reinforcement, embedded items, and chamfer strips are in place and ready for concrete placement. Do not store concrete curing compounds or sealers with materials that have a high capacity to adsorb volatile organic compound (VOC) emissions. Do not store concrete curing compounds or sealers in occupied spaces.

1.5.1 Reinforcement

Store reinforcement of different sizes and shapes in separate piles or racks raised above the ground to avoid excessive rusting. Protect from contaminants such as grease, oil, and dirt. Ensure bar sizes can be accurately identified after bundles are broken and tags removed.

1.5.1.1 Epoxy Coated Reinforcing Steel

Record coating lot on each shipping notice and carefully identify and re-tag bar bundles from bending plant. Provide systems for handling coated bars which have padded contact areas such as, nylon slings, all free of dirt and grit. Lift bundled coated bars with strong back, multiple supports, or platform bridge to prevent sagging and abrasion. Pad bundling

bands where in contact with bars. Do not drop or drag bars or bundles. Store coated bars both in shop and in field, aboveground, on wooden or padded cribbing. Space the dunnage close enough to prevent excessive sags. Stack large quantities of straight bars with adequate protective blocking between layers. Schedule deliveries of epoxy coated bars to the job site to avoid the need for long term storage. Protect from direct sunlight and weather. Cover bars to be stored longer than 12 hours at the job site with opaque polyethylene sheeting or other suitable equivalent protective material.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Design Data

1.6.1.1 Concrete Mix Design

Sixty days minimum prior to concrete placement, submit a mix design for each strength and type of concrete. Submit a complete list of materials including type; brand; source and amount of cement, complementary cementitious materials, and admixtures; and applicable reference specifications. Submit mill test and all other test for cement, complementary cementitious materials, aggregates, and admixtures. Provide documentation of maximum nominal aggregate size, gradation analysis, percentage retained and passing sieve, and a graph of percentage retained verses sieve size. Provide mix proportion data using at least three different water-cementitious material ratios for each type of mixture, which produce a range of strength encompassing those required for each type of concrete required. If source material changes, resubmit mix proportion data using revised source material. Provide only materials that have been proven by trial mix studies to meet the requirements of this specification, unless otherwise approved in writing by the Contracting Officer. Indicate clearly in the submittal where each mix design is used when more than one mix design is submitted. Resubmit data on concrete components if the qualities or source of components changes. For previously approved concrete mix designs used within the past twelve months, the previous mix design may be re-submitted without further trial batch testing if accompanied by material test data conducted within the last six months. Obtain mix design approval from the contracting officer prior to concrete placement.

1.6.2 Shop Drawings

1.6.2.1 Reinforcing Steel

ACI SP-66. Indicate bending diagrams, assembly diagrams, splicing and laps of bars, shapes, dimensions, and details of bar reinforcing, accessories, and concrete cover. Do not scale dimensions from structural drawings to determine lengths of reinforcing bars. Reproductions of contract drawings are unacceptable.

1.6.3 Control Submittals

1.6.3.1 Material Safety Data Sheets

Submit Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all materials that are regulated for hazardous health effects. MSDS must be readily accessible during each work shift to employees when they are at the construction site.

1.6.4 Quality Control Plan

Develop and submit for approval a concrete quality control program in accordance with the guidelines of [ACI 121R](#) and as specified herein. The plan must include approved laboratories. Provide direct oversight for the concrete qualification program inclusive of associated sampling and testing. All quality control reports must be provided to the Contracting Officer, Quality Manager and Concrete Supplier. Maintain a copy of [ACI SP-15](#) and [CRSI 10MSP](#) at project site.

1.6.5 Quality Control Personnel Certifications

The Contractor must submit for approval the responsibilities of the various quality control personnel, including the names and qualifications of the individuals in those positions and a [quality control organizational chart](#) defining the quality control hierarchy and the responsibility of the various positions. Quality control personnel must be employed by the Contractor.

Submit American Concrete Institute certification for the following:

- a. CQC personnel responsible for inspection of concrete operations.
- b. Lead Foreman or Journeyman of the Concrete Placing, Finishing, and Curing Crews.
- c. Field Testing Technicians: ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade I.

1.6.5.1 Quality Manager Qualifications

The quality manager must hold a current license as a professional engineer in a U.S. state or territory with experience on at least five (5) similar projects. Evidence of extraordinary proven experience may be considered by the Contracting Officer as sufficient to act as the Quality Manager.

1.6.5.2 Field Testing Technician and Testing Agency

Submit data on qualifications of proposed testing agency and technicians for approval by the Contracting Officer prior to performing testing on concrete.

- a. Work on concrete under this contract must be performed by an ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician Grade 1 qualified in accordance with [ACI SP-2](#) or equivalent. Equivalent certification programs must include requirements for written and performance examinations as stipulated in [ACI SP-2](#).
- b. Testing agencies that perform testing services on reinforcing steel must meet the requirements of [ASTM E329](#).
- c. Testing agencies that perform testing services on concrete materials must meet the requirements of [ASTM C1077](#).

1.6.6 Laboratory Qualifications for Concrete Qualification Testing

The concrete testing laboratory must have the necessary equipment and experience to accomplish required testing. The laboratory must meet the requirements of [ASTM C1077](#) and be Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory

(CCRL) inspected.

1.6.7 Laboratory Accreditation

Laboratory and testing facilities must be provided by and at the expense of the Contractor. The laboratories performing the tests must be accredited in accordance with [ASTM C1077](#), including [ASTM C78](#) and [ASTM C1260](#). The accreditation must be current and must include the required test methods, as specified. Furthermore, the testing must comply with the following requirements:

- a. Aggregate Testing and Mix Proportioning: Aggregate testing and mixture proportioning studies must be performed by an accredited laboratory and under the direction of a registered professional engineer in a U.S. state or territory competent in concrete materials.
- b. Acceptance Testing: Furnish all materials, labor, and facilities required for molding, curing, testing, and protecting test specimens at the site and in the laboratory. Furnish and maintain boxes or other facilities suitable for storing and curing the specimens at the site while in the mold within the temperature range stipulated by [ASTM C31](#).
- c. Contractor Quality Control: All sampling and testing must be performed by an approved, onsite, independent, accredited laboratory.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Provide space ventilation according to manufacturer recommendations, at a minimum, during and following installation of concrete curing compound and sealer. Maintain one of the following ventilation conditions during the curing period or for 72 hours after installation:

- a. Supply 100 percent outside air 24 hours a day.
- b. Supply airflow at a rate of 6 air changes per hour, when outside temperatures are between [55 degrees F](#) and [84 degrees F](#) and humidity is between 30 percent and 60 percent.
- c. Supply airflow at a rate of 1.5 air changes per hour, when outside air conditions are not within the range stipulated above.

1.7.1 Submittals for Environmental Performance

- a. Provide data indicating the percentage of post-industrial pozzolan (fly ash, blast furnace slag) cement substitution as a percentage of the full product composite by weight.
- b. Provide data indicating the percentage of post-industrial and post-consumer recycled content aggregate.
- c. Provide product data indicating the percentage of post-consumer recycled steel content in each type of steel reinforcement as a percentage of the full product composite by weight.
- d. Provide product data stating the location where all products were manufactured
- e. For projects using FSC certified formwork, provide chain-of-custody documentation for all certified wood products.

- f. For projects using reusable formwork, provide data showing how formwork is reused.
- g. Provide MSDS product information data showing that form release agents meet any environmental performance goals such as using vegetable and soy based products.
- h. Provide MSDS product information data showing that concrete adhesives meet any environmental performance goals including low emitting, low volatile organic compound products.

1.8 QUALIFICATIONS FOR WELDING WORK

Welding procedures must be in accordance with [AWS D1.4](#).

Verify that [Welder qualifications](#) are in accordance with [AWS D1.4](#) or under an equivalent qualification test approved in advance. Welders are permitted to do only the type of welding for which each is specifically qualified.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS FOR FORMS

Provide wood, plywood, plastic, carton, or steel. Use plywood or steel forms where a smooth form finish is required.

2.1.1 Wood Forms

Provide lumber that is square edged or tongue-and-groove boards, free of raised grain, knotholes, or other surface defects. Provide plywood that complies with [NIST PS 1](#), B-B concrete form panels or better or [AHA A135.4](#), hardboard for smooth form lining.

2.1.1.1 Concrete Form Plywood (Standard Rough)

Provide plywood that conforms to [NIST PS 1](#), B-B, concrete form, not less than [5/8-inch](#) thick.

2.1.1.2 Overlaid Concrete Form Plywood (Standard Smooth)

Provide plywood that conforms to [NIST PS 1](#), B-B, high density form overlay, not less than [5/8-inch](#) thick.

2.1.2 Steel Forms

Provide steel form surfaces that do not contain irregularities, dents, or sags.

2.2 FORM TIES AND ACCESSORIES

Provide a form tie system that does not leave mild steel after break-off or removal any closer than [2 inches](#) from the exposed surface. Do not use wire alone. Form ties and accessories must not reduce the effective cover of the reinforcement.

2.2.1 Waterstops

2.2.1.1 PVC Waterstop

Polyvinylchloride waterstops must conform to COE CRD-C 572.

2.2.1.2 Rubber Waterstop

Rubber waterstops must conform to COE CRD-C 513.

2.2.1.3 Thermoplastic Elastomeric Rubber Waterstop

Thermoplastic elastomeric rubber waterstops must conform to ASTM D471.

2.2.1.4 Hydrophilic Waterstop

Swellable strip type compound of polymer modified chloroprene rubber that swells upon contact with water must conform to ASTM D412 as follows: Tensile strength 420 psi minimum; ultimate elongation 600 percent minimum. Hardness must be 50 minimum on the type A durometer and the volumetric expansion ratio in distilled water at 70 degrees F must be 3 to 1 minimum.

2.2.2 Dovetail Anchor Slot

Preformed metal slot approximately 1 inch by 1 inch of not less than 22 gage galvanized steel cast in concrete. Coordinate actual size and throat opening with dovetail anchors and provide with removable filler material.

2.2.3 Perimeter Insulation

Perimeter insulation must be polystyrene conforming to ASTM C578, Type II; polyurethane conforming to ASTM C591, Type II; or cellular glass conforming to ASTM C552, Type I or IV.

2.3 CONCRETE MIX DESIGN

2.3.1 Contractor-Furnished Mix Design

ACI 211.1, ACI 301, and ACI 318, and ACI 304.2R except as otherwise specified. Indicate the compressive strength (f'c) of the concrete for each portion of the structure(s) as specified below. Where faster set time is required, use Type III cement before using calcium chloride with approval from the contracting officer.

2.3.1.1 Footings

Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

- a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi at 28 days.
- b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
- c. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
- d. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

2.3.1.2 Foundation Walls

Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

- a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi at 28 days.
- b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
- c. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
- d. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 3/4 inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

2.3.1.3 Slab-on-Grade

Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

- a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi at 28 days.
- b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
- c. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
- d. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 3/4 inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- e. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
- f. Synthetic Micro-Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.5 lb/cu. yd..

2.3.1.4 Mix Proportions for Normal Weight Concrete

Trial design batches, mixture proportioning studies, and testing requirements for various classes and types of concrete specified are the responsibility of the Contractor. Base mixture proportions on compressive strength as determined by test specimens fabricated in accordance with ASTM C192 and tested in accordance with ASTM C39. Samples of all materials used in mixture proportioning studies must be representative of those proposed for use in the project and must be accompanied by the manufacturer's or producer's test report indicating compliance with these specifications. Base trial mixtures having proportions, consistencies, and air content suitable for the work on methodology described in ACI 211.1. In the trial mixture, use at least three different water-cementitious material ratios for each type of mixture, which must produce a range of strength encompassing those required for each class and type of concrete required on the project. The maximum water-cementitious material ratio allowed must be based on equivalent water-cementitious material ratio calculations as determined by the conversion from the weight ratio of water to cement plus pozzolan by weight equivalency method. Design laboratory trial mixture for maximum permitted slump and air content. Each combination of material proposed for use must have separate trial mixture, except for accelerator or retarder use can be provided without separate trial mixture. Report the temperature of concrete in each trial batch. For each water-cementitious material ratio, at least three test cylinders for each test age must be made and cured in accordance with ASTM C192 and tested in accordance with ASTM C39 for 7 and 28 days. From these results, plot a curve showing the relationship between water-cementitious material

ratio and strength for each set of trial mix studies. In addition, plot a curve showing the relationship between 7 and 28 day strengths.

2.3.1.5 Required Average Strength of Mix Design

The selected mixture must produce an average compressive strength exceeding the specified strength by the amount indicated in [ACI 301](#), but may not exceed the specified strength at the same age by more than 20 percent. When a concrete production facility has a record of at least 15 consecutive tests, the standard deviation must be calculated and the required average compressive strength must be determined in accordance with [ACI 301](#).

2.3.2 Ready-Mix Concrete

Provide concrete that meets the requirements of [ASTM C94](#).

Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer must provide duplicate delivery tickets with each load of concrete delivered. Provide delivery tickets with the following information in addition to that required by [ASTM C94](#):

Type and brand cement

Cement and complementary cementitious materials content in 94-pound bags per cubic yard of concrete

Maximum size of aggregate

Amount and brand name of admixtures

Total water content expressed by water cementitious material ratio

2.3.3 Concrete Curing Materials

Provide concrete curing material in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 and [ACI 308.1](#) Section 2. Submit product data for concrete curing compounds. Submit manufacturer's instructions for placement of curing compound.

2.4 MATERIALS

2.4.1 Cementitious Materials

For exposed concrete, use one manufacturer and one source for each type of cement, ground slag, fly ash, and pozzolan.

2.4.1.1 Portland Cement

Provide cement that conforms to [ASTM C150](#), Type I, with tri-calcium aluminates (C3A) content less than 10 percent and a maximum cement-alkali content of 0.80 percent Na₂O_e (sodium oxide) equivalent.. Use one brand and type of cement for formed concrete having exposed-to-view finished surfaces.

2.4.2 Water

Water must comply with the requirements of [ASTM C1602](#). Minimize the amount of water in the mix. Improve workability by adjusting the grading rather than by adding water. Water must be potable; free from injurious amounts of oils, acids, alkalis, salts, organic materials, or other substances deleterious to concrete. Submit test report showing water complies with

ASTM C1602.

2.4.3 Aggregates

ASTM C33, except as modified herein. Furnish aggregates for exposed concrete surfaces from one source. Provide aggregates that do not contain any substance which may be deleteriously reactive with the alkalis in the cement. Submit test report showing compliance with ASTM C33.

2.4.4 Nonshrink Grout

ASTM C1107.

2.4.5 Admixtures

ASTM C494: Type A, water reducing; Type B, retarding; Type C, accelerating; Type D, water-reducing and retarding; and Type E, water-reducing and accelerating admixture. Do not use calcium chloride admixtures. Submit product data for admixtures used in concrete.

2.4.5.1 Air-Entraining

ASTM C260.

2.4.5.2 High Range Water Reducer (HRWR) (Superplasticizers)

ASTM C494, Type F and ASTM C1017.

2.4.6 Vapor Retarder and Vapor Barrier

ASTM E1745 Class C polyethylene sheeting, minimum 10 mil thickness or other equivalent material with a maximum permeance rating of 0.04 perms per ASTM E96/E96M.

Consider plastic vapor retarders and adhesives with a high recycled content, low toxicity low VOC (Volatile Organic Compounds) levels.

2.4.7 Expansion/Contraction Joint Filler

ASTM D1751 or ASTM D1752 Type I or II. Material must be 1/2 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4.8 Joint Sealants

Submit manufacturer's product data, indicating VOC content.

2.4.8.1 Horizontal Surfaces, 3 Percent Slope, Maximum

ASTM D6690 or ASTM C920, Type M, Class 25, Use T.

2.4.8.2 Vertical Surfaces Greater Than 3 Percent Slope

ASTM C920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use T.

2.5 REINFORCEMENT

2.5.1 Reinforcing Bars

ACI 301 unless otherwise specified. ASTM A615 with the bars marked A, Grade

60; or [ASTM A996](#) with the bars marked R, Grade 60, or marked A, Grade 60. Submit mill certificates for reinforcing bars.

2.5.1.1 Weldable Reinforcing Bars

Provide weldable reinforcing bars that conform to [ASTM A706](#) and [ASTM A615](#) and Supplement S1, Grade 60, except that the maximum carbon content must be 0.55 percent.

2.5.1.2 Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars

Provide epoxy-coated reinforcing bars that conform to [ASTM A934](#), Grade 60.

2.5.2 Mechanical Reinforcing Bar Connectors

[ACI 301](#). Provide 125 percent minimum yield strength of the reinforcement bar.

2.5.3 Wire

2.5.3.1 Welded Wire Reinforcement

[ASTM A1064](#). Provide flat sheets of welded wire reinforcement for slabs and toppings.

2.5.3.2 Steel Wire

Wire must conform to [ASTM A1064](#).

2.5.4 Reinforcing Bar Supports

Supports include bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices necessary for proper spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place.

Provide wire bar type supports of coated or non-corrodible material conforming to [ACI SP-66](#) and [CRSI 10MSP](#). For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar support.

Legs of supports in contact with formwork must be hot-dip galvanized, or plastic coated after fabrication, or stainless-steel bar supports.

2.6 FLOOR FINISH MATERIALS

2.6.1 Liquid Chemical Floor Hardener

Hardener must be a colorless aqueous solution containing a blend of inorganic silicate or silicate material and proprietary components combined with a wetting agent; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces. Submit manufacturer's instructions for placement of liquid chemical floor hardener.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly constructed; verify that substrates are level.

If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Contracting Officer of unsatisfactory preparation before processing.

Check field dimensions before beginning installation. If dimensions vary too much from design dimensions for proper installation, notify Contracting Officer and wait for instructions before beginning installation.

3.2 PREPARATION

Determine quantity of concrete needed and minimize the production of excess concrete. Designate locations or uses for potential excess concrete before the concrete is poured.

3.2.1 General

Surfaces against which concrete is to be placed must be free of debris, loose material, standing water, snow, ice, and other deleterious substances before start of concrete placing.

Remove standing water without washing over freshly deposited concrete. Divert flow of water through side drains provided for such purpose.

3.2.2 Subgrade Under Foundations and Footings

When subgrade material is semiporous and dry, sprinkle subgrade surface with water as required to eliminate suction at the time concrete is deposited, or seal subgrade surface by covering surface with specified vapor retarder. When subgrade material is porous, seal subgrade surface by covering surface with specified vapor retarder.

3.2.3 Subgrade Under Slabs on Ground

Before construction of slabs on ground, have underground work on pipes and conduits completed and approved.

Previously constructed subgrade or fill must be cleaned of foreign materials.

Finish surface of capillary water barrier under interior slabs on ground must not show deviation in excess of 1/4 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge parallel with and at right angles to building lines.

Finished surface of subgrade or fill under exterior slabs on ground must not be more than 0.02-foot above or 0.10-foot below elevation indicated.

3.2.4 Edge Forms and Screed Strips for Slabs

Set edge forms or bulkheads and intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain indicated elevations and contours in finished slab surface and must be strong enough to support vibrating bridge screeds or roller pipe screeds if nature of specified slab finish requires use of such equipment. Align concrete surface to elevation of screed strips by use of strike-off templates or approved compacting-type screeds.

3.2.5 Reinforcement and Other Embedded Items

Secure reinforcement, joint materials, and other embedded materials in position, inspected, and approved before start of concrete placing.

3.3 FORMS

Provide forms, shoring, and scaffolding for concrete placement in accordance with ACI 301 Section 2 and 5 and ACI 347. Set forms mortar-tight and true to line and grade. Chamfer above grade exposed joints, edges, and external corners of concrete 0.75 inch unless otherwise indicated. Provide formwork with clean-out openings to permit inspection and removal of debris.

3.3.1 Coating

Before concrete placement, coat the contact surfaces of forms with a form release agent.

3.3.2 Reuse

Reuse forms providing the structural integrity of concrete and the aesthetics of exposed concrete are not compromised. Wood forms must not be clogged with paste and must be capable of absorbing high water-cementitious material ratio paste.

3.3.3 Forms for Standard Rough Form Finish

Provide formwork in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 with a surface finish, SF-1.0, for formed surfaces that are to be concealed by other construction.

3.3.4 Forms for Standard Smooth Form Finish

Provide formwork in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 with a surface finish, SF-3.0, for formed surfaces that are exposed to view.

3.3.5 Form Ties

Provide ties in accordance with ACI 301 section 2.

3.3.6 Forms for Concrete Pan Joist Construction

Pan-form units for one-way or two-way concrete joist and slab construction must be factory-fabricated units of the approximate section indicated. Units must consist of steel or molded fiberglass concrete form pans. Closure units must be furnished as required.

3.3.7 Tolerances for Form Construction

Construct formwork to ensure that after removal of forms and prior to patching and finishing of formed surfaces, provide concrete surfaces in accordance with tolerances specified in ACI 301 Section 5 and ACI 117.

3.3.8 Removal of Forms and Supports

After placing concrete, removal of forms must be in accordance with ACI 301 Section 2 except as modified by approved form removal schedule.

3.4 WATERSTOP INSTALLATION AND SPLICES

Provide waterstops in construction joints as indicated.

Install waterstops to form a continuous diaphragm in each joint. Make

adequate provisions to support and protect waterstops during progress of work. Protect waterstops protruding from joints from damage.

3.4.1 PVC Waterstop

Make splices by heat sealing the adjacent waterstop edges together using a thermoplastic splicing iron utilizing a non-stick surface specifically designed for waterstop welding. Reform waterstops at splices with a remolding iron with ribs or corrugations to match the pattern of the waterstop. The spliced area, when cooled, must show no signs of separation, holes, or other imperfections when bent by hand in as sharp an angle as possible.

3.4.2 Rubber Waterstop

Rubber waterstops must be spliced using cold bond adhesive as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.4.3 Thermoplastic Elastomeric Rubber Waterstop

Fittings must be shop made using a machine specifically designed to mechanically weld the waterstop. A portable power saw must be used to miter or straight cut the ends to be joined to ensure good alignment and contact between joined surfaces. Maintain continuity of the characteristic features of the cross section of the waterstop (for example ribs, tabular center axis, and protrusions) across the splice.

3.4.4 Hydrophilic Waterstop

Miter cut ends to be joined with sharp knife or shears. The ends must be adhered with adhesive.

3.5 PLACING REINFORCEMENT AND MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

ACI 301 and **ACI SP-66**. Provide bars, welded wire reinforcement, wire ties, supports, and other devices necessary to install and secure reinforcement. Reinforcement must not have rust, scale, oil, grease, clay, or foreign substances that would reduce the bond. Rusting of reinforcement is a basis of rejection if the effective cross-sectional area or the nominal weight per unit length has been reduced. Remove loose rust prior to placing steel. Tack welding is prohibited.

3.5.1 General

Provide details of reinforcement that are in accordance with **ACI 301** and **ACI SP-66** and as specified.

3.5.2 Vapor Retarder and Vapor Barrier

Install in accordance with **ASTM E1643**. Provide beneath the on-grade concrete floor slab. Use the greatest widths and lengths practicable to eliminate joints wherever possible. Lap joints a minimum of **12 inches** and tape. Remove torn, punctured, or damaged vapor retarder and vapor barrier material and provide with new vapor retarder and vapor barrier prior to placing concrete. Concrete placement must not damage vapor retarder and vapor barrier material.

3.5.3 Perimeter Insulation

Install perimeter insulation at locations indicated. Adhesive must be used where insulation is applied to the interior surface of foundation walls and may be used for exterior application.

3.5.4 Reinforcement Supports

Support reinforcement in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 3. Supports for coated or galvanized bars must also be coated with electrically compatible material for a distance of at least [2 inches](#) beyond the point of contact with the bars.

3.5.5 Epoxy Coated Reinforcing

Epoxy Coated Reinforcing must meet the requirements of [ASTM A934](#) including Appendix X2, "Guidelines for Job Site Practices" except as otherwise specified herein.

3.5.5.1 Epoxy Coated Reinforcing Steel Placement and Coating Repair

Carefully handle and install bars to minimize job site patching. Use the same precautions as described in paragraph EPOXY COATED REINFORCING STEEL. Do not drag bars over other bars or over abrasive surfaces. Keep bar free of dirt and grit. When possible, assemble reinforcement as tied cages prior to final placement into the forms. Support assembled cages on padded supports. It is not expected that coated bars, when in final position ready for concrete placement, are completely free of damaged areas; however, excessive nicks and scrapes which expose steel is cause for rejection. Criteria for defects which require repair and for those that do not require repair are as indicated. Inspect for defects and provide required repairs prior to assembly. After assembly, reinspect and provide final repairs.

- a. Immediately prior to application of the patching material, manually remove any rust and debonded coating from the reinforcement by suitable techniques employing devices such as wire brushes and emery paper. Exercise care during this surface preparation so that the damaged areas are not enlarged more than necessary to accomplish the repair. Clean damaged areas of dirt, debris, oil, and similar materials prior to application of the patching material.
- b. Do repair and patching in accordance with the patching material manufacturer's recommendations. These recommendations, including cure times, must be available at the job site at all times.
- c. Allow adequate time for the patching materials to cure in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation prior to concrete placement.

3.5.6 Splicing

As indicated. For splices not indicated [ACI 301](#). Do not splice at points of maximum stress. Overlap welded wire reinforcement the spacing of the cross wires, plus [2 inches](#).

3.5.7 Future Bonding

Plug exposed, threaded, mechanical reinforcement bar connectors with a greased bolt. Provide bolt threads that match the connector. Countersink

the connector in the concrete. Caulk the depression after the bolt is installed.

3.5.8 Setting Miscellaneous Material

Place and secure anchors and bolts, pipe sleeves, conduits, and other such items in position before concrete placement and support against displacement. Plumb anchor bolts and check location and elevation. Temporarily fill voids in sleeves with readily removable material to prevent the entry of concrete.

3.5.9 Fabrication

Shop fabricate reinforcing bars to conform to shapes and dimensions indicated for reinforcement, and as follows:

Provide fabrication tolerances that are in accordance with [ACI 318](#) and [ACI SP-66](#).

Provide hooks and bends that are in accordance with [ACI 318](#) and [ACI SP-66](#).

Reinforcement must be bent cold to shapes as indicated. Bending must be done in the shop. Rebending of a reinforcing bar that has been bent incorrectly is not be permitted. Bending must be in accordance with standard approved practice and by approved machine methods.

Tolerance on nominally square-cut, reinforcing bar ends must be in accordance with [ACI SP-66](#).

Deliver reinforcing bars bundled, tagged, and marked. Tags must be metal with bar size, length, mark, and other information pressed in by machine. Marks must correspond with those used on the placing drawings.

Do not use reinforcement that has any of the following defects:

- a. Bar lengths, depths, and bends beyond specified fabrication tolerances
- b. Bends or kinks not indicated on drawings or approved shop drawings
- c. Bars with reduced cross-section due to rusting or other cause

Replace defective reinforcement with new reinforcement having required shape, form, and cross-section area.

3.5.10 Placing Reinforcement

Place reinforcement in accordance with [ACI 301](#) and [ACI SP-66](#).

For slabs on grade (over earth or over capillary water barrier) and for footing reinforcement, support bars or welded wire reinforcement on precast concrete blocks, spaced at intervals required by size of reinforcement, to keep reinforcement the minimum height specified above the underside of slab or footing.

For slabs other than on grade, supports for which any portion is less than **1 inch** from concrete surfaces that are exposed to view or to be painted must be of precast concrete units, plastic-coated steel, or stainless steel protected bar supports. Precast concrete units must be wedge shaped, not larger than **3-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches**, and of thickness equal to that indicated

for concrete protection of reinforcement. Provide precast units that have cast-in galvanized tie wire hooked for anchorage and blend with concrete surfaces after finishing is completed.

Provide reinforcement that is supported and secured together to prevent displacement by construction loads or by placing of wet concrete, and as follows:

Provide supports for reinforcing bars that are sufficient in number and have sufficient strength to carry the reinforcement they support, and in accordance with [ACI 318](#), [ACI SP-66](#) and [CRSI 10MSP](#). Do not use supports to support runways for concrete conveying equipment and similar construction loads.

Equip supports on ground and similar surfaces with sand-plates.

Support welded wire reinforcement as required for reinforcing bars.

Secure reinforcements to supports by means of tie wire. Wire must be black, soft iron wire, not less than 16 gage.

Reinforcement must be accurately placed, securely tied at intersections, and held in position during placing of concrete by spacers, chairs, or other approved supports. Point wire-tie ends away from the form. Unless otherwise indicated, numbers, type, and spacing of supports must conform to [ACI SP-66](#).

Bending of reinforcing bars partially embedded in concrete is permitted only as specified in [ACI SP-66](#) and [ACI 318](#).

3.5.11 Spacing of Reinforcing Bars

Spacing must be as indicated. If not indicated, spacing must be in accordance with the [ACI 318](#) and [ACI SP-66](#).

Reinforcing bars may be relocated to avoid interference with other reinforcement, or with conduit, pipe, or other embedded items. If any reinforcing bar is moved a distance exceeding one bar diameter or specified placing tolerance, resulting rearrangement of reinforcement is subject to preapproval by the Contracting Officer.

3.5.12 Concrete Protection for Reinforcement

Concrete protection must be in accordance with the [ACI 318](#) and [ACI SP-66](#).

3.5.13 Welding

Welding must be in accordance with [AWS D1.4](#).

3.6 BATCHING, MEASURING, MIXING, AND TRANSPORTING CONCRETE

[ASTM C94](#), [ACI 301](#), [ACI 302.1R](#) and [ACI 304R](#), except as modified herein. Batching equipment must be such that the concrete ingredients are consistently measured within the following tolerances: 1 percent for cement and water, 2 percent for aggregate, and 3 percent for admixtures. Furnish mandatory batch ticket information for each load of ready mix concrete.

3.6.1 Measuring

Make measurements at intervals as specified in paragraphs SAMPLING and TESTING.

3.6.2 Mixing

ASTM C94, ACI 301 and ACI 304R. Machine mix concrete. Begin mixing within 30 minutes after the cement has been added to the aggregates. Place concrete within 90 minutes of either addition of mixing water to cement and aggregates or addition of cement to aggregates if the air temperature is less than 84 degrees F. Reduce mixing time and place concrete within 60 minutes if the air temperature is greater than 84 degrees F except as follows: if set retarding admixture is used and slump requirements can be met, limit for placing concrete may remain at 90 minutes. Additional water may be added, provided that both the specified maximum slump and water-cementitious material ratio are not exceeded and the required concrete strength is still met. When additional water is added, an additional 30 revolutions of the mixer at mixing speed is required. Dissolve admixtures in the mixing water and mix in the drum to uniformly distribute the admixture throughout the batch. Do not reconstitute concrete that has begun to solidify.

3.6.3 Transporting

Transport concrete from the mixer to the forms as rapidly as practicable. Prevent segregation or loss of ingredients. Clean transporting equipment thoroughly before each batch. Do not use aluminum pipe or chutes. Remove concrete which has segregated in transporting and dispose of as directed.

3.7 PLACING CONCRETE

Place concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5.

3.7.1 Footing Placement

Concrete for footings may be placed in excavations without forms upon inspection and approval by the Contracting Officer. Excavation width must be a minimum of 4 inches greater than indicated.

3.7.2 Pumping

ACI 304R and ACI 304.2R. Pumping must not result in separation or loss of materials nor cause interruptions sufficient to permit loss of plasticity between successive increments. Loss of slump in pumping equipment must not exceed 2 inches at discharge/placement. Do not convey concrete through pipe made of aluminum or aluminum alloy. Avoid rapid changes in pipe sizes. Limit maximum size of coarse aggregate to 33 percent of the diameter of the pipe. Limit maximum size of well rounded aggregate to 40 percent of the pipe diameter. Take samples for testing at both the point of delivery to the pump and at the discharge end.

3.7.3 Cold Weather

ACI 306.1. Do not allow concrete temperature to decrease below 50 degrees F. Obtain approval prior to placing concrete when the ambient temperature is below 40 degrees F or when concrete is likely to be subjected to freezing temperatures within 24 hours. Cover concrete and provide sufficient heat to maintain 50 degrees F minimum adjacent to both the formwork and the

structure while curing. Limit the rate of cooling to 37 degrees F in any 1 hour and 50 degrees F per 24 hours after heat application.

3.7.4 Hot Weather

Maintain required concrete temperature using Figure 4.2 in ACI 305R to prevent the evaporation rate from exceeding 0.2 pound of water per square foot of exposed concrete per hour. Cool ingredients before mixing or use other suitable means to control concrete temperature and prevent rapid drying of newly placed concrete. Shade the fresh concrete as soon as possible after placing. Start curing when the surface of the fresh concrete is sufficiently hard to permit curing without damage. Provide water hoses, pipes, spraying equipment, and water hauling equipment, where job site is remote to water source, to maintain a moist concrete surface throughout the curing period. Provide burlap cover or other suitable, permeable material with fog spray or continuous wetting of the concrete when weather conditions prevent the use of either liquid membrane curing compound or impervious sheets. For vertical surfaces, protect forms from direct sunlight and add water to top of structure once concrete is set.

3.7.5 Bonding

Surfaces of set concrete at joints, must be roughened and cleaned of laitance, coatings, loose particles, and foreign matter. Roughen surfaces in a manner that exposes the aggregate uniformly and does not leave laitance, loosened particles of aggregate, nor damaged concrete at the surface.

Obtain bonding of fresh concrete that has set as follows:

At joints between footings and walls or columns, between walls or columns and the beams or slabs they support, and elsewhere unless otherwise specified; roughened and cleaned surface of set concrete must be dampened, but not saturated, immediately prior to placing of fresh concrete.

At joints in exposed-to-view work; at vertical joints in walls; at joints near midpoint of span in girders, beams, supported slabs, other structural members; in work designed to contain liquids; the roughened and cleaned surface of set concrete must be dampened but not saturated and covered with a cement grout coating.

Provide cement grout that consists of equal parts of portland cement and fine aggregate by weight with not more than 6 gallons of water per sack of cement. Apply cement grout with a stiff broom or brush to a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch. Deposit fresh concrete before cement grout has attained its initial set.

3.8 WASTE MANAGEMENT

Provide as specified in the Waste Management Plan and as follows.

3.8.1 Mixing Equipment

Before concrete pours, designate on-site area to be paved later in project for cleaning out concrete mixing trucks. Minimize water used to wash equipment.

3.8.2 Reinforcing Steel

Collect reinforcing steel and place in designated area for recycling.

3.8.3 Other Waste

Identify concrete manufacturer's or supplier's policy for collection or return of construction waste, unused material, deconstruction waste, and/or packaging material.

3.9 SURFACE FINISHES EXCEPT FLOOR, SLAB, AND PAVEMENT FINISHES

3.9.1 Defects

Repair surface defects in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5.

3.9.2 Not Against Forms (Top of Walls)

Surfaces not otherwise specified must be finished with wood floats to even surfaces. Finish must match adjacent finishes.

3.9.3 Formed Surfaces

3.9.3.1 Tolerances

[ACI 117](#) and as indicated.

3.9.3.2 As-Cast Rough Form

Provide for surfaces not exposed to public view a surface finish SF-1.0. Patch holes and defects in accordance with [ACI 301](#).

3.9.3.3 Standard Smooth Finish

Provide for surfaces exposed to public view a surface finish SF-3.0. Patch holes and defects in accordance with [ACI 301](#).

3.10 FLOOR, SLAB, AND PAVEMENT FINISHES AND MISCELLANEOUS CONSTRUCTION

[ACI 301](#) and [ACI 302.1R](#), unless otherwise specified. Slope floors uniformly to drains where drains are provided. Where straightedge measurements are specified, Contractor must provide straightedge.

3.10.1 Finish

Place, consolidate, and immediately strike off concrete to obtain proper contour, grade, and elevation before bleedwater appears. Permit concrete to attain a set sufficient for floating and supporting the weight of the finisher and equipment. If bleedwater is present prior to floating the surface, drag the excess water off or remove by absorption with porous materials. Do not use dry cement to absorb bleedwater.

3.10.1.1 Scratched

Use for surfaces intended to receive bonded applied cementitious applications. Finish concrete in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 for a scratched finish.

3.10.1.2 Steel Troweled

Use for floors intended as walking surfaces. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a steel troweled finish.

3.10.1.3 Broomed

Use on surfaces of exterior walks, platforms, patios, and ramps, unless otherwise indicated. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a broomed finish.

3.10.1.4 Pavement

Screed the concrete with a template advanced with a combined longitudinal and crosswise motion. Maintain a slight surplus of concrete ahead of the template. After screeding, float the concrete longitudinally. Use a straightedge to check slope and flatness; correct and refloat as necessary. Round edges and joints with an edger having a radius of 1/8 inch.

3.10.1.5 Concrete Toppings Placement

The following requirements apply to the placement of toppings of concrete on base slabs that are either freshly placed and still plastic, or on hardened base slabs.

- a. Placing on a Fresh Base: Screed and bull float the base slab. As soon as the water sheen has disappeared, lightly rake the surface of the base slab with a stiff bristle broom to produce a bonding surface for the topping. Immediately spread the topping mixture evenly over the roughened base before final set takes place.
- b. Bonding to a Hardened Base: When the topping is to be bonded to a floated or troweled hardened base, roughen the base by scarifying, grit-blasting, scabbling, planing, flame cleaning, or acid-etching to lightly expose aggregate and provide a bonding surface. Remove dirt, laitance, and loose aggregate by means of a stiff wire broom. Keep the clean base wet for a period of 12 hours preceding the application of the topping. Remove excess water and apply a 1:1:1/2 cement-sand-water grout, and brush into the surface of the base slab. Do not allow the cement grout to dry, and spread it only short distances ahead of the topping placement. Do not allow the temperature differential between the completed base and the topping mixture to exceed 41 degrees F at the time of placing.

3.10.2 Flat Floor Finishes

ACI 302.1R. Construct in accordance with one of the methods recommended in Table 7.15.3, "Typical Composite Ff/FL Values for Various Construction Methods." ACI 117 for tolerance tested by ASTM E1155.

a. Specified Industrial:

Floor Flatness (Ff)	30	15	minimum
Floor Levelness (FL)	20	10	minimum

3.10.2.1 Measurement of Floor Tolerances

Test slab within 24 hours of the final troweling. Provide tests to Contracting Officer within 12 hours after collecting the data. Floor

flatness inspector is required to provide a [tolerance report](#) which must include:

- a. Key plan showing location of data collected.
- b. Results required by [ASTM E1155](#).

3.10.2.2 Remedies for Out of Tolerance Work

Contractor is required to repair and retest any floors not meeting specified tolerances. Prior to repair, Contractor must submit and receive approval for the proposed repair, including product data from any materials proposed. Repairs must not result in damage to structural integrity of the floor. For floors exposed to public view, repairs must prevent any uneven or unusual coloring of the surface.

3.10.3 Concrete Walks

Provide [4 inches](#) thick minimum. Provide contraction joints spaced every [5 linear feet](#) unless otherwise indicated. Cut contraction joints [one inch](#) deep with a jointing tool after the surface has been finished. Provide [0.5 inch](#) thick transverse expansion joints at changes in direction where sidewalk abuts curb, steps, rigid pavement, or other similar structures; space expansion joints every [50 feet](#) maximum. Give walks a broomed finish. Unless indicated otherwise, provide a transverse slope of 1/48. Limit variation in cross section to [1/4 inch in 5 feet](#).

3.10.4 Pits and Trenches

Place bottoms and walls monolithically or provide waterstops and keys.

3.10.5 Curbs

Provide contraction joints spaced every [10 feet](#) maximum unless otherwise indicated. Cut contraction joints [3/4 inch](#) deep with a jointing tool after the surface has been finished. Provide expansion joints [1/2 inch](#) thick and spaced every [100 feet](#) maximum unless otherwise indicated. Perform pavement finish.

3.10.6 Splash Blocks

Provide at outlets of downspouts emptying at grade. Splash blocks may be precast concrete, and must be [24 inches long, 12 inches wide and 4 inches thick](#), unless otherwise indicated, with smooth-finished countersunk dishes sloped to drain away from the building.

3.11 JOINTS

3.11.1 Construction Joints

Make and locate joints not indicated so as not to impair strength and appearance of the structure, as approved. Joints must be perpendicular to main reinforcement. Reinforcement must be continued and developed across construction joints. Locate construction joints as follows:

3.11.1.1 Maximum Allowable Construction Joint Spacing

- a. In walls at not more than [60 feet](#) in any horizontal direction.

- b. In slabs on ground, so as to divide slab into areas not in excess of 1,200 square feet.

3.11.1.2 Construction Joints for Constructability Purposes

- a. In walls, at top of footing; at top of slabs on ground; at top and bottom of door and window openings or where required to conform to architectural details; and at underside of deepest beam or girder framing into wall.
- b. In columns or piers, at top of footing; at top of slabs on ground; and at underside of deepest beam or girder framing into column or pier.
- c. Near midpoint of spans for supported slabs, beams, and girders unless a beam intersects a girder at the center, in which case construction joints in girder must offset a distance equal to twice the width of the beam. Make transfer of shear through construction joint by use of inclined reinforcement.

Provide keyways at least 1-1/2-inches deep in construction joints in walls and slabs and between walls and footings; approved bulkheads may be used for slabs.

3.11.2 Isolation Joints in Slabs on Ground

Provide joints at points of contact between slabs on ground and vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and elsewhere as indicated.

Fill joints with premolded joint filler strips 1/2 inch thick, extending full slab depth. Install filler strips at proper level below finish floor elevation with a slightly tapered, dress-and-oiled wood strip temporarily secured to top of filler strip to form a groove not less than 3/4 inch in depth where joint is sealed with sealing compound and not less than 1/4 inch in depth where joint sealing is not required. Remove wood strip after concrete has set. Contractor must clean groove of foreign matter and loose particles after surface has dried.

3.11.3 Contraction Joints in Slabs on Ground

Provide joints to form panels as indicated.

Under and on exact line of each control joint, cut 50 percent of welded wire reinforcement before placing concrete.

Sawcut contraction joints into slab on ground in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5.

Joints must be 1/8-inch wide by 1/5 to 1/4 of slab depth and formed by inserting hand-pressed fiberboard strip into fresh concrete until top surface of strip is flush with slab surface. After concrete has cured for at least 7 days, the Contractor must remove inserts and clean groove of foreign matter and loose particles.

Sawcutting will be limited to within 12 hours after set and at 1/4 slab depth.

3.11.4 Sealing Joints in Slabs on Ground

Contraction and control joints which are to receive finish flooring material must be sealed with joint sealing compound after concrete curing period. Slightly underfill groove with joint sealing compound to prevent extrusion of compound. Remove excess material as soon after sealing as possible.

Sealed groove must be left ready to receive filling material that is provided as part of finish floor covering work.

3.12 CONCRETE FLOOR TOPPING

3.12.1 Standard Floor Topping

Provide topping for treads and platforms of metal steel stairs and elsewhere as indicated.

Preparations Prior to Placing

When topping is placed on a green concrete base slab, screed surface of base slab to a level not more than 1-1/2 inches nor less than 1 inch below required finish surface. Remove water and laitance from surface of base slab before placing topping mixture. As soon as water ceases to rise to surface of base slab, place topping.

When topping is placed on a hardened concrete base slab, remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint, and other contaminants from base slab surface, leaving a clean surface. Prior to placing topping mixture, 2-1/2-inches minimum, slab surface must be dampened and left free of standing water. Immediately before topping mixture is placed, broom a coat of neat cement grout onto surface of slab. Do not allow cement grout to set or dry before topping is placed.

When topping is placed on a metal surface, such as metal pans for steel stairs, remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint, and other contaminants from metal surface.

Placing

Spread standard topping mixture evenly on previously prepared base slab or metal surface, brought to correct level with a straightedge, and struck off. Topping must be consolidated, floated, checked for trueness of surface, and refloated as specified for float finish.

Finishing

Give trowel finish standard floor topping surfaces.

Give other finishes standard floor topping surfaces as indicated.

3.12.2 Heavy-Duty Floor Topping

Provide topping where indicated.

Heavy-duty Topping Mixture

Provide mixture that consists of 1 part portland cement and 2-1/2 parts emery aggregate or 1 part fine aggregate and 1-1/2 parts traprock coarse

aggregate, by volume. Exact proportions of mixture must conform to recommendations of aggregate manufacturer. Mixing water must not exceed 3-1/4 gallons per 94-pound sack of cement including unabsorbed moisture in aggregate. Maximum slump must be 1 inch.

Base Slab

Screed surface of slab to a level no more than 1-1/2 inches nor less than 1 inch below grade of finished floor.

Give slab a scratch finish as specified.

Preparations prior to placing.

Remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint and other contaminants from base slab surface. Prior to placing topping mixture, dampen slab surface and leave free of standing water. Immediately before topping mixture is placed, broom a coat of neat cement grout onto surface of slab. Allow cement grout to set or dry before topping mixture is placed.

Placing

Spread heavy-duty topping mixture evenly on previously prepared base slab, and bring to correct level with a straightedge, and strike off. Provide topping that is consolidated, floated, and checked for trueness of surface as specified for float finish, except that power-driven floats is the impact type.

Finishing

Give trowel finish heavy-duty floor topping surfaces. Provide trowel finish as specified, except that additional troweling after first power troweling must be not less than three hand-troweling operations.

3.13 CURING AND PROTECTION

ACI 301 Section 5, unless otherwise specified. Begin curing immediately following form removal. Avoid damage to concrete from vibration created by blasting, pile driving, movement of equipment in the vicinity, disturbance of formwork or protruding reinforcement, and any other activity resulting in ground vibrations. Protect concrete from injurious action by sun, rain, flowing water, frost, mechanical injury, tire marks, and oil stains. Do not allow concrete to dry out from time of placement until the expiration of the specified curing period. Do not use membrane-forming compound on surfaces where appearance would be objectionable, on any surface to be painted, where coverings are to be bonded to the concrete, or on concrete to which other concrete is to be bonded. If forms are removed prior to the expiration of the curing period, provide another curing procedure specified herein for the remaining portion of the curing period. Provide moist curing for those areas receiving liquid chemical sealer-hardener or epoxy coating. Allow curing compound/sealer installations to cure prior to the installation of materials that adsorb VOCs.

3.13.1 Requirements for Type III, High-Early-Strength Portland Cement

The curing periods are required to be not less than one-fourth of those specified for portland cement, but in no case less than 72 hours.

3.13.2 Curing Periods

ACI 301 Section 5, except 10 days for retaining walls, pavement or chimneys. Begin curing immediately after placement. Protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot temperatures, and mechanical injury; and maintain minimal moisture loss at a relatively constant temperature for the period necessary for hydration of the cement and hardening of the concrete. The materials and methods of curing are subject to approval by the Contracting Officer.

3.13.3 Curing Formed Surfaces

Accomplish curing of formed surfaces, including undersurfaces of girders, beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed before end of curing period, accomplish final curing of formed surfaces by any of the curing methods specified above, as applicable.

3.13.4 Curing Unformed Surfaces

Accomplish initial curing of unformed surfaces, such as monolithic slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces, by membrane curing.

Unless otherwise specified, accomplish final curing of unformed surfaces by any of curing methods specified, as applicable.

Accomplish final curing of concrete surfaces to receive liquid floor hardener of finish flooring by moisture-retaining cover curing.

3.13.5 Temperature of Concrete During Curing

When temperature of atmosphere is **41 degrees F** and below, maintain temperature of concrete at not less than **55 degrees F** throughout concrete curing period or **45 degrees F** when the curing period is measured by maturity. When necessary, make arrangements before start of concrete placing for heating, covering, insulation, or housing as required to maintain specified temperature and moisture conditions for concrete during curing period.

When the temperature of atmosphere is **80 degrees F** and above or during other climatic conditions which cause too rapid drying of concrete, make arrangements before start of concrete placing for installation of wind breaks, of shading, and for fog spraying, wet sprinkling, or moisture-retaining covering of light color as required to protect concrete during curing period.

Changes in temperature of concrete must be uniform and not exceed **37 degrees F** in any 1 hour nor **80 degrees F** in any 24-hour period.

3.13.6 Protection from Mechanical Injury

During curing period, protect concrete from damaging mechanical disturbances, particularly load stresses, heavy shock, and excessive vibration and from damage caused by rain or running water.

3.13.7 Protection After Curing

Protect finished concrete surfaces from damage by construction operations.

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.14.1 Sampling

ASTM C172. Collect samples of fresh concrete to perform tests specified. **ASTM C31** for making test specimens.

3.14.2 Testing

3.14.2.1 Slump Tests

ASTM C143. Take concrete samples during concrete placement/discharge. The maximum slump may be increased as specified with the addition of an approved admixture provided that the water-cementitious material ratio is not exceeded. Perform tests at commencement of concrete placement, when test cylinders are made, and for each batch (minimum) or every 20 cubic yards (maximum) of concrete.

3.14.2.2 Temperature Tests

Test the concrete delivered and the concrete in the forms. Perform tests in hot or cold weather conditions (below 50 degrees F and above 80 degrees F) for each batch (minimum) or every 20 cubic yards (maximum) of concrete, until the specified temperature is obtained, and whenever test cylinders and slump tests are made.

3.14.2.3 Compressive Strength Tests

ASTM C39. Make six 6 inch by 12 inch test cylinders for each set of tests in accordance with **ASTM C31**, **ASTM C172** and applicable requirements of **ACI 305R** and **ACI 306R**. Take precautions to prevent evaporation and loss of water from the specimen. Test two cylinders at 7 days, two cylinders at 28 days, and hold two cylinder in reserve. Take samples for strength tests of each mix design of concrete placed each day not less than once a day, nor less than once for each 100 cubic yards of concrete for the first 500 cubic yards, then every 500 cubic yards thereafter, nor less than once for each 5400 square feet of surface area for slabs or walls. For the entire project, take no less than five sets of samples and perform strength tests for each mix design of concrete placed. Each strength test result must be the average of two cylinders from the same concrete sample tested at 28 days. Concrete compressive tests must meet the requirements of **ACI 318** Section 5.6. Retest locations represented by erratic core strengths. Where retest does not meet concrete compressive strength requirements submit a mitigation or remediation plan for review and approval by the contracting officer. Repair core holes with nonshrink grout. Match color and finish of adjacent concrete.

3.14.2.4 Air Content

ASTM C173 or **ASTM C231** for normal weight concrete. Test air-entrained concrete for air content at the same frequency as specified for slump tests.

3.14.2.5 Unit Weight of Structural Concrete

ASTM C567 and **ASTM C138.** Determine unit weight of normal weight concrete. Perform test for every 20 cubic yards maximum.

3.14.2.6 Strength of Concrete Structure

The strength of the concrete structure will be considered to be deficient if any of the following conditions are identified:

Failure to meet compressive strength tests as evaluated

Reinforcement not conforming to requirements specified

Concrete which differs from required dimensions or location in such a manner as to reduce strength

Concrete curing and protection of concrete against extremes of temperature during curing, not conforming to requirements specified

Concrete subjected to damaging mechanical disturbances, particularly load stresses, heavy shock, and excessive vibration

Poor workmanship likely to result in deficient strength

Where the strength of the concrete structure is considered deficient submit a mitigation or remediation plan for review and approval by the contracting officer.

3.14.2.7 Non-Conforming Materials

Factors that indicate that there are non-conforming materials include (but not limited to) excessive compressive strength, inadequate compressive strength, excessive slump, excessive voids and honeycombing, concrete delivery records that indicate excessive time between mixing and placement, or excessive water was added to the mixture during delivery and placement. Any of these indicators alone are sufficient reason for the Contracting Officer to request additional sampling and testing.

Investigations into non-conforming materials must be conducted at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor must be responsible for the investigation and must make written recommendations to adequately mitigate or remediate the non-conforming material. The Contracting Officer may accept, accept with reduced payment, require mitigation, or require removal and replacement of non-conforming material at no additional cost to the Government.

3.14.2.8 Testing Concrete Structure for Strength

When there is evidence that strength of concrete structure in place does not meet specification requirements or there are non-conforming materials, make cores drilled from hardened concrete for compressive strength determination in accordance with [ASTM C42](#), and as follows:

Take at least three representative cores from each member or area of concrete-in-place that is considered potentially deficient. Location of cores will be determined by the Contracting Officer.

Test cores after moisture conditioning in accordance with [ASTM C42](#) if concrete they represent is more than superficially wet under service.

Air dry cores, (60 to 80 degrees F with relative humidity less than 60 percent) for 7 days before test and test dry if concrete they represent is dry under service conditions.

Strength of cores from each member or area are considered satisfactory if their average is equal to or greater than 85 percent of the 28-day design compressive strength of the class of concrete.

Core specimens will be taken and tested by the Government. If the results of core-boring tests indicate that the concrete as placed does not conform to the drawings and specification, the cost of such tests and restoration required must be borne by the Contractor.

Fill core holes solid with patching mortar and finished to match adjacent concrete surfaces.

Correct concrete work that is found inadequate by core tests in a manner approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.15 REPAIR, REHABILITATION AND REMOVAL

Before the Contracting Officer accepts the structure the Contractor must inspect the structure for cracks, damage and substandard concrete placements that may adversely affect the service life of the structure. A report documenting these defects must be prepared which includes recommendations for repair, removal or remediation must be submitted to the Contracting Officer for approval before any corrective work is accomplished.

3.15.1 Crack Repair

Prior to final acceptance, all cracks in excess of 0.02 inches wide must be documented and repaired. The proposed method and materials to repair the cracks must be submitted to the Contracting Officer for approval. The proposal must address the amount of movement expected in the crack due to temperature changes and loading.

3.15.2 Repair of Weak Surfaces

Weak surfaces are defined as mortar-rich, rain-damaged, uncured, or containing exposed voids or deleterious materials. Concrete surfaces with weak surfaces less than 1/4 inch thick must be diamond ground to remove the weak surface. Surfaces containing weak surfaces greater than 1/4 inch thick must be removed and replaced or mitigated in a manner acceptable to the Contracting Officer.

3.15.3 Failure of Quality Assurance Test Results

Proposed mitigation efforts by the Contractor must be approved by the Contracting Officer prior to proceeding.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 05 12 00

STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 201	(2006) AISC Certification Program for Structural Steel Fabricators
AISC 303	(2016) Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges
AISC 325	(2017) Steel Construction Manual
AISC 326	(2009) Detailing for Steel Construction
AISC 341	(2016) Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings
AISC 360	(2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A2.4	(2012) Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing and Nondestructive Examination
----------	---

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B46.1	(2009) Surface Texture, Surface Roughness, Waviness and Lay
------------	---

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A325	(2014) Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength
ASTM A36	(2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A490	(2014a) Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength
ASTM A563	(2015) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts
ASTM A6	(2017a) Standard Specification for General

Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel Bars, Plates, Shapes, and Sheet Piling

ASTM A992

(2011) Standard Specification for Structural Steel Shapes

ASTM F436

(2011) Hardened Steel Washers

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC PA 1

(2016) Shop, Field, and Maintenance Coating of Metals

SSPC Paint 20

(2002; E 2004) Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, Inorganic, and Type II, Organic)

SSPC SP 3

(1982; E 2004) Power Tool Cleaning

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-301-01

(2013; with Change 3) Structural Engineering

UFC 3-310-04

(2013; with Change 1) Seismic Design for Buildings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Erection Drawings; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings Including Description of Connections; G

SD-03 Product Data

Shop Primer

Welding Electrodes and Rods

Non-Shrink Grout

SD-06 Test Reports

Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

Weld Inspection Reports

SD-07 Certificates

Steel

Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

AISC Fabrication Plant Quality Certification

AISC Erector Quality Certification

Welding Procedures and Qualifications

Welding Electrodes and Rods

1.3 AISC QUALITY CERTIFICATION

Work must be fabricated in an AISC Certified Fabrication Plant, Category Std. Submit [AISC fabrication plant quality certification](#).

Work must be erected by an AISC Certified Erector, Category ASCE. Submit [AISC erector quality certification](#).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Preconstruction Submittals

1.4.1.1 Erection Drawings

Submit for record purposes. Indicate the sequence of erection, temporary shoring and bracing. The erection drawings must conform to [AISC 303](#). Erection drawings must be reviewed, stamped and sealed by a registered professional engineer.

1.4.2 Fabrication Drawing Requirements

Submit [fabrication drawings](#) for approval prior to fabrication. Prepare in accordance with [AISC 326](#) and [AISC 325](#). Fabrication drawings must not be reproductions of contract drawings. Include complete information for the fabrication and erection of the structure's components, including the location, type, and size of bolts, welds, member sizes and lengths, connection details, blocks, copes, and cuts. Use [AWS A2.4](#) standard welding symbols. Any deviations from the details shown on the contract drawings must be clearly highlighted on the fabrication drawings. Explain the reasons for any deviations from the contract drawings.

1.4.3 Certifications

1.4.3.1 Welding Procedures and Qualifications

Prior to welding, submit certification for each welder stating the type of welding and positions qualified for, the code and procedure qualified under, date qualified, and the firm and individual certifying the qualification tests.

Conform to all requirements specified in [AWS D1.1](#).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide the structural steel system, including shop primer, complete and ready for use. Structural steel systems including design, materials, installation, workmanship, fabrication, assembly, erection, inspection, quality control, and testing must be provided in accordance with AISC 360, AISC 341, UFC 3-301-01 and UFC 3-310-04 except as modified in this contract.

2.2 STEEL

2.2.1 Structural Steel

Wide flange and WT shapes, ASTM A992. Angles, Channels and Plates, ASTM A36.

2.3 BOLTS, NUTS, AND WASHERS

Submit the certified manufacturer's mill reports which clearly show the applicable ASTM mechanical and chemical requirements together with the actual test results for the supplied fasteners.

2.3.1 Common Grade Bolts

2.3.2 High-Strength Bolts

2.3.2.1 Bolts

ASTM A325, Type 1.

2.3.2.2 Nuts

ASTM A563, Grade and Style as specified in the applicable ASTM bolt standard.

2.3.2.3 Washers

ASTM F436, plain carbon steel.

2.4 STRUCTURAL STEEL ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Welding Electrodes and Rods

AWS D1.1.

2.4.2 Non-Shrink Grout

ASTM C1107, with no ASTM C827 shrinkage. Grout must be nonmetallic.

2.5 FABRICATION

Fabrication must be in accordance with the applicable provisions of AISC 325. Fabrication and assembly must be done in the shop to the greatest extent possible. Punch, subpunch and ream, or drill bolt holes perpendicular to the surface of the member.

Compression joints depending on contact bearing must have a surface roughness not in excess of 500 micro inch as determined by ASME B46.1, and ends must be square within the tolerances for milled ends specified in

ASTM A6.

Shop splices of members between field splices will be permitted only where indicated on the Contract Drawings. Splices not indicated require the approval of the Contracting Officer.

2.5.1 Markings

Prior to erection, members must be identified by a painted erection mark. Connecting parts assembled in the shop for reaming holes in field connections must be match marked with scratch and notch marks. Do not locate erection markings on areas to be welded. Do not locate match markings in areas that will decrease member strength or cause stress concentrations.

2.5.2 Shop Primer

SSPC Paint 20. Shop prime structural steel, except as modified herein, in accordance with **SSPC PA 1**. Do not prime steel surfaces embedded in concrete, galvanized surfaces or surfaces within **0.5 inch** of the toe of the welds prior to welding (except surfaces on which metal decking is to be welded). If flash rusting occurs, re-clean the surface prior to application of primer. Apply primer in accordance with endorsement "P1" of **AISC 201** to a minimum dry film thickness of **2.0 mil**.

Prior to assembly, prime surfaces which will be concealed or inaccessible after assembly. Do not apply primer in foggy or rainy weather; when the ambient temperature is below **45 degrees F** or over **95 degrees F**; or when the primer may be exposed to temperatures below **40 degrees F** within 48 hours after application, unless approved otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Repair damaged primed surfaces with an additional coat of primer.

2.5.2.1 Cleaning

SSPC SP 6, except steel exposed in spaces above ceilings, attic spaces, furred spaces, and chases that will be hidden to view in finished construction may be cleaned to **SSPC SP 3** when recommended by the shop primer manufacturer. Maintain steel surfaces free from rust, dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants through final assembly.

PART 3 EXECUTION**3.1 ERECTION**

- a. Erection of structural steel, except as indicated in item b. below, must be in accordance with the applicable provisions of **AISC 325**.

3.1.1 STORAGE

Material must be stored out of contact with the ground in such manner and location as will minimize deterioration.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

Except as modified in this section, connections not detailed must be

designed in accordance with **AISC 360**. Build connections into existing work. Do not tighten anchor bolts set in concrete with impact torque wrenches. Holes must not be cut or enlarged by burning. Bolts, nuts, and washers must be clean of dirt and rust, and lubricated immediately prior to installation.

3.2.1 High-Strength Bolts

Provide direct tension indicator washers in all **ASTM A325** and **ASTM A490** bolted connections. Bolts must be installed in connection holes and initially brought to a snug tight fit. After the initial tightening procedure, bolts must then be fully tensioned, progressing from the most rigid part of a connection to the free edges.

3.3 GAS CUTTING

Use of gas-cutting torch in the field for correcting fabrication errors will not be permitted on any major member in the structural framing. Use of a gas cutting torch will be permitted on minor members not under stress only after approval has been obtained from the Contracting Officer.

3.4 WELDING

Welding must be in accordance with **AWS D1.1**. Provide **AWS D1.1** qualified welders, welding operators, and tackers.

Develop and submit the Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS) for all welding, including welding done using prequalified procedures. Prequalified procedures may be submitted for information only; however, procedures that are not prequalified must be submitted for approval.

3.4.1 Removal of Temporary Welds, Run-Off Plates, and Backing Strips

Remove only from finished areas.

3.5 SHOP PRIMER REPAIR

Repair shop primer in accordance with the paint manufacturer's recommendation for surfaces damaged by handling, transporting, cutting, welding, or bolting.

3.5.1 Field Priming

Steel exposed to the weather, or located in building areas without HVAC for control of relative humidity must be field primed. After erection, the field bolt heads and nuts, field welds, and any abrasions in the shop coat must be cleaned and primed with paint of the same quality as that used for the shop coat.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Perform field tests, and provide labor, equipment, and incidentals required for testing. The Contracting Officer must be notified in writing of defective welds, bolts, nuts, and washers within 7 working days of the date of the inspection.

3.6.1 Welds

3.6.1.1 Visual Inspection

AWS D1.1. Furnish the services of AWS-certified welding inspectors for fabrication and erection inspection and testing and verification inspections.

Inspect proper preparation, size, gaging location, and acceptability of welds; identification marking; operation and current characteristics of welding sets in use.

3.6.1.2 Nondestructive Testing

Nondestructive testing must be in accordance with **AWS D1.1**. Test locations must be selected by the Contracting Officer. If more than 20 percent of welds made by a welder contain defects identified by testing, then all welds made by that welder must be tested by ultrasonic testing, as approved by the Contracting Officer. When all welds made by an individual welder are required to be tested, magnetic particle testing must be used only in areas inaccessible to ultrasonic testing. Retest defective areas after repair. Submit [weld inspection reports](#).

3.6.2 High-Strength Bolts

3.6.2.1 Testing Bolt, Nut, and Washer Assemblies

Test a minimum of 3 bolt, nut, and washer assemblies from each mill certificate batch in a tension measuring device at the job site prior to the beginning of bolting start-up. Demonstrate that the bolts and nuts, when used together, can develop tension not less than the provisions specified in **AISC 360**, depending on bolt size and grade. The bolt tension must be developed by tightening the nut. A representative of the manufacturer or supplier must be present to ensure that the fasteners are properly used, and to demonstrate that the fastener assemblies supplied satisfy the specified requirements. Submit [bolt testing reports](#).

3.6.2.2 Inspection

Inspection procedures must be in accordance with **AISC 360**. Confirm and report to the Contracting Officer that the materials meet the project specification and that they are properly stored. Confirm that the faying surfaces have been properly prepared before the connections are assembled. Observe the specified job site testing and calibration, and confirm that the procedure to be used provides the required tension. Monitor the work to ensure the testing procedures are routinely followed on joints that are specified to be fully tensioned.

Inspect calibration of torque wrenches for high-strength bolts.

3.6.2.3 Testing

The Government has the option to perform nondestructive tests on 5 percent of the installed bolts to verify compliance with pre-load bolt tension requirements. Provide the required access for the Government to perform the tests. The nondestructive testing will be done in-place using an ultrasonic measuring device or any other device capable of determining

in-place pre-load bolt tension. The test locations must be selected by the Contracting Officer. If more than 10 percent of the bolts tested contain defects identified by testing, then all bolts used from the batch from which the tested bolts were taken, must be tested at the Contractor's expense. Retest new bolts after installation at the Contractor's expense.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 05 30 00

STEEL DECKS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN IRON AND STEEL INSTITUTE (AISI)

AISI D100 (1991; R 2008) Cold-Formed Steel Design Manual

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.3 (2018) Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1008 (2016) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable

ASTM A123 (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

ASTM A36 (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A653 (2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A780 (2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings

ASTM A792 (2010) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM DS 1-28R (1998) Data Sheet: Roof Systems

STEEL DECK INSTITUTE (SDI)

ANSI/SDI QA/QC (2017) Standard for Quality Control and

Quality Assurance for Installation of Steel Deck

SDI DDM04 (2015; Errata 1-3 2016; Add 1 2015; Add 2 20162006) Diaphragm Design Manual; 4th Edition

SDI DDP (1987; R 2000) Deck Damage and Penetrations

SDI MOC3 (2016) Manual of Construction with Steel Deck (3rd Edition)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-301-01 (2013; with Change 3) Structural Engineering

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1926 Safety and Health Regulations for Construction

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 580 (2006; Reprint Oct 2013) Tests for Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Accessories

Deck Units

Galvanizing Repair Paint

Mechanical Fasteners

Touch-Up Paint

Welding Equipment

Welding Rods and Accessories

SD-05 Design Data

Deck Units; G

SD-07 Certificates

Powder-Actuated Tool Operator

Welder Qualifications

Welding Procedures

Fire Safety

Wind Storm Resistance

Manufacturer's Certificate

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Deck Units

Furnish deck units and accessory products from a manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacture of steel decking. Provide [manufacturer's certificate](#) s attesting that the decking material meets the specified requirements.

1.3.2 Certification of [Powder-Actuated Tool Operator](#)

Provide manufacturer's certificate attesting that the operators are authorized to use the low velocity powder-actuated tool.

1.3.3 Qualifications for Welding Work

Follow [Welding Procedures](#) of [AWS D1.3](#) for sheet steel. Submit qualified [Welder Qualifications](#) in accordance with [AWS D1.3](#) for sheet steel or under an equivalent approved qualification test.

Submit manufacturer's catalog data for [Welding Equipment](#) and [Welding Rods and Accessories](#).

1.3.4 Regulatory Requirements

1.3.4.1 [Wind Storm Resistance](#)

Provide roof construction assembly capable of withstanding a nominal uplift

pressure of 60 pounds per square foot when tested in accordance with the uplift pressure test described in the FM DS 1-28R or as described in UL 580 and in general compliance with UFC 3-301-01.

1.3.5 Fabrication Drawings

Show type and location of units, location and sequence of connections, bearing on supports, methods of anchoring, attachment of accessories, adjusting plate details, cant strips, ridge and valley plates, metal closure strips, size and location of holes to be cut and reinforcement to be provided, the manufacturer's erection instructions and other pertinent details.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver deck units to the site in a dry and undamaged condition. Store and handle steel deck in a manner to protect it from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Do not use decking for storage or as working platform until units have been fastened into position. Exercise care not to damage material or overload decking during construction. The maximum uniform distributed storage load must not exceed the design live load. Stack decking on platforms or pallets and cover with weathertight ventilated covering. Elevate one end during storage to provide drainage. Maintain deck finish at all times to prevent formation of rust. Repair deck finish using touch-up paint. Replace damaged material.

1.5 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR ROOF DECKS

1.5.1 Properties of Sections

Properties of metal roof deck sections must comply with engineering design width as limited by the provisions of AISI D100.

1.5.2 Allowable Loads

Indicate total uniform dead and live load for detailing purposes.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DECK UNITS

Submit manufacturer's or applicable published literature for the structural properties of the proposed deck units.

2.1.1 Roof Deck

Conform to ASTM A792 or ASTM A1008 for deck used in conjunction with insulation and built-up roofing. Fabricate roof deck units of the steel design thickness required by the design drawings and galvanized in accordance with manufacturer's standard.

2.1.2 Form Deck

Conform to ASTM A653 or ASTM A1008 for deck used as formwork for concrete. Fabricate form deck of the steel design thickness required by the design drawings. Zinc-coat in conformance with ASTM A653, Z180 G60 coating class.

Deck units must be fluted section cells having interlocking type sidelaps.

Provide depth, width of unit, number of cells per unit, and width of cells as indicated.

Use panels of maximum possible lengths to minimize end laps.

2.1.3 Touch-Up Paint

Provide a high zinc-dust content paint for regalvanizing welds in galvanized steel conforming to ASTM A780.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

Provide accessories of same material as deck, unless specified otherwise. Provide manufacturer's standard type accessories, as specified.

2.2.1 Adjusting Plates

Provide adjusting plates, or segments of deck units, of same thickness and configuration as deck units in locations too narrow to accommodate full size units. Provide factory cut plates of predetermined size where possible.

2.2.2 End Closures

Fabricated of sheet metal by the deck manufacturer. Provide end closures minimum 0.0295 inch thick to close open ends at openings through deck.

2.2.3 Sheet Metal Collar

Where deck is cut for passage of pipes, ducts, columns, etc., and deck is to remain exposed, provide a neatly cut sheet metal collar to cover edges of deck. Do not cut deck until after installation of supplemental supports.

2.2.4 Cover Plates

Sheet metal to close panel edge and end conditions, and where panels change direction or butt. Polyethylene-coated, self-adhesive, 2 inch wide joint tape may be provided in lieu of cover plates on flat-surfaced decking butt joints.

2.2.5 Access Hole Covers

Sheet metal, minimum 0.0474 inch thick.

2.2.6 Cant Strips for Roof Decks

Fabricate cant strips from the specified commercial-quality steel sheets not less than nominal 0.0358 inch thick before galvanizing. Bend strips to form a 45-degree cant not less than 5 inch wide, with top and bottom flanges a minimum 3 inch wide. Length of strips 10 feet.

2.2.7 Ridge and Valley Plates for Roof Decks

Fabricate plates from the specified structural-quality steel sheets, not less than nominal 0.0358 inch thick before galvanizing. Provide plates of minimum 4-1/2 inch wide and bent to provide tight fitting closures at

ridges and valleys. Provide a minimum length of ridge and valley plates of 10 feet.

2.2.8 Metal Closure Strips for Roof Decks

Fabricate strips from the specified commercial-quality steel sheets not less than nominal 0.0358 inch thick before galvanizing. Provide strips from the configuration required to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends and sides of steel roof decking.

2.2.9 Galvanized Steel Angles for Roof Decks

Provide hot-rolled carbon steel angles conforming to ASTM A36, and hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123.

2.2.10 Mechanical Fasteners

Provide mechanical fasteners, such as powder actuated fasteners, pneumatically driven fasteners or self-drilling screws, for anchoring the deck to structural supports and adjoining units as indicated.

2.2.11 Miscellaneous Accessories

Furnish the manufacturer's standard accessories to complete the deck installation. Furnish metal accessories of the same material as the deck and with the minimum design thickness as follows: saddles, 0.0474 inch welding washers, 0.0598 inch other metal accessories, 0.0358 inch unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Prior to installation of decking units and accessories, examine worksite to verify that as-built structure will permit installation of decking system without modification.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Install steel deck units in accordance with 29 CFR 1926, Subpart R - Steel Erection, ANSI/SDI QA/QC and approved shop drawings. Place units on structural supports, properly adjusted, leveled, and aligned at right angles to supports before permanently securing in place. Damaged deck and accessories including material which is permanently stained or contaminated, deformed, or with burned holes shall not be installed. Report inaccuracies in alignment or leveling to the Contracting Officer and make necessary corrections before permanently anchoring deck units. Locate deck ends over supports only. Butted deck ends. Do not use unanchored deck units as a work or storage platform. Permanently anchor units placed by the end of each working day. Do not support suspended ceilings, light fixtures, ducts, utilities, or other loads by steel deck unless indicated. Distribute loads by appropriate means to prevent damage.

3.2.1 Attachment

Immediately after placement and alignment, and after correcting inaccuracies, permanently fasten steel deck units to structural supports and to adjacent deck units by welding with normal 5/8 inch diameter puddle welds, or powder-actuated fasteners as indicated on the design drawings and in accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedure. Clamp or weight

deck units to provide firm contact between deck units and structural supports while performing welding or fastening.

3.2.1.1 Welding

Perform welding in accordance with [AWS D1.3](#) using methods and electrodes recommended by the manufacturers of the base metal alloys being used. Ensure only operators previously qualified by tests prescribed in [AWS D1.3](#) make welds. Immediately recertify, or replace qualified welders, that are producing unsatisfactory welding. Indicate for location, size, and spacing of fastening. Do not use welding washers at the connections of the deck to supports. Do not use welding washers at sidelaps. Holes and similar defects will not be acceptable. Attach all partial or segments of deck units to structural supports in accordance with Section 2.5 of [SDI DDM04](#). Immediately clean welds by chipping and wire brushing. Heavily coat welds, cut edges and damaged portions of coated finish with zinc-dust paint conforming to [ASTM A780](#).

3.2.1.2 Mechanical Fastening

Anchor deck to structural supports and adjoining units with mechanical fasteners. Drive the powder-actuated fasteners with a low-velocity piston tool by an operator authorized by the manufacturer of the powder-actuated tool.

3.2.2 Openings

Cut or drill all holes and openings required and be coordinated with the drawings, specifications, and other trades. Frame and reinforce openings through the deck in conformance with [SDI DDP](#). Reinforce holes and openings [6 to 12 inch](#) across by [0.0474 inch](#) thick steel sheet at least [12 inch](#) wider and longer than the opening and be fastened to the steel deck at each corner of the sheet and at a maximum of [6 inch](#) on center. Reinforce holes and openings larger than [12 inch](#) by steel angles installed perpendicular to the steel joists and supported by the adjacent steel joists. Install steel angles perpendicular to the deck ribs and fasten to the angles perpendicular to the steel joists. Deck manufacturer shall approve holes or openings larger than [6 inch](#) in diameter prior to drilling or cutting.

3.2.3 Deck Damage

[SDI MOC3](#), for repair of deck damage.

3.2.4 Touch-Up Paint

3.2.4.1 Roof Deck

After roof decking installation, wire brush, clean, and touchup paint the scarred areas on top and bottom surfaces of metal roof decking. The scarred areas include welds, weld scars, bruises, and rust spots. Touchup galvanized surfaces with galvanizing repair paint. Touchup painted surfaces with repair paint of painted surfaces.

3.2.4.2 Floor Deck

For floor decking installation, wire brush, clean, and touchup paint the scarred areas on the top and bottom surfaces of the metal floor decking and on the surface of supporting steel members. Include welds, weld scars, bruises, and rust spots for scarred areas. Touched up the galvanized

surfaces with galvanizing repair paint. Touch up the painted surfaces with paint for the repair of painted surfaces.

3.2.5 Accessory Installation

3.2.5.1 Adjusting Plates

Provide in locations too narrow to accommodate full-size deck units and install as shown on shop drawings.

3.2.5.2 End Closures

Provide end closure to close open ends of cells at columns, walls, and openings in deck.

3.2.5.3 Access Hole Covers

Provide access whole covers to seal holes cut in decking to facilitate welding of the deck to structural supports.

3.3 CANT STRIPS FOR ROOF DECKS

Provide strips to be fusion welded to surface of roof decking, secured to wood nailers by galvanized screws or to steel framing by galvanized self-tapping screws or welds. Do not exceed spacing of welds and fasteners of 12 inch. Lap end joints a minimum 3 inch and secure with galvanized sheet metal screws spaced a maximum 4 inch on center.

3.4 RIDGE AND VALLEY PLATES FOR ROOF DECKS

Provide plates to be fusion welded to top surface of roof decking. Lap end joints a minimum 3 inch. For valley plates, provide endlaps to be in the direction of water flow.

3.5 CLOSURE STRIPS FOR ROOF DECKS

Provide closure strips at open, uncovered ends and edges of the roof decking and in voids between roof decking and top of walls and partitions where indicated. Install closure strips in position in a manner to provide a weathertight installation.

3.6 ROOF INSULATION SUPPORT FOR ROOF DECKS

Provide metal closure strips for support of roof insulation where rib openings in top surface of metal roof decking occur adjacent to edges and openings. Weld metal closure strips in position.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION FOR ROOF DECKS

Upon completion of the deck, sweep surfaces clean and prepare for installation of the roofing.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.8.1 Deck Weld Inspection

Visual inspect welds in accordance with AWS D1.3.

3.8.2 Decks Not Receiving Concrete

Inspect the decking top surface for distortion after installation. For roof decks not receiving concrete, verify distortion by placing a straight edge across three adjacent top flanges. The maximum allowable gap between the straight edge and the top flanges should not exceed manufacturing and construction tolerances of supporting members. When gap is more than the allowable, provide corrective measures or replacement. Reinspect decking after performing corrective measures or replacement.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 05 51 33

METAL LADDERS

02/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN LADDER INSTITUTE (ALI)

[ALI A14.3](#) (2008) Standard for Fixed Ladders and Safety Requirements

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

[AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#) (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016) Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

[ASTM A36/A36M](#) (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

[ASTM D1187/D1187M](#) (1997; E 2011; R 2011) Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

[MPI 79](#) (2012) Primer, Alkyd, Anti-Corrosive for Metal

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

[SSPC SP 3](#) (1982; E 2004) Power Tool Cleaning

[SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3](#) (2007) Commercial Blast Cleaning

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

[29 CFR 1910.23](#) (Nov 2016) Ladders

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

[SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

[Ladders](#), Installation Drawings

SD-07 Certificates

Fabricator Certification for Ladder Assembly

1.3 CERTIFICATES

Provide **fabricator certification for ladder assembly** stating that the ladder and associated components have been fabricated according to the requirements of **29 CFR 1910.23**.

1.4 QUALIFICATION OF WELDERS

Qualify welders in accordance with **AWS D1.1/D1.1M**. Use procedures, materials, and equipment of the type required for the work.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Protect from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area free from contact with soil and weather. Remove and replace damaged items with new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Structural Carbon Steel

ASTM A36/A36M.

2.2 FABRICATION FINISHES

2.2.1 Shop Cleaning and Painting

2.2.1.1 Surface Preparation

Blast clean surfaces in accordance with **SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3**. Surfaces that will be exposed in spaces above ceiling or in attic spaces, crawl spaces, furred spaces, and chases may be cleaned in accordance with **SSPC SP 3** in lieu of being blast cleaned. Wash cleaned surfaces which become contaminated with rust, dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants with solvents until thoroughly clean.

2.2.1.2 Pretreatment, Priming and Painting

Apply pretreatment, primer, and paint in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

2.3 LADDERS

Fabricate vertical ladders conforming to **29 CFR 1910.23** and Section 5 of **ALI A14.3**. Ladders shall be capable of supporting their maximum intended load. Use **2 1/2 by 3/8 inch** steel flats for stringers and **3/4 inch** diameter steel rods for rungs. Ladder rungs, step and cleats must be spaced not less than **10 inches** and not more than **16 inches** wide (measured before installation of ladder safety system), spaced no more than **14 inches** apart, plug welded or shouldered and headed into stringers. Install ladders so that the maximum perpendicular distance from the centerline of

the steps or rungs, or grab bars, or both, to the nearest permanent object in the back of the ladder or to the finished wall surface will not be less than 7 inches, except for the elevator pit ladders, which have a minimum perpendicular distance of 4.5 inches. Provide heavy clip angles riveted or bolted to the stringer and drilled for not less than two 1/2 inch diameter expansion bolts as indicated. Provide intermediate clip angles not over 48 inches on centers. The top rung of the ladder must be level with the top of the access level, parapet or landing served by the ladder except for hatches or wells. Extend the side rails of through or side step ladders 42 inches above the access level. Provide ladder access protective swing gates at the top of access/egress level. The drawings must indicate ladder locations and details of critical dimensions and materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Install items at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's instructions. Verify all measurements and take all field measurements necessary before fabrication. Provide Exposed fastenings of compatible materials, generally matching in color and finish, and harmonize with the material to which fastenings are applied. Include materials and parts necessary to complete each item, even though such work is not definitely shown or specified. Poor matching of holes for fasteners will be cause for rejection. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Thickness of metal and details of assembly and supports must provide strength and stiffness. Formed joints exposed to the weather to exclude water. Items listed below require additional procedures.

3.2 WORKMANSHIP

Metalwork must be well formed to shape and size, with sharp lines and angles and true curves. Drilling and punching must produce clean true lines and surfaces. Continuously weld along the entire area of contact. Do not tack weld exposed connections of work in place. Grid smooth exposed welds. Provide smooth finish on exposed surfaces of work in place, unless otherwise approved. Where tight fits are required, mill joints. Cope or miter corner joints, well formed, and in true alignment. Install in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and approved drawings, cuts, and details.

3.3 ANCHORAGE, FASTENINGS, AND CONNECTIONS

Provide anchorage where necessary for fastening metal items securely in place. Include for anchorage not otherwise specified or indicated slotted inserts, expansion anchors, and powder-actuated fasteners, when approved for concrete; toggle bolts and through bolts for masonry; machine bolts, carriage bolts and powder-actuated threaded studs for steel; through bolts, lag bolts, and screws for wood. Do not use wood plugs in any material. Provide non-ferrous attachments for non-ferrous metal. Make exposed fastenings of compatible materials, generally matching in color and finish, to which fastenings are applied. Conceal fastenings where practicable.

3.4 WELDING

Perform welding, welding inspection, and corrective welding, in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Use continuous welds on all exposed connections. Grind visible welds smooth in the finished installation.

3.5 FINISHES

3.5.1 Dissimilar Materials

Where dissimilar metals are in contact, protect surfaces with a coat conforming to MPI 79 to prevent galvanic or corrosive action. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete, plaster, mortar, masonry, wood, or absorptive materials subject to wetting, protect with ASTM D1187/D1187M, asphalt-base emulsion.

3.5.2 Field Preparation

Remove rust preventive coating just prior to field erection, using a remover approved by the rust preventive manufacturer. Surfaces, when assembled, must be free of rust, grease, dirt and other foreign matter.

3.5.3 Environmental Conditions

Do not clean or paint surface when damp or exposed to foggy or rainy weather, when metallic surface temperature is less than 5 degrees F above the dew point of the surrounding air, or when surface temperature is below 45 degrees F or over 95 degrees F, unless approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.6 LADDERS

Secure to the adjacent construction with the clip angles attached to the stringer. Install intermediate clip angles not over 48 inches on center. Install brackets as required for securing of ladders welded or bolted to structural steel or built into the masonry or concrete. Ends of ladders must not rest upon finished roof.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 22 00

ROOF AND DECK INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1289 (2017) Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM 4450 (1989) Approval Standard for Class 1 Insulated Steel Deck Roofs

FM 4470 (2010) Single-Ply, Polymer-Modified Bitumen Sheet, Built-up Roof (BUR), and Liquid Applied Roof Assemblies for Use in Class 1 and Noncombustible Roof Deck Construction

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide <http://www.approvalguide.com/>

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Insulation Board Layout and Attachment; G

Verification of Existing Conditions; G

SD-03 Product Data

Insulation; G

Cover Board; G

Fasteners; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Flame Spread Rating; G

SD-07 Certificates

Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) Content; G

Installer Qualifications; G

Certificates Of Compliance For Felt Materials; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Nails and Fasteners; G

Roof Insulation; G

Adhesives; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) Content; S

1.3 SHOP DRAWINGS

Submit [insulation board layout](#) and attachment indicating methods of attachment and spacing, transitions, tapered components, thicknesses of materials, and closure and termination conditions. Show locations of ridges, valleys, crickets, interface with, and slope to, roof drains. Base shop drawings on verified field measurements and include [verification of existing conditions](#).

1.4 PRODUCT DATA

Include data for material descriptions, recommendations for product shelf life, requirements for [cover board](#) or coatings, and precautions for flammability and toxicity. Include data to verify compatibility of sealants with insulation.

1.5 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

Include field of roof and perimeter attachment requirements.

Provide a complete description of installation sequencing for each phase of the roofing system. Include weatherproofing procedures.

1.6 QUALITY CONTROL

Provide certification of [installer qualifications](#) from the insulation manufacturer confirming the specific installer has the required qualifications for installing the specific roof insulation system(s)

indicated.

1.7 FM APPROVAL REQUIREMENTS

Provide fastening patterns in accordance with FM 1-90 for insulation on steel and concrete decks.

1.8 FIRE PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.8.1 Insulation in Roof Systems

Comply with the requirements of FM 4450. Roof insulation to have a flame spread rating of 75 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Additional documentation of compliance with flame spread rating is not required when insulation of the type used for this project as part of the specific roof assembly is listed and labeled as FM Class 1 approved.

1.8.2 Fire Resistance Ratings for Roofs

Provide in accordance with ICC IBC Chapter 7 and Table 721.1(3) Min Fire and Smoke Protection For Floor and Roof Systems.

1.9 CERTIFICATIONS

Provide products that are third party certified for low Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) Content in accordance with UL 2818.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.10.1 Delivery

Deliver materials to the project site in manufacturer's unopened and undamaged standard commercial containers bearing the following legible information:

- a. Name of manufacturer
- b. Brand designation
- c. Specification number, type, and class, as applicable, where materials are covered by a referenced specification

Deliver materials in sufficient quantity to allow continuity of the work.

1.10.2 Storage and Handling

Store and handle materials in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Protect from damage, exposure to open flame or other ignition sources, wetting, condensation, and moisture absorption. Keep materials wrapped and separated from off-gassing materials (such as drying paints and adhesives). Do not use materials that have visible moisture or biological growth. Store in an enclosed building or trailer that provides a dry, adequately ventilated environment. Replace damaged material with new material.

1.11 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Do not install roof insulation during inclement weather or when air temperature is below 40 degrees F and interior humidity is 45 percent or

greater, or when there is visible ice, frost, or moisture on the roof deck.

1.12 PROTECTION

Deliver insulation materials to the job site in original, unopened containers no sooner than thirty (30) days prior to start of job. Materials to be stored up, off of the roof deck or ground, and covered with a weatherproof covering anchored sufficiently so as to resist wind blow off or tearing. When storing materials on the roof, do not cover stress deck.

1.12.1 Completed Work

Replace crushed or damaged insulation prior to roof surface installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SUSTAINABILITY CRITERIA

Where allowed by performance criteria:

2.1.1 Reduce Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) Contents

Provide products with reduced VOC content and provide documentation in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING paragraph REDUCE VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUNDS.

2.1.2 Recycled Content

Provide products with recycled content and provide documentation in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING paragraph RECYCLED CONTENT.

2.2 INSULATION

2.2.1 Insulation Types

Provide the following roof insulation materials. Provide roof insulation that is compatible with attachment methods for the specified insulation and roof membrane.

- a. Polyisocyanurate Board: Provide in accordance with ASTM C1289 REV A Type II, fibrous felt or glass mat membrane both sides, except minimum compressive strength of 20 pounds per square inch (psi).
- b. Wood Fiberboard: In accordance with ASTM C208, high density, except 4 by 84 feet maximum board size.

ASTM C208 Type II, Grade 1 or 2, roof insulating board, treated with sizing, wax or bituminous impregnation. Limit bituminous impregnation to 4 percent by weight when used over steel decks. Maximum board size: 4 feet by 4 feet.

2.2.2 Recycled Materials

Provide thermal insulation materials containing recycled content in accordance with paragraph PRODUCT SUSTAINABILITY CRITERIA. Unless specified otherwise, the minimum required recycled content for listed materials are:

Polyisocyanurate/polyurethane:	9 percent recovered material
--------------------------------	------------------------------

2.2.3 Insulation Thickness

As necessary to provide the thermal resistance (R-value) indicated. Base calculation on the R-value for aged insulation.

2.2.4 Tapered Roof Insulation

One layer of the tapered roof insulation assembly must be factory tapered to a slope of not less than one in 1/4 inch per foot. Factory fabricate mitered joints from two diagonally cut boards or one board shaped to provide required slopes.

2.2.5 Tapered Edge Strips

Provide preformed tapered edge strips of the same material as the roof insulation. Taper edge strips at a rate of one to 1 1/2 inch per foot down to approximately 1/8 inch thick.

2.3 COVER BOARD

For use as a thermal barrier and overlayment.

2.4 FASTENERS

Provide flush-driven fasteners through flat round or hexagonal steel or plastic plates. Provide zinc-coated steel plates, flat round not less than 1 3/8 inch diameter, hexagonal not less than 28 gage. Provide high-density plastic plates, molded thermoplastic with smooth top surface, reinforcing ribs and not less than 3 inches in diameter. Fully recess fastener head into plastic plate after it is driven. Form plates to prevent dishing. Do not use bell or cup shaped plates. Provide fasteners in accordance with insulation manufacturer's recommendations for holding power when driven, or a minimum of 360 pounds each in steel deck, whichever is the higher minimum. Provide fasteners for steel or concrete decks in accordance with FM APP GUIDE (<http://www.approvalguide.com/>) for Class I roof deck construction, and spaced to withstand uplift pressure of Zone 1 30 psf, Zone 2 60 psf, and Zone 3 89 psf.

2.4.1 Fasteners for Steel Decks

Approved hardened penetrating fasteners or screws in accordance with FM 4450 and listed in FM APP GUIDE for Class I roof deck construction. Quantity and placement to withstand a minimum uplift pressure of Zone 1 30 psf, Zone 2 60 psf, and Zone 3 89 psf in accordance with FM APP GUIDE.

2.4.2 Fasteners for Poured Concrete Decks

Approved hardened fasteners or screws to penetrate deck at least 1 inch but not more than 1 1/2 inches, in accordance with FM 4470, and listed in FM APP GUIDE for Class I roof deck construction. Quantity and placement to withstand an uplift pressure of Zone 1 30 psf, Zone 2 60 psf, and Zone 3 89 psf in accordance with FM APP GUIDE.

2.5 WOOD NAILERS

Pressure-preservative treated as specified in Section 06 10 00 ROUGH

CARPENTRY.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

3.1.1 Surface Inspection

Ensure surfaces are clean, smooth, and dry prior to application. Check roof deck surfaces, including surfaces sloped to roof drains and outlets, for defects before starting work.

The Contractor must inspect and approve the surfaces immediately before starting installation.

3.1.2 Surface Preparation

Correct defects and inaccuracies in roof deck surface to eliminate poor drainage from hollow or low spots, perform the following:

- a. Provide wood nailers of the same thickness as the insulation at edges, curbs, and roof openings for securing of gravel stops, gutters, and flashing flanges.

3.2 INSULATION INSTALLATION

Apply insulation in layers with staggered joints when total required thickness of insulation exceeds 1/2 inch. When using multiple layers of insulation, provide joints of each succeeding layer that are parallel and offset in both directions with respect to the layer below. Keep insulation 1/2 inch clear of vertical surfaces penetrating and projecting from roof surface. Verify required slopes to each roof drain.

3.2.1 Installation Using Mechanical Fasteners

Secure base layer and cover board insulation with penetrating type fasteners.

3.2.2 Installation With Adhesive

Install insulation over base layer using 2-part urethane adhesive. Apply as per membrane manufacturer's requirements.

3.2.3 Tapered Edge Strips

Where indicated, provide edge strips in the right angle formed by the juncture of roof and wood nailing strips that extend above the level of the roof. Install edge strips flush to vertical surfaces of wood nailing strips. Where possible, nail edge strips to adjoining surfaces. Set edge strips in 2-part urethane adhesive at specified rate.

3.3 PROTECTION

3.3.1 Protection of Applied Insulation

Completely cover each day's installation of insulation with finished roofing on same day. Phased construction is not permitted. Protect open spaces between insulation and parapets or other walls and spaces at curbs, scuttles, and expansion joints, until permanent roofing and flashing are

applied. Storing, walking, wheeling, or trucking directly on insulation or on roofed surfaces is not permitted. Provide smooth, clean board or plank walkways, runways, and platforms near supports, as necessary, to distribute weight in accordance with indicated live load limits. Protect exposed edges of insulation with cutoffs at the end of each work day or whenever precipitation is imminent. Fill all profile voids in cutoffs to prevent trapping moisture below the membrane. Remove cutoffs when work resumes.

3.3.2 Damaged Work and Materials

Restore work and materials that become damaged during construction to original condition or replace with new materials.

3.4 INSPECTION

Establish and maintain inspection procedures to assure compliance of the installed roof insulation with contract requirements. Remove, replace, correct in an approved manner, any work found not in compliance. Quality control must include, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Observation of environmental conditions; number and skill level of insulation workers; start and end time of work.
- b. Verification of certification, listing or label compliance with FM Data Sheets. (<https://www.fmglobal.com/fmglobalregistration/Downloads.aspx>)
- c. Verification of proper storage and handling of insulation and vapor retarder materials before, during, and after installation.
- d. Inspection of mechanical fasteners; type, number, length, and spacing.
- e. Coordination with other materials.
- f. Inspection of insulation joint orientation and laps between layers, joint width and bearing of edges of insulation on deck.
- g. Installation of cutoffs and proper joining of work on subsequent days.
- h. Continuation of complete roofing system installation to cover insulation installed same day.
- i. Verification of required slope to each roof drain.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 54 19
POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE ROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI/SPRI ES-1 (2003) Wind Design Standard for Edge Systems Used with Low Slope Roofing Systems

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 7 (2017) Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY ENGINEERS (ASSE/SAFE)

ASSE/SAFE A10.24 (2014) Roofing - Safety Requirements of Low-Sloped Roofs

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D4263 (1983; R 2012) Indicating Moisture in Concrete by the Plastic Sheet Method

ASTM D4434/D4434M (2015) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) Sheet Roofing

ASTM D6754/D6754M (2010) Standard Specification for Ketone Ethylene Ester Based Sheet Roofing

ASTM E108 (2011) Fire Tests of Roof Coverings

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM 4470 (2010) Single-Ply, Polymer-Modified Bitumen Sheet, Built-up Roof (BUR), and Liquid Applied Roof Assemblies for Use in Class 1 and Noncombustible Roof Deck Construction

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

NATIONAL ROOFING CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NRCA)

NRCA 3619 (2004) Quality Control Guidelines for Application of Polymer-Modified Bitumen Roofing

NRCA 3740 (2005) The NRCA Waterproofing Manual

SINGLE PLY ROOFING INDUSTRY (SPRI)

ANSI/SPRI RD-1 (2014) Performance Standard for Retrofit Drains

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)

Energy Star (1992; R 2006) Energy Star Energy Efficiency Labeling System (FEMP)

U.S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL (USGBC)

LEED BD+C (2009; R 2010) Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design(tm) Building Design and Construction (LEED-NC)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 790 (2004; Reprint Jul 2014) Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings

1.2 SUMMARY

Adhered polyvinyl-chloride (PVC) roof membrane system applied over insulation or coverboard.

1.3 ASSEMBLY REQUIREMENTS

Roofing membrane sheet widths shall be consistent with membrane attachment methods and wind uplift requirements, and shall be as large as practical. In order to minimize joints and 3-way overlaps, prefabricated sheets are not accepted. Provide membrane which is free of defects and foreign material. Coordinate flashing work to permit continuous roof-surfacing operations. Insulation shall be applied and weatherproofed on the same day.

1.3.1 Fire Resistance

Complete roof system assembly:

- a. Class A rated in accordance with ASTM E108, FM 4470, or UL 790; and
- b. Be listed as Class I roof deck construction in FM APP GUIDE.

FM or UL approved components of the roof covering assembly shall bear the appropriate FM or UL label.

1.3.2 Wind Uplift Resistance

The complete roof system assembly shall be rated and installed to resist wind loads indicated and validated by uplift resistance testing in accordance with Factory Mutual (FM) test procedures. Do not install

non-rated systems, except as approved by the Contracting Officer. Submit Engineering calculations, signed, sealed, and dated by a Registered Engineer, validating the wind resistance per [ASCE 7](#), and [ANSI/SPRI ES-1](#) if it is a non-rated roof system. Base wind uplift measurements on a design wind speed of [140 mph](#) in accordance with [ASCE 7](#) and other applicable building code requirements.

1.3.3 Solar Reflectance Index (SRI)

SRI measures the roof's ability to reject solar heat, defined such that a standard black (reflectance 0.05, emittance 0.90) is 0 and a standard white (reflectance 0.80, emittance 0.90) is 100. Use roofing materials having minimum appropriate SRI for more than 75 percent of roof surface (low slope (less than 2:12) SRI greater than 78; high slope (greater than 2:12) SRI greater than 29).

1.4 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING

Materials in this technical specification may contribute towards contract compliance with sustainability requirements. See Section [01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING](#) for project [LEED BD+C](#) local/regional materials, low-emitting materials, recycled content, rapidly renewable materials and [LEED documentation](#) requirements.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section [01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING](#). Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES](#):

[SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

- [Detail Drawings; G](#)
- [Roof Plan; G](#)

[SD-03 Product Data](#)

- [PVC Roofing Membrane; G](#)
- [Bonding Adhesive](#)
- [Flashing](#)
- [Membrane Fasteners and Plates](#)
- [Roof Insulation](#)
- [Pre-Manufactured Accessories](#)
- [Water Cutoffs](#)
- [Information Card](#)
- [Walk Treads](#)

[SD-05 Design Data](#)

- [Wind Uplift Resistance; G](#)

[SD-07 Certificates](#)

- [Qualification of Manufacturer](#)
- [Qualifications of Applicator](#)
- [Qualification of Engineer of Record](#)

Wind Uplift Resistance
Fire Resistance classification
Minimum Polymer Thickness
Sample Warranty; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Application Method; G
Membrane Flashing; G
Perimeter Attachment
Auxiliary Fasteners
Protection Mat
Pre-Manufactured Accessories
Cold Weather; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

LEED Documentation
Warranty; G
Information Card; G
Instructions to Government Personnel; G

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Qualification of Manufacturer

Polyvinyl-Chloride sheet roofing system manufacturer must have a minimum of 10 years experience in manufacturing PVC roofing products.

1.6.2 Qualifications of Applicator

Roofing system applicator must be approved, authorized, or licensed in writing by the PVC sheet roofing system manufacturer and have a minimum of five years experience as an approved, authorized, or licensed applicator with that manufacturer and be approved at a level capable of providing the specified warranty. Supply the names, locations and client contact information of five projects, within the previous three years, of similar size and scope that the applicator has constructed using the manufacturer's roofing products submitted for this project.

1.6.3 Qualification of Engineer of Record

Engineer of Record must be currently licensed within the jurisdiction of the project.

Engineer of Record must be approved, authorized, and currently licensed by the state of **New Jersey**, and have a minimum of five years experience as an approved Engineer for manufacturers of similar roof systems. Engineer of Record must supply the names and locations of five projects of similar size and scope for which he has provided engineering calculations using the manufacturer's products submitted for this project within the previous three years. Engineer of Record must provide certified engineering calculations for:

Wind uplift requirements in accordance with Local and State codes

Snow load requirements per **ICC IBC** Chapter 16 Section 1608 and Section 7 of

ASCE 7**1.6.4 Conformance and Compatibility**

The entire roofing and flashing system shall be in accordance with specified and indicated requirements, including fire and wind resistance.

1.6.5 Preroofing Conference

After approval of submittals and before performing roofing and insulation system installation work, hold a preroofing conference to review the following:

- a. Drawings, including roof plan, specifications and submittals related to the roof work. Field inspection and verification of all existing conditions, including all fire safety issues, existing structure, and existing materials, including concealed combustibles, which may require additional protection during installation.
- b. Roof system components installation;
- c. Procedure for the roof manufacturer's technical representative's onsite inspection and acceptance of the roofing substrate, and roofing substrate, the name of the manufacturer's technical representatives, the frequency of the onsite visits, distribution of copies of the inspection reports from the manufacturer's technical representative to roof manufacturer;
- d. Contractor's plan for coordination of the work of the various trades involved in providing the roofing system and other components secured to the roofing; and
- e. Quality control (NRCA 3619) plan for the roof system installation;
- f. Safety requirements.

Coordinate preroofing conference scheduling with the Contracting Officer. The conference shall be attended by the Contractor, the Contracting Officer's designated personnel, personnel directly responsible for the installation of roofing and insulation, flashing and sheet metal work, mechanical and electrical work, other trades interfacing with the roof work, designated safety personnel trained to enforce and comply with ASSE/SAFE A10.24, and a representative of the roofing materials manufacturer. Before beginning roofing work, provide a copy of meeting notes and action items to all attending parties. Note action items requiring resolution prior to start of roof work.

1.7 DETAIL DRAWINGS

Submit roof plan depicting wind loads and boundaries of enhanced perimeter and corner attachments of roof system components, , spacing of perimeter, corner, and infield fasteners, as applicable. The drawing shall reflect the project roof plan of each roof level and conditions indicated. Submit bids with approved detail drawings and specifications approved and furnished by the PVC membrane manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.8.1 Delivery

Deliver materials in the manufacturer's original, unopened containers and rolls with labels intact and legible. Mark and remove wet or damaged materials from the site. Where materials are covered by a referenced specification number, the container shall bear the specification number, type, class, and shelf life expiration date where applicable. Deliver materials in sufficient quantity to allow work to proceed without interruption.

1.8.2 Storage

Protect materials against moisture absorption and contamination or other damage. Avoid crushing or crinkling of roll materials. Store roll materials on end on clean raised platforms or pallets one level high in dry locations with adequate ventilation, such as an enclosed building or closed trailer. Do not store roll materials in buildings under construction until concrete, mortar, and plaster work is finished and dry. Maintain roll materials at temperatures above 50 degrees F for 24 hours immediately before application. Do not store materials outdoors unless approved by the Contracting Officer. Completely cover felts stored outdoors, on and off roof, with waterproof canvas protective covering. Do not use polyethylene sheet as a covering. Tie covering securely to pallets to make completely weatherproof. Provide sufficient ventilation to prevent condensation. Do not store more materials on roof than can be installed the same day and remove unused materials at end of each days work. Distribute materials temporarily stored on roof to stay within live load limits of the roof construction.

- a. Maintain a minimum distance of 35 foot for all stored flammable materials, including materials covered with shrink wraps, craft paper and/or tarps from all torch/welding applications.
- b. Immediately remove wet, contaminated or otherwise damaged or unsuitable materials from the site. Damaged materials may be marked by the Contracting Officer.

1.8.3 Handling

Prevent damage to edges and ends of roll materials. Do not install damaged materials in the work. Select and operate material handling equipment to prevent damage to materials or applied roofing.

1.9 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not install roofing system when air temperature is below 40 degrees F, during any form of precipitation, including fog, or when there is ice, frost, moisture, or any other visible dampness on the roof deck. Follow manufacturer's printed instructions for Cold Weather Installation.

1.10 SEQUENCING

Coordinate the work with other trades to ensure that components which are to be secured to or stripped into the roofing system are available and that permanent flashing and counterflashing in accordance with NRCA 3740, are installed as the work progresses. Ensure temporary protection measures are in place to preclude moisture intrusion or damage to installed materials.

Application of roofing shall immediately follow application of insulation as a continuous operation. Coordinate roofing operations with insulation work so that all roof insulation applied each day is covered with roof membrane installation the same day.

1.11 WARRANTY

Provide roof system material and workmanship warranties. Provide revision or amendment to standard membrane manufacturer warranty as required to comply with the specified requirements. Minimum manufacturer warranty shall have no dollar limit, cover full system water-tightness, and shall have a minimum duration of 20 years. Submit [sample](#) certificate.

1.11.1 Roof Membrane Manufacturer Warranty

Furnish the roof membrane manufacturer's 20-year, no dollar limit roof system materials and installation workmanship warranty, including flashing, insulation, and accessories necessary for a watertight roof system construction. Provide warranty directly to the Government and commence warranty effective date at time of Government's acceptance of the roof work. The warranty must state that:

- a. If within the warranty period the roof system, as installed for its intended use in the normal climatic and environmental conditions of the facility, becomes non-watertight, shows evidence of moisture intrusion within the assembly, splits, tears, cracks, delaminates, separates at the seams, or shows evidence of excessive weathering due to defective materials or installation workmanship, the repair or replacement of the defective and damaged materials of the roof system assembly and correction of defective workmanship are the responsibility of the roof membrane manufacturer. All costs associated with the repair or replacement work are the responsibility of the roof membrane manufacturer.
- b. When the manufacturer or his approved applicator fail to perform the repairs within 72 hours of notification, emergency temporary repairs performed by others does not void the warranty.

1.11.2 Roofing System Installer Warranty

The roof system installer shall warrant for a minimum period of two years that the roof system, as installed, is free from defects in installation workmanship, to include the roof membrane, flashing, insulation, accessories, attachments, and sheet metal installation integral to a complete watertight roof system assembly. Write the warranty directly to the Government. The roof system installer is responsible for correction of defective workmanship and replacement of damaged or affected materials. The roof system installer is responsible for all costs associated with the repair or replacement work.

1.11.3 Continuance of Warranty

Approve repair or replacement work that becomes necessary within the warranty period and accomplished in a manner so as to restore the integrity of the roof system assembly and validity of the roof membrane manufacturer warranty for the remainder of the manufacturer warranty period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 PVC Roof Membrane

Provide a **minimum polymer thickness 0.060 inch** reinforced PVC as specified herein. Provide PVC system capable of obtaining 20 year warranties and as listed in the applicable wind uplift and fire rating classification listings.

Submit Data as required by Section **07 22 00** ROOF AND DECK INSULATION together with requirements of this section. Data shall include written acceptance by the roof membrane manufacturer of the insulation and other products and accessories to be provided by and warranted under the full system guarantee of the roof membrane manufacturer.

- a. Coordinate with other specification sections related to the roof work. Furnish a combination of specified materials that comprise a roof system acceptable to the roof membrane manufacturer and meeting specified requirements. Provide materials free of defects and suitable for the service and climatic conditions of the installation. All warranted roof system components shall be sourced from the PVC roof membrane manufacturer, including but not limited to all insulation, coverboards, accessories, adhesives and edge metal.
- b. For each roof, furnish a typewritten **information card** for facility records and a card laminated in plastic and framed for interior display at roof access point, or a photoengraved **0.032 inch** thick aluminum card for exterior display. Card shall be **8 1/2 by 11 inches** minimum. Information card shall identify facility name and number; location; contract number; approximate roof area; detailed roof system description, including deck type, membrane, number of plies, method of application, manufacturer, insulation and cover board system and thickness; presence of tapered insulation for primary drainage, presence of vapor retarder; date of completion; installing Contractor identification and contact information; membrane manufacturer warranty expiration, warranty reference number, and contact information. Install card at roof top or access location as directed by the Contracting Officer and provide a paper copy to the Contracting Officer.

2.1.2 **Bonding Adhesive**

Provide PVC membrane manufacturer's low volatile organic compound (VOC) membrane adhesive, as supplied by roof membrane manufacturer, and recommended by the manufacturer's printed data for bonding of PVC membrane materials to acceptable insulation, wood, metal, concrete or other acceptable substrate materials. Bonding adhesive shall not be used to bond membrane materials to each other.

2.1.3 **Water Cutoff Mastic/Water Block**

As supplied by the roof membrane manufacturer and recommended by the manufacturer's printed data.

2.1.4 **Membrane Flashing**

Membrane flashing, including self-adhering membrane flashing, perimeter flashing, flashing around roof penetrations and prefabricated pipe seals, shall be **minimum polymer thickness 0.060 inch** reinforced PVC for 20 year

warranties, and shall be utilized as recommended and supplied by the roof membrane manufacturer or minimum 0.060 inch thick reinforced PVC roof membrane and flashing's for 20 year warranties. Submit certification from PVC membrane manufacturer that the proposed PVC membrane roofing product meets the minimum polymer thickness specified.

2.1.5 Membrane Fasteners and Plates

Coated, corrosion-resistant fasteners as recommended and supplied by the PVC roof membrane manufacturer and meeting the requirements of FM 4470 and FM RoofNav (www.roofnav.com) or FM APP GUIDE for Class I roof deck construction and the wind uplift resistance specified. Fasteners and Plates to be supplied and warranted for the substrate type(s) by PVC membrane manufacturer and recommended by PVC membrane manufacturer's printed data.

2.1.5.1 Stress Plates, Bar or Rail for Fasteners

Corrosion-resistant stress plates as recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer's printed instructions and meeting the requirements of FM 4470 must be utilized and must be supplied by PVC roof membrane manufacturer. Stress plates shall be formed to prevent dishing or cupping. Manufacturer-supplied anchoring bar or rails may be utilized for high wind conditions.

2.1.5.2 Auxiliary Fasteners

Corrosion resistance screws, nails, or anchors must be suitable for intended attachment purpose and be recommended and supplied for use by the PVC roof membrane manufacturer.

2.1.6 Pre-manufactured Accessories

Pre-manufactured accessories shall be manufacturer's standard for intended purpose, must comply with applicable specification section, be compatible with the membrane roof system and approved for use and supplied by the PVC roof membrane manufacturer. Curbs shall provide minimum height of 10 inches above the finished roof membrane surface.

2.1.7 PVC Walk Tread

Scrim reinforced 0.096 inch thickness PVC membrane with a textured surface, compatible with and supplied by manufacturer of the PVC roof membrane.

2.1.8 Roof Insulation

Insulation system and facer material shall be compatible with membrane application specified and be approved and supplied by the PVC membrane roof manufacturer and as specified in Section 07 22 00 ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.

2.1.9 Wood Products

As specified in Section 06 10 00 ROUGH CARPENTRY, except that fire retardant treated materials shall not be in contact with PVC membrane or PVC accessory products, unless approved by the membrane manufacturer and the Contracting Officer.

2.2 Reinforced, PVC Membrane

Reinforced polyvinyl chloride (PVC) membrane shall contain fibers or scrim, and shall comply with [ASTM D4434/D4434M](#), Type II, Grade I or [ASTM D6754/D6754M](#), and in all cases shall provide 0.060 inch minimum thickness for adhered application. Notwithstanding the ASTM standards referenced, reinforced PVC roof membranes provided under this section shall have the minimum, labeled thickness specified. PVC membrane thickness specified herein is exclusive of backing material on the bottom of fleece-backed membrane. Principal polymer used in manufacture of the membrane sheet shall be PVC. Width and length of PVC membrane roofing sheet shall be consistent with membrane attachment methods and wind uplift requirements, and shall be as large as practical. In order to minimize joints and 3-way overlaps, prefabricated sheets are not accepted. Maximum reinforced PVC membrane roofing sheet dimensions to be the maximum width obtainable from PVC membrane roof manufacturer in order to minimize seams in the field of the roof.

2.3 COOL ROOFS

Roof surface must meet current [Energy Star](#) qualifications for Cool Roof products. The minimum tested Solar Reflectance values is limited to the following: Low Slope: Initial Value >0.80; Three Years after Installation Value >0.70

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONCRETE SURFACE DRYNESS

Prior to installing any roof system on a concrete deck, including application of insulation or membrane materials, conduct a test for surface dryness in accordance with [ASTM D4263](#). The deck is acceptable for roof system application when there is no visible moisture on underside of plastic sheet after 24 hours.

3.2 EXAMINATION

Ensure that the following conditions exist prior to application of the roofing materials:

- a. Surfaces are rigid, clean, dry, smooth, and free from cracks, holes, and sharp changes in elevation.
- b. Substrate is sloped to provide positive drainage.
- c. Walls and vertical surfaces are constructed to receive counterflashing, and will permit mechanical fastening of the base flashing materials.
- d. Treated wood nailers are in place on non-nailable surfaces, to permit nailing of base flashing at minimum height of 8 inches above finished roofing surface.
- e. Pressure-preservative treated wood nailers are fastened in place for securing of membrane, edging strips, attachment flanges of sheet metal, and roof fixtures. Embedded nailers are flush with deck surfaces. Surface-applied nailers are the same thickness as the roof insulation.
- f. PVC materials are not in contact with fire retardant treated wood,

except as approved by the PVC membrane roof manufacturer and Contracting Officer.

- g. Venting shall be provided if required by, and in accordance with the cellular lightweight concrete manufacturer's requirements and recommendations.
- h. Insulation boards are installed smoothly and evenly, and are not broken, cracked, or curled. There are no gaps in insulation board joints exceeding 1/4 inch in width. Insulation is attached as specified in Section 07 22 00 ROOF AND DECK INSULATION. Insulation is being roofed over on the same day the insulation is installed.

3.3 APPLICATION METHOD

Apply entire PVC membrane roofing utilizing adhered application methods. Apply roofing materials as specified herein unless approved otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Submit instructions including pattern and frequency of mechanical attachments required in the field for roof, corners, and perimeters to provide for the specified wind resistance

3.3.1 Special Precautions

- a. Do not dilute coatings or sealants unless specifically recommended by the material manufacturer's printed application instructions. Do not thin liquid materials or cleaners used for cleaning PVC sheet.
- b. Keep liquids in airtight containers, and keep containers closed except when removing materials.
- c. Use liquid components, including adhesives, within their shelf life period. Store adhesives at 60 to 80 degrees F prior to use. Avoid excessive adhesive application and adhesive spills, as they can be destructive to some thermoplastic sheets and insulations; follow adhesive manufacturer's printed application instructions. Mix and use liquid components in accordance with label directions and manufacturer's printed instructions.
- d. Provide clean, dry cloths or pads for applying membrane cleaners and cleaning of membrane.
- e. Do not use heat guns or open flame to expedite drying of adhesives or primers.
- f. Require workmen and others who walk on the membrane to wear clean, soft-soled shoes to avoid damage to roofing materials.
- g. Do not use equipment with sharp edges which could puncture the PVC membrane roofing sheet.
- h. Shut down air intakes and any related mechanical systems and seal open vents and air intakes when applying solvent-based materials in the area of the opening or intake. Coordinate shutdowns with the Contracting Officer.

3.3.2 PVC Roofing Membrane

Provide a watertight roof membrane sheet free of contaminants and defects

that might affect serviceability. Provide a uniform, straight, and flat edge. Only felt-backed membrane shall be placed directly on concrete deck or other hard surface which may otherwise damage the membrane, absent the felt backing. Non-felt-backed PVC membrane roofing sheet shall not be placed directly on concrete deck or other hard surface which may damage the membrane. Membrane shall be overlapped a minimum of 3 inches at sides for adhered applications and 5.5-7 inches for mechanically fastened applications and minimum 4 inches at ends. Direction of laps shall allow water to flow over and not against the lap. Membrane joints shall be free of wrinkles and fishmouths. The entire length of hot-air-welded seams shall be probe-tested and corrected during the day of installation. Defective areas shall be re-welded. Wrinkles, fishmouths, or damaged areas shall be cut out and the area covered with membrane using a continuous hot-air-welded seam on all sides. Repairs shall be probe-tested for continuity. Hot-air-welded seams are to be accomplished in accordance with the PVC membrane roofing manufacturer's published requirements.

3.3.2.1 Nailing

Membrane shall be fastened to nailers in accordance with the membrane manufacturer's approved instructions. Unless otherwise specified, nails shall be staggered on 4 inch centers maximum; screws for sheet metal shall be staggered on 8 inch centers maximum; and a row of fasteners shall be at least 1/2 inch from edges of sheet metal.

3.3.2.2 Flashing

Roof edges, projections through the roof and changes in roof planes shall be flashed. The seam shall be sealed a minimum of 3 inches beyond the fasteners which attach the membrane to nailers. The installed flashing's shall be secured at the top of the flashing a maximum of 12 inches on centers under the counterflashing or cap. Where possible, prefabricated components shall be used for pipe seals and flashing accessories.

3.3.2.3 Expansion Joints

Expansion joints shall be covered using fabricated covers or elastomeric flashing in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer.

3.3.2.4 Cutoffs

If work is terminated prior to weatherproofing the entire roof, the membrane shall be sealed to the roof deck. Flutes in metal decking shall be sealed off along the cutoff edge. Membrane shall be pulled free or cut to expose the insulation when resuming work and cut insulation sheets used for fill-in shall be removed. Asphalt or coal-tar products shall not be used for sealing.

3.3.2.5 Walkways

Walkways shall be installed on a loose-laid pad of the membrane material extending at least 1 inch beyond the walkway material, and as specified by the manufacturer.

3.3.3 Adhered Membrane Application

Layout membrane and side lap adjoining sheets in accordance with membrane manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Allow for sufficient membrane to form proper membrane terminations. Remove dusting agents and

dirt from membrane and substrate areas where bonding adhesives are to be applied. Apply specified adhesive evenly and continuously to substrate and underside of sheets at rates recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer's printed application instructions. When adhesive is spray applied, roll with a paint roller to ensure proper contact and coverage. Do not apply bonding adhesive to surfaces of membrane in seam or lap areas. Allow adhesive to flash off or dry to consistency prescribed by manufacturer before adhering sheets to the substrate. When adhesive is peel & stick release paper-activated, follow manufacturer's printed instructions. Roll each sheet into adhesive slowly and evenly to avoid wrinkles; broom or roll the membrane to remove air pockets and fishmouths and to ensure adequately uniform bonding of sheet to substrate. Form field hot-air-welded laps or seams as specified and ensure that hot-air welded dimension is at width required by the membrane manufacturer's installation instructions. Check all seams and continuous hot-air-weld of all seams and lap seals.

3.3.4 Perimeter Attachment

Adhesive bond or mechanically secure roof membrane sheet at roof perimeter in a manner to comply with wind resistance requirements and in accordance with membrane manufacturer's printed application instructions. When adhesively bonding a mechanically fastened system in perimeter areas, the perimeter boundary of the adhesive bond shall be the same as the boundary required for additional perimeter mechanical fastening to meet wind resistance requirements.

3.3.5 Securement at Base Tie-In Conditions

Mechanically fasten the roof membrane at penetrations, at base of curbs and walls, and at all locations where the membrane turns and angles greater than 4 degrees (1:12). Space fasteners a maximum of 12 inches on center, except where more frequent attachment is required to meet specified wind resistance or where recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer. Cover over fasteners with a layer of flashing material. Hot-air-weld all seams of flashing material as recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer's printed data.

3.3.6 Pre-fabricated Curbs

Securely anchor prefabricated curbs to nailer or other base substrate and flashed with PVC membrane flashing materials.

3.3.6.1 Set-On Accessories

Where pipe or conduit blocking, supports and similar roof accessories, or isolated paver block, are set on the membrane, adhere reinforced membrane or walkpad material, as recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer, to bottom of accessories prior to setting on roofing membrane. Specific method of installing set-on accessories must permit normal movement due to expansion, contraction, vibration, and similar occurrences without damaging roofing membrane. Do not mechanically secure set-on accessories through roofing membrane into roof deck substrate.

3.3.7 Roof Walkways

Install walkways at roof access points and where otherwise indicated for traffic areas and for access to mechanical equipment, in accordance with the PVC membrane roof manufacturer's printed instructions. Provide minimum

6 inch separation between adjacent walkways to accommodate drainage.

3.4 FLASHINGS

Provide flashings in the angles formed at walls and other vertical surfaces and where required to make the work watertight, except where metal flashings are indicated.

3.4.1 General

Provide a one-ply flashing membrane, as specified for the system used, and install immediately after the roofing membrane is placed and prior to finish coating where a finish coating is required. Flashings must be stepped where vertical surfaces abut sloped roof surfaces. Provide sheet metal reglet in which sheet metal cap flashings are installed of not more than 16 inch nor less than 8 inch above the roofing surfaces. Exposed joints and end laps of flashing membrane must be made and sealed in the manner required for roofing membrane.

3.4.2 Membrane Flashing

3.4.2.1 Installation

Install flashing and flashing accessories as the roof membrane is installed. Apply flashing to cleaned surfaces and as recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer and as specified. Utilize cured PVC membrane flashing and prefabricated accessory flashings to the maximum extent recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer. Limit uncured flashing material to reinforcing inside and outside corners and angle changes in plane of membrane, and to flashing scuppers, pourable sealer pockets, and other formed penetrations or unusually shaped conditions as recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer where the use of cured material is impractical. Extend base flashing not less than 8 inch above roofing surface and as necessary to provide for seaming overlap on roof membrane as recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer.

3.4.2.2 Sealing

Seal flashing membrane for a minimum of 3 inch on each side of fastening device used to anchor roof membrane to nailers. Completely adhere flashing sheets in place. Seam flashing membrane in the same manner as roof membrane, except as otherwise recommended by the membrane manufacturer's printed instructions and approved by the Contracting Officer. Reinforce all corners and angle transitions by applying uncured membrane to the area in accordance with roof membrane manufacturer recommendations. Mechanically fasten top edge of base flashing with manufacturer recommended termination bar fastened at maximum 12 inch on center. Install sheet metal flashing over the termination bar in the completed work. Mechanically fasten top edge of base flashing for all other terminations in a manner recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer. Apply membrane liner over top of exposed nailers and blocking and to overlap top edge of base flashing installation at curbs, parapet walls, expansion joints and as otherwise indicated to serve as waterproof lining under sheet metal flashing components.

3.4.3 Flashing at Roof Drain

Provide a tapered insulation sump into the drain bowl area. Do not exceed tapered slope of 18 degrees for unreinforced membrane and 5 degrees for

reinforced membrane. Provide tapered insulation with surface suitable for adhering membrane in the drain sump area. Avoid field seams running through or within 24 inch of roof drain, or as otherwise recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer. Adhere the membrane to the tapered in the drain sump area. Apply water block mastic and extend membrane sheets over edge of drain bowl opening at the roof drain deck flange in accordance with membrane manufacturer's printed application instructions. Insure membrane free of wrinkles and folds in the drain area. Securely clamp membrane in the flashing clamping ring. Ensure membrane is cut to within 3/4 inch of inside rim of clamping ring to maintain drainage capacity. Do not cut back to bolt holes. Retrofit roof drains shall conform to ANSI/SPRI RD-1.

3.5 ROOF WALKPADS

Install walkpads at roof access points and where otherwise indicated for traffic areas and for access to mechanical equipment, in accordance with the roof membrane manufacturer's printed instructions. Provide minimum 6 inch separation between adjacent walkpads to accommodate drainage.

3.6 CORRECTION OF DEFICIENCIES

Where any form of deficiency is found, additional measures must be taken as deemed necessary by the Contracting Officer to determine the extent of the deficiency and provide corrective action recommendations. Perform corrective action as directed by the Contracting Officer.

3.7 PROTECTION OF APPLIED ROOFING

At the end of the day's work and when precipitation is imminent, protect applied membrane roofing system from water intrusion.

3.7.1 Water Cutoffs

Straighten insulation line using loose-laid cut insulation sheets and seal the terminated edge of the roof membrane system in an effective manner. Remove the water cut-offs to expose the insulation when resuming work, and remove the insulation sheets used for fill-in.

3.7.2 Temporary Flashing for Permanent Roofing

Provide temporary flashing at drains, curbs, walls and other penetrations and terminations of roofing sheets until permanent flashings can be applied. Remove temporary flashing before applying permanent flashing.

3.7.3 Temporary Walkways, Runways, and Platforms

Do not permit storing, walking, wheeling, and trucking directly on applied roofing system. Provide temporary walkways, runways, and platforms of smooth clean boards, mats or planks as necessary to avoid damage to applied roofing materials, and to distribute weight to conform to live load limits of roof construction. Use rubber-tired equipment for roofing work.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.8.1 Construction Monitoring

During progress of the roof work, make visual inspections as necessary to ensure compliance with specified parameters. Additionally, verify the following:

- a. Equipment is in working order. Metering devices are accurate.
- b. Materials are not installed in adverse weather conditions.
- c. Substrates are in acceptable condition, in compliance with specification, prior to application of subsequent materials.
 - (1) Nailers and blocking are provided where and as needed.
 - (2) Insulation substrate is smooth, properly secured to its substrate, and without excessive gaps prior to membrane application.
 - (3) The proper number, type, and spacing of fasteners are installed.
 - (4) Materials comply with the specified requirements.
 - (5) All materials are properly stored, handled and protected from moisture or other damages. Liquid components are properly mixed prior to application.
 - (6) Adhesives are applied uniformly to both mating surfaces and checked for proper set prior to bonding mating materials. Mechanical attachments are spaced as required, including additional fastening of membrane in corner and perimeter areas as required.
 - (7) Membrane is properly overlapped.
 - (8) Membrane seaming is as specified by PVC membrane manufacturer. All seams are checked at the end of each work day.
 - (9) Applied membrane is inspected and repaired as necessary prior to paver installation.
 - (10) Membrane is adhered without ridges, wrinkles, kinks, fishmouths.
 - (11) Installer adheres to specified and detailed application parameters.
 - (12) Associated flashing's and sheet metal are installed in a timely manner in accord with the specified requirements.
 - (13) Paver ballast is within the specified weight range.
 - (14) Temporary protection measures are in place at the end of each work shift.

3.8.2 Manufacturer's Inspection

Manufacturer's technical representative shall visit the site a minimum of 3 times during the installation for purposes of reviewing materials installation practices and adequacy of work in place. Inspections shall occur during the first 20 squares of membrane installation, at mid-point of the installation, and at substantial completion, at a minimum. Additional inspections need not exceed one for each 100 squares of total roof area with the exception that follow-up inspections of previously noted deficiencies or application errors shall be performed as requested by the Contracting Officer. After each inspection, a report, signed by the

manufacturer's technical representative shall be submitted by the roofing Contractor to the Contracting Officer within 3 working days. The report shall note overall quality of work, deficiencies and any other concerns, and recommended corrective action.

3.9 CLEAN UP

Remove debris, scraps, containers and other rubbish and trash resulting from installation of the roofing system from job site each day.

3.10 INSTRUCTIONS TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

Furnish written and verbal instructions on proper maintenance procedures to designated Government personnel. Furnish instructions by a competent representative of the roof membrane manufacturer and include a minimum of 4 hours on maintenance and emergency repair of the membrane. Include a demonstration of membrane repair, and give sources of required special tools. Furnish information on safety requirements during maintenance and emergency repair operations. Include copies of Safety Data Sheets for maintenance/repair materials.

3.11 ROOF DRAIN TEST

After completing roofing but prior to Government acceptance, perform the following test for watertightness. Plug roof drains and fill with water to edge of drain sump for 8 hours. Do not plug secondary overflow drains at the same time as adjacent primary drain. To ensure some drainage from roof, do not test all drains at same time. Measure water at beginning and end of the test period. When precipitation occurs during test period, repeat test. When water level falls, remove water, thoroughly dry, and inspect installation; repair or replace roofing at drain to provide for a properly installed watertight flashing seal. Repeat test until there is no water leakage.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 60 00

FLASHING AND SHEET METAL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A480/A480M (2017) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

ASTM B221 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

ASTM B32 (2008; R 2014) Standard Specification for Solder Metal

ASTM C1549 (2016) Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer

ASTM D1784 (2011) Standard Specification for Rigid Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds

ASTM E1918 (2016) Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar Reflectance of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Surfaces in the Field

ASTM E1980 (2011) Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces

ASTM E408 (2013) Standard Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-Meter Techniques

ASTM E971 (2011) Standard Practice for Calculation of Photometric Transmittance and Reflectance of Materials to Solar Radiation

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1793

(2012) Architectural Sheet Metal Manual,
7th Edition

SINGLE PLY ROOFING INDUSTRY (SPRI)

ANSI/SPRI RD-1

(2014) Performance Standard for Retrofit
Drains

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Finished sheet metal assemblies must form a weathertight enclosure without waves, warps, buckles, fastening stresses or distortion, while allowing for expansion and contraction without damage to the system. The sheet metal installer is responsible for cutting, fitting, drilling, and other operations in connection with sheet metal modifications required to accommodate the work of other trades. Coordinate installation of sheet metal items used in conjunction with roofing with roofing work to permit continuous, uninterrupted roofing operations.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Exposed Sheet Metal Coverings; G

Gutters; G

Downspouts; G

Expansion Joints; G

Gravel Stops and Fasciae; G

Splash Pans; G

Flashing for Roof Drains; G

Base Flashing; G

Counterflashing; G

Flashing at Roof Penetrations and Equipment Supports; G

Reglets; G

Scuppers; G

Drip Edges; G

Conductor Heads; G

SD-03 Product Data

Cool Roof Data; G

SD-04 Samples

Finish Samples; G

SD-07 Certificates

Certificates of Compliance; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Instructions for Installation; G

Quality Control Plan; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Cleaning and Maintenance; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Recycled Content; S

1.4 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

1.4.1 Product Data

Indicate thicknesses, dimensions, fastenings, anchoring methods, expansion joints, and other provisions necessary for thermal expansion and contraction. Scaled manufacturer's catalog data may be submitted for factory fabricated items.

1.4.2 Finish Samples

Submit two color charts and two finish sample chips from manufacturer's standard color and finish options for each type of finish indicated.

1.4.3 Operation and Maintenance Data

Submit detailed [instructions for installation](#) and quality control during installation, [cleaning and maintenance](#), for each type of assembly indicated.

1.5 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE

Package and protect materials during shipment. Uncrate and inspect materials for damage, dampness, and wet-storage stains upon delivery to the job site. Remove from the site and replace damaged materials that cannot be restored to like-new condition. Handle sheet metal items to avoid damage to surfaces, edges, and ends. Store materials in dry, weather-tight, ventilated areas until installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 RECYCLED CONTENT

Provide products with recycled content and provide [certificates of compliance](#) in accordance with Section [01 33 29](#) SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

2.2 MATERIALS

Do not use lead, lead-coated metal, or galvanized steel. Use any metal listed by [SMACNA 1793](#) for a particular item, unless otherwise indicated. Provide materials, thicknesses, and configurations in accordance with [SMACNA 1793](#) for each material. Different items need not be of the same metal, except that contact between dissimilar metals must be avoided.

Furnish sheet metal items in [8 to 10 foot](#) lengths. Single pieces less than [8 feet](#) long may be used to connect to factory-fabricated inside and outside corners, and at ends of runs. Factory fabricate corner pieces with minimum [12 inch](#) legs. Provide accessories and other items essential to complete the sheet metal installation. Provide accessories made of the same or compatible materials as the items to which they are applied. Fabricate sheet metal items of the materials specified below and to the gage, thickness, or weight shown in Table I at the end of this section. Provide sheet metal items with mill finish unless specified otherwise. Where more than one material is listed for a particular item in Table I, each is acceptable and may be used, except as follows:

2.2.1 [Exposed Sheet Metal](#) Items

Must be of the same material. Consider the following as exposed sheet metal: gutters, including hangers; downspouts; [gravel stops and fasciae](#); cap, valley, steeped, base, and eave flashings and related accessories.

2.2.2 Drainage

Do not use copper for an exposed item if drainage from that item will pass over exposed masonry, stonework or other metal surfaces. In addition to the metals listed in Table I, lead-coated copper may be used for such items.

2.2.3 Stainless Steel

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A480/A480M](#), Type 302 or 304, 2D Finish, fully annealed, dead-soft temper.

2.2.4 Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate

2.2.4.1 Alclad

When fabricated of aluminum, fabricate the following items with Alclad 3003, Alclad 3004, or Alclad 3005, clad on both sides unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Gutters, downspouts, and hangers
- b. Gravel stops and fasciae
- c. Flashing

2.2.5 Finishes

Provide exposed exterior sheet metal and aluminum with a baked on, factory applied color coating of polyvinylidene fluoride (PVF2) or approved equal fluorocarbon coating. Dry film thickness of coatings must be 0.8 to 1.3 mils. Color to be selected from manufacturer's standard range of color choices. Field applications of color coatings are prohibited and will be rejected.

2.2.6 Cool Roof Finishes

2.2.6.1 ASHRAE 189.1 (2011) Compliance

Provide roof finishes having a minimum initial Solar Reflectance Index of 78 for low slope roofs with a 2:12 pitch or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E1918 and ASTM E1980.

2.2.6.2 ASHRAE 90.1 (2010) Compliance

Provide roof finishes having a minimum 3-year aged solar reflectance of 0.55 when tested in accordance with ASTM C1549 or ASTM E1918, and a minimum 3-year aged thermal emittance of 0.75 when tested in accordance with ASTM E971 or ASTM E408, or, a minimum 3-year aged Solar Reflectance Index of 64 when determined in accordance with the Solar Reflectance Index method in ASTM E1980 using a convection coefficient of 2.1 BTU per h ft², to comply with ASHRAE 90.1 - IP.

2.2.7 Aluminum Alloy, Extruded Bars, Rods, Shapes, and Tubes

ASTM B221.

2.2.8 Solder

Provide in accordance with ASTM B32, 95-5 tin-antimony.

2.2.9 Reglets

2.2.9.1 Polyvinyl Chloride Reglets

Provide in accordance with ASTM D1784, Type II, Grade 1, Class 14333-D, 0.075 inch minimum thickness.

2.2.9.2 Metal Reglets

Provide factory fabricated caulked type or friction type reglets with a minimum opening of 1/4 inch and a depth of 1-1/4 inch, as approved.

2.2.9.2.1 Caulked Reglets

Provide with rounded edges, temporary reinforcing cores, and accessories as required for securing to adjacent construction. Provide built-up mitered corner pieces for inside and outside corners.

2.2.9.2.2 Friction Reglets

Provide with flashing receiving slots not less than 5/8 inch deep, one inch jointing tongues, and upper and lower anchoring flanges installed at 24 inch maximum snap-lock type receiver.

2.2.10 Scuppers

Line interiors of scupper openings with sheet metal. Provide a drip edge at bottom edges with returns of not less than **one inch** against the face of the outside wall at the top and sides. Provide the perimeter of the lining approximately **1/2 inch** less than the perimeter of the scupper.

2.2.11 Conductor Heads

Provide conductor heads and screens in the same material as downspouts. Provide outlet tubes not less than **4 inches** long.

2.2.12 Splash Pans

Provide splash pans where downspouts discharge onto roof surfaces and at locations indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, provide pans not less than **24 inches long by 18 inches wide** with metal ribs across bottoms of pans. Provide sides of pans with vertical baffles not less than **one inch** high in the front, and **4 inches** high in the back.

2.2.13 Fasteners

Use the same metal as, or a metal compatible with the item fastened. Confirm compatibility of fasteners and items to be fastened to avoid galvanic corrosion due to dissimilar materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Metal Roofing

3.1.2 Workmanship

Make lines and angles sharp and true. Free exposed surfaces from visible wave, warp, buckle, and tool marks. Fold back exposed edges neatly to form a **1/2 inch** hem on the concealed side. Make sheet metal exposed to the weather watertight with provisions for expansion and contraction.

Make surfaces to receive sheet metal plumb and true, clean, even, smooth, dry, and free of defects and projections. For installation of items not shown in detail or not covered by specifications conform to the applicable requirements of **SMACNA 1793**, Architectural Sheet Metal Manual. Provide sheet metal flashing in the angles formed where roof decks abut walls, curbs, ventilators, pipes, or other vertical surfaces and wherever indicated and necessary to make the work watertight. Join sheet metal items together as shown in Table II.

3.1.3 Nailing

Confine nailing of sheet metal generally to sheet metal having a maximum width of **18 inches**. Confine nailing of flashing to one edge only. Space nails evenly not over **3 inch** on center and approximately **1/2 inch** from edge unless otherwise specified or indicated. Face nailing will not be permitted. Where sheet metal is applied to other than wood surfaces, include in shop drawings, the locations for sleepers and nailing strips required to secure the work.

3.1.4 Cleats

Provide cleats for sheet metal. Secure one end of the cleat with two nails and the cleat folded back over the nailheads. Lock the other end into the seam. Where the fastening is to be made to concrete or masonry, use screws and drive in expansion shields set in concrete or masonry.

3.1.5 Bolts, Rivets, and Screws

Install bolts, rivets, and screws where indicated or required. Provide compatible washers where required to protect surface of sheet metal and to provide a watertight connection. Provide mechanically formed joints in aluminum sheets 0.040 inches or less in thickness.

3.1.6 Seams

Straight and uniform in width and height with no solder showing on the face.

3.1.6.1 Flat Seams

Make seams in the direction of the flow.

3.1.7 Welding and Mechanical Fastening

Use welding for aluminum of thickness greater than 0.040 inch. Aluminum 0.040 inch or less in thickness must be butted and the space backed with formed flashing plate; or lock joined, mechanically fastened, and filled with sealant as recommended by the aluminum manufacturer.

3.1.7.1 Mechanical Fastening of Aluminum

Use No. 12, aluminum alloy, sheet metal screws or other suitable aluminum alloy or stainless steel fasteners. Drive fasteners in holes made with a No. 26 drill in securing side laps, end laps, and flashings. Space fasteners 12 inches maximum on center. Where end lap fasteners are required to improve closure, locate the end lap fasteners not more than 2 inches from the end of the overlapping sheet.

3.1.8 Protection from Contact with Dissimilar Materials

3.1.8.1 Copper or Copper-bearing Alloys

Paint with heavy-bodied bituminous paint surfaces in contact with dissimilar metal, or separate the surfaces by means of moistureproof building felts.

3.1.8.2 Aluminum

Do not allow aluminum surfaces in direct contact with other metals except stainless steel, zinc, or zinc coating. Where aluminum contacts another metal, paint the dissimilar metal with a primer followed by two coats of aluminum paint. Where drainage from a dissimilar metal passes over aluminum, paint the dissimilar metal with a non-lead pigmented paint.

3.1.8.3 Metal Surfaces

Paint surfaces in contact with mortar, concrete, or other masonry materials with alkali-resistant coatings such as heavy-bodied bituminous paint.

3.1.8.4 Wood or Other Absorptive Materials

Paint surfaces that may become repeatedly wet and in contact with metal with two coats of aluminum paint or a coat of heavy-bodied bituminous paint.

3.1.9 Expansion and Contraction

Provide expansion and contraction joints at not more than 32 foot intervals for aluminum and at not more than 40 foot intervals for other metals. Provide an additional joint where the distance between the last expansion joint and the end of the continuous run is more than half the required interval. Space joints evenly. Join extruded aluminum gravel stops and fasciae by expansion and contraction joints spaced not more than 12 feet apart.

3.1.10 Counterflashing

Except where indicated or specified otherwise, insert counterflashing in reglets located from 9 to 10 inches above roof decks, extend down vertical surfaces over upturned vertical leg of base flashings not less than 3 inches. Fold the exposed edges of counterflashings 1/2 inch. Provide end laps in counterflashings not less than 3 inches and make it weathertight. Do not make lengths of metal counterflashings exceed 10 feet. Form flashings to the required shapes before installation. Factory form corners not less than 12 inches from the angle. Secure the flashings in the reglets with lead wedges and space not more than 18 inches apart. Fill caulked-type reglets or raked joints which receive counterflashing with caulking compound. Turn up the concealed edge of counterflashings built into masonry or concrete walls not less than 1/4 inch and extend not less than 2 inches into the walls. Install counterflashing to provide a spring action against base flashing. Factory form counter flashing to provide spring action against the base flashing.

3.1.11 Metal Reglets

Keep temporary cores in place during installation. Ensure factory fabricated caulked type or friction type, reglets have a minimum opening of 1/4 inch and a minimum depth of 1-1/4 inch, when installed.

3.1.11.1 Caulked Reglets

Wedge flashing in reglets with lead wedges every 18 inches, caulked full and solid with an approved compound.

3.1.11.2 Friction Reglets

Install flashing snap lock receivers at 24 inches on center maximum. When flashing has been inserted the full depth of the slot, caulk the slot, lock with wedges, and fill with sealant.

3.1.12 Polyvinyl Chloride Reglets for Temporary Construction

Rigid polyvinyl chloride reglets may be provided in lieu of metal reglets for temporary construction.

3.1.13 Gravel Stops and Fasciae

Prefabricate in the shapes and sizes indicated and in lengths not less than 8 feet. Extend flange at least 4 inches onto roofing. Provide

prefabricated, mitered corners internal and external corners. Install gravel stops and fasciae after all plies of the roofing membrane have been applied, set flange on roofing membrane and strip-in. Nail flange securely to wood nailer with large-head, barbed-shank roofing nails 1.5 inch long spaced not more than 3 inches on center, in two staggered rows.

3.1.13.1 Edge Strip

Hook the lower edge of fasciae at least 3/4 inch over a continuous strip of the same material bent outward at an angle not more than 45 degrees to form a drip. Nail hook strip to a wood nailer at 6 inches maximum on center. Where fastening is made to concrete or masonry, use screws spaced 12 inches on center driven in expansion shields set in the concrete or masonry. Where horizontal wood nailers are slotted to provide for insulation venting, install strips to prevent obstruction of vent slots. Where necessary, install strips over 1/16 inch thick compatible spacer or washers.

3.1.13.2 Joints

Leave open the section ends of gravel stops and fasciae 1/4 inch and backed with a formed flashing plate, mechanically fastened in place and lapping each section end a minimum of 4 inches set laps in plastic cement. Face nailing will not be permitted. Install prefabricated aluminum gravel stops and fasciae in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and details.

3.1.14 Gutters

The hung type of shape indicated and supported on underside by brackets that permit free thermal movement of the gutter. Provide gutters in sizes indicated complete with mitered corners, end caps, outlets, brackets, and other accessories necessary for installation. Bead with hemmed edge or reinforce the outer edge of gutter with a stiffening bar not less than 3/4 by 3/16 inch of material compatible with gutter. Fabricate gutters in sections not less than 8 feet. Lap the sections a minimum of one inch in the direction of flow or provide with concealed splice plate 6 inches minimum. Join the gutters, other than aluminum, by riveted and soldered joints. Join aluminum gutters with riveted sealed joints. Provide expansion-type slip joints midway between outlets. Install gutters below slope line of the roof so that snow and ice can slide clear. Support gutters on adjustable hangers as indicated. Adjust gutters to slope uniformly to outlets, with high points occurring midway between outlets. Fabricate hangers and fastenings from compatible metals.

3.1.15 Downspouts

Space supports for downspouts according to the manufacturer's recommendation for the substrate. Types, shapes and sizes are indicated. Provide complete including elbows and offsets. Provide downspouts in approximately 10 foot lengths. Provide end joints to telescope not less than 1/2 inch and lock longitudinal joints. Provide gutter outlets with wire ball strainers for each outlet. Provide strainers to fit tightly into outlets and be of the same material used for gutters. Keep downspouts not less than one inch away from walls. Fasten to the walls at top, bottom, and at an intermediate point not to exceed 5 feet on center with leader straps or concealed rack-and-pin type fasteners. Form straps and fasteners of metal compatible with the downspouts.

3.1.15.1 Terminations

Neatly fit into the drainage connection the downspouts terminating in drainage lines and fill the joints with a portland cement mortar cap sloped away from the downspout. Provide downspouts terminating in splash blocks with elbow-type fittings. Provide splash pans as specified.

3.1.16 Flashing for Roof Drains

Retrofit roof drains must conform to ANSI/SPRI RD-1.

3.1.17 Conductor Heads

Set the depth of the top opening equal to two-thirds of the width or the conductor head. Flat-lock solder seams. Where conductor heads are used in conjunction with scuppers, set the conductor a minimum of 2 inches wider than the scupper. Attach conductor heads to the wall with masonry fasteners. Securely fasten screens to heads.

3.1.18 Splash Pans

Install splash pans lapped with horizontal roof flanges not less than 4 inches wide to form a continuous surface. Bend the rear flange of the pan to contour of can't strip and extend up 6 inches under the side wall covering or to height of base flashing under counterflashing. Bed the pans and roof flanges in plastic bituminous cement and strip-flash as specified.

3.1.19 Expansion Joints

Provide expansion joints as specified. Aluminum gravel stops and fasciae which must have expansion joints at not more than 12 foot spacing. Provide evenly spaced joints. Provide an additional joint where the distance between the last expansion joint and the end of the continuous run is more than half the required interval spacing. Conform to the requirements of Table I.

3.1.19.1 Roof Expansion Joints

Consist of curb with wood nailing members on each side of joint, base flashing, and metal joint cover. Base flashing is specified in Roofing Section. Provide counterflashing as specified in paragraph COUNTERFLASHING. Provide roof joint with a joint cover of the width indicated.

3.1.20 Flashing at Roof Penetrations and Equipment Supports

Provide metal flashing for all pipes, ducts, and conduits projecting through the roof surface and for equipment supports, guy wire anchors, and similar items supported by or attached to the roof deck..

3.2 CLEANING

Clean exposed sheet metal work at completion of installation. Remove grease and oil films, handling marks, contamination from steel wool, fittings and drilling debris, and scrub-clean. Free the exposed metal surfaces of dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, and solder or weld marks.

3.3 REPAIRS TO FINISH

Scratches, abrasions, and minor surface defects of finish may be repaired

in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and as approved. Repair damaged surfaces caused by scratches, blemishes, and variations of color and surface texture. Replace items which cannot be repaired.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Establish and maintain a [Quality Control Plan](#) for sheet metal used in conjunction with roofing to assure compliance of the installed sheet metalwork with the contract requirements. Remove work that is not in compliance with the contract and replace or correct. Include quality control, but not be limited to, the following:

- a. Observation of environmental conditions; number and skill level of sheet metal workers; condition of substrate.
- b. Verification that specified material is provided and installed.
- c. Inspection of sheet metalwork, for proper size(s) and thickness(es), fastening and joining, and proper installation.

3.4.1 Procedure

Submit for approval prior to start of roofing work. Include a checklist of points to be observed. Document the actual quality control observations and inspections. Furnish a copy of the documentation to the Contracting Officer at the end of each day.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 72 00

ROOF HATCHES

06/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used. G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Maintenance Requirements; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty.; G

1.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.2.1 Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.

1.2.2 Store products under cover and elevated above grade.

1.3 WARRANTY.

1.3.1 Provide five year manufacturer warranty for roof hatch.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

2.1.1 Design Requirements

Roof Hatches and Smoke Vents: Factory-assembled aluminum frame and cover, complete with operating and release hardware.

a. Style: Provide flat metal covers unless otherwise indicated.

b. Mounting: Provide frames and curbs suitable for mounting conditions as indicated on drawings.

c. For Ladder Access: Single leaf; 30 by 36 inches.

2.2 ASSEMBLY OR FABRICATION

2.2.1 Roof Hatches: Factory-assembled aluminum frame and cover, complete with operating and release hardware.

- a. Style: Provide flat metal covers unless otherwise indicated.
- b. Mounting: Provide frames and curbs suitable for mounting conditions as indicated on drawings.
- c. For Ladder Access: Single leaf; 30 by 36 inches.

2.2.2 Frames and Curbs: One-piece curb and frame with integral cap flashing to receive roof flashings; extended bottom flange to suit mounting.
Frames and Curbs: One-piece curb and frame with integral cap flashing to receive roof flashings; extended bottom flange to suit mounting.

- a. Material: Mill finished aluminum, 11 gage, 0.0907 inch thick.
- b. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard; 1 inch rigid glass fiber, located on outside face of curb.
- c. Curb Height: 12 inches from surface of roof deck, minimum.

2.2.3 Metal Covers: Flush, insulated, hollow metal construction.

- a. Capable of supporting 40 psf live load.
- b. Material: Mill finished aluminum; outer cover 11 gage, 0.0907 inch thick, liner 0.04 inch thick.
- c. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard 1 inch rigid glass fiber.
- d. Gasket: Neoprene, continuous around cover perimeter.

2.2.4 Hardware: Steel, zinc coated and chromate sealed, unless otherwise indicated or required by manufacturer.

- a. Lifting Mechanisms: Compression or torsion spring operator with shock absorbers that automatically opens upon release of latch; capable of lifting covers despite 10 psf load.
- b. Hinges: Heavy duty pintle type.
- c. Hold open arm with vinyl-coated handle for manual release.
- d. Latch: Upon closing, engage latch automatically and reset manual release.
- e. Manual Release: Pull handle on interior.
- f. Locking: Padlock hasp on interior.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.

If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Professional of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.

Prepare surfaces using methods recommended by manufacturer for achieving acceptable results for applicable substrate under project conditions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, in manner that maintains roofing system weather-tight integrity.

3.4 CLEANING

Clean installed work to like-new condition.

3.5 PROTECTION

Protect installed products until completion of project.

Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 72 73

ROOF EDGE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Section includes non-penetrating roof edge fall protection systems.

1.1.1 Non-penetrating passive railing systems for roof edge fall protection:

RailGuard 200 safety railing system, by Garlock Safety Systems, or approved equal.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Shop drawing of roof plan prepared by the contractor shall be submitted showing location of railings, base plates and outriggers. Location of railings and base plates shall be coordinated to avoid existing roof elements, new mechanical systems, new lightning protection system and new roof access hatch. Shop drawings are to be reviewed by the contracting officers representative.G

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer Data Sheet - minimum of 15 years experience manufacturing portable railing systems.; G

1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
3. Installation methods.

Delivery, Storage, And Handling - Store and maintain products in accordance with the manufacturer's printed recommendations.

SD-07 Certificates

Manufacturer's Certification - Provide manufacturer's certifications that the ultimate strength of the fall protection system is equal to or greater than those specified.; G

Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum of 15 years experience manufacturing portable railing systems.
2. Installer Qualifications: Minimum 2 person crew capable of positioning and installing portable roof fall protection system according to manufacturers instructions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 Manufacturers

Provide RailGuard 200 safety railing system, or approved equal, as manufactured by Garlock Safety Systems, Plymouth, MN, www.garlocksafety.com, Email: sales@garlockequip.com

2.2 Performance Requirements

Structural Performance: Comply with requirements of applicable local, state, and federal codes.

1. OSHA: 29 CFR 1926.502 - Safety and Health Regulations for Construction, Subpart M-Fall Protection.
2. 29 CFR 1910.29 - Occupational Health and Safety Standards for General Industry, Subpart D Fall Protection Systems and Falling Object Protection.
3. ASTM Standard E985 Standard Specification for Permanent Metal Railing Systems and Rails for Buildings (withdrawn 2005) Maximum Allowable Deflection under test conditions specified in section 7.1 and 7.2.

Structural performance of railing and stanchion supports:

1. Capable of withstanding a concentrated load of 200 pounds (90.6 kg), applied to the top rail at any point and in any direction.
2. Capable of withstanding a uniform load of 50 pounds per linear foot (74.3 kg/m) applied to the top rail horizontally with a simultaneous load of 100 pounds per linear foot (148.6 kg/m) applied vertically downward.
3. Design need not provide for both concentrated and uniform loads to be applied concurrently.

Structural performance of railing infill:

1. Capable of withstanding a horizontal concentrated load of 200 pounds (90.6 kg), applied to one foot (30.5mm) square area at any point on the infill.
2. Infill includes intermediate rails and posts and other elements.

2.3 Equipment

RailGuard 200: Customizable, non-penetrating safety guardrail system with weighted base.

Description

- a. Standard rail section 16 gauge welded steel.
- b. Rails: 1.625 inch O.D. 16 gage wall HREW tubing.
- c. Length: 6 feet maximum.
- d. Height: 42 inches.
- e. Mid-rail: 20 inches.
- f. Finish: Epoxy powder coated safety yellow.

Railing Extension

- a. Rails: Match standard rails. Fully welded outrigger from rail.
- b. Skew: Where shown on plan. Skew angle to be verified in field.
- c. Finish: Epoxy powder coated safety yellow.

Gate System; 1-5/8 inch O.D. by 0.120 inch wall HREW tubing.

- a. Height: 42 inches.
- b. Mid-rail: 20 inches.
- c. Finish: Epoxy powder coated safety yellow.
- d. Support wheel: positive locking mechanism with ability to swing right or left.

Base Plates

- a. Material: Cast iron class 20B.
- b. Material: Cast iron class 20B.
- c. Carrying handles: built in with a center carrying hook for base transporter.
- d. Toeboard receptacles: two, built in.
- e. Capacity: two railing sections and be able to accommodate adapter to support three or four intersecting rails on the same base.
- f. Holes: Holes for permanent mounting and round holes for pins securing base to rail.
- g. Bottom of base must have a concave recess no less than 125 sq. inches (806 sq.cm) to reduce rocking on uneven surfaces.
- h. Base plate must provide no less than 5 inches (127 mm) of leading edge substrate contact as concentrated load is applied to base.
- i. Finish: Hot-dipped galvanized.
- j. Four adhesive pads with directional non-skid resistant ridge pattern and minimum 28 sq. inches of substrate contact each shall be adhered to the bottom of base plate to resist slippage on hard surfaces.

Base Transporter

- a. Cart shall be able to carry individual base plates easily.

Centurion Cart

- a. Centurion 4 Wheel cart.
- b. Cart shall be able to carry eight base plates and seven rail sections.
- c. Cart shall have a manual winch to raise and lower base plates.

Goliath Mega Cart

- a. Goliath 4 Wheel cart.
- b. Carries 190-feet of railing sections along with a 5 foot swing gate, base transporter and steel toeboards.
- c. Included with Goliath cart are 3 base plate storage racks. Each rack holds 8 base plates. Integrated fork pockets for transport.

Speed Boards

- a. Material: 4 inches wide, zinc plated steel.
- b. Attachment: Boards shall telescope to fit into toe board brackets on base plate and pinned to the base toe board brackets.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 Examination

Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.

3.2 Preparation

Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.3 Installation

- a. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- b. Before installation, inspect all parts to insure no damaged parts are used.
- c. Railing system shall be installed only after shop drawings have been approved by the contracting officers representative.
- d. Use a Railguard 200 outrigger at any interruption in continuous railing sections. Outrigger assembly consists of a 5 foot railing with base plate pinned to railing and placed 90 degrees away from danger side of continuous railing.

3.4 Protection

- a. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- b. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 92 00

JOINT SEALANTS

08/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1193	(2013) Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants
ASTM C1521	(2013) Standard Practice for Evaluating Adhesion of Installed Weatherproofing Sealant Joints
ASTM C734	(2015) Low-Temperature Flexibility of Latex Sealants After Artificial Weathering
ASTM C834	(2017) Standard Specification for Latex Sealants
ASTM C919	(2012; R 2017) Standard Practice for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM D217	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Cone Penetration of Lubricating Grease
ASTM E84	(2018) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS	SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage
-----	--

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168	(2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications
------------------	--

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Sealants; G

Primers; G

Bond Breakers; G

Backstops; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Field Adhesion; G

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality; G

1.3 PRODUCT DATA

Include storage requirements, shelf life, curing time, instructions for mixing and application, and accessories. Provide manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for each solvent, primer and sealant material proposed.

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

Submit required indoor air quality certifications in one submittal package.

1.4.1.1 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this paragraph. Sealants and non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) must meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Apply sealant when the ambient temperature is between 40 and 90 degrees F.

1.6 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Deliver materials to the jobsite in unopened manufacturers' sealed shipping containers, with brand name, date of manufacture, color, and material designation clearly marked thereon. Label elastomeric sealant containers to identify type, class, grade, and use. Handle and store materials in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Prevent exposure to foreign materials or subjection to sustained temperatures exceeding 90 degrees F or lower than 0 degrees F. Keep materials and containers closed and separated from absorptive materials such as wood and insulation.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Compatibility with Substrate

Verify that each sealant is compatible for use with each joint substrate in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed recommendations for each application.

1.7.2 Joint Tolerance

Provide joint tolerances in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

1.7.3 Adhesion

Provide in accordance with ASTM C1193 or ASTM C1521.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SEALANTS

Provide sealant products that have been tested, found suitable, and documented as such by the manufacturer for the particular substrates to which they will be applied.

2.1.1 Interior Sealants

Provide ASTM C834. Location(s) and color(s) of sealant for the following. Note, color "as selected" refers to manufacturer's full range of color options

LOCATION	COLOR
a. Small voids between walls or partitions and adjacent lockers, casework, shelving, door frames, built-in or surface mounted equipment and fixtures, and similar items.	White
b. Perimeter of frames at doors, windows, and access panels which adjoin exposed interior concrete and masonry surfaces.	White

LOCATION	COLOR
c. Joints of interior masonry walls and partitions which adjoin columns, pilasters, concrete walls, and exterior walls unless otherwise detailed.	White
d. Joints between edge members for acoustical tile and adjoining vertical surfaces.	White
e. Interior locations, not otherwise indicated or specified, where small voids exist between materials specified to be painted.	White

2.1.2 Exterior Sealants

For joints in vertical surfaces, provide **ASTM C920**, Type S or M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT. For joints in horizontal surfaces, provide **ASTM C920**, Type S or M, Grade P, Class 25, Use T. Provide location(s) and color(s) of sealant as follows. Note, color "as selected" refers to manufacturer's full range of color options:

LOCATION	COLOR
a. Joints and recesses formed where frames and subsills of windows, doors, louvers, and vents adjoin masonry, concrete, or metal frames. Use sealant at both exterior and interior surfaces of exterior wall penetrations.	Match adjacent surface color

LOCATION	COLOR

2.1.3 Acoustical Sealants

Rubber or polymer based acoustical sealant in accordance with [ASTM C919](#) to have a flame spread of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Provide non-staining acoustical sealant with a consistency of 250 to 310 when tested in accordance with [ASTM D217](#). Acoustical sealant must remain flexible and adhesive after 500 hours of accelerated weathering as specified in [ASTM C734](#).

2.2 PRIMERS

Non-staining, quick drying type and consistency as recommended by the sealant manufacturer for the particular application. Provide primers for interior applications that meet the indoor air quality requirements of the paragraph SEALANTS above.

2.3 BOND BREAKERS

Type and consistency as recommended by the sealant manufacturer to prevent adhesion of the sealant to the backing or to the bottom of the joint. Provide bond breakers for interior applications that meet the indoor air quality requirements of the paragraph SEALANTS above.

2.4 BACKSTOPS

Provide glass fiber roving, neoprene, butyl, polyurethane, or polyethylene foams free from oil or other staining elements as recommended by sealant manufacturer. Provide 25 to 33 percent oversized backing for closed cell and 40 to 50 percent oversized backing for open cell material, unless otherwise indicated. Provide backstop material that is compatible with sealant. Do not use oakum or other types of absorptive materials as backstops.

2.5 CLEANING SOLVENTS

Provide type(s) recommended by the sealant manufacturer and in accordance with environmental requirements herein. Protect adjacent aluminum and bronze surfaces from solvents. Provide solvents for interior applications that meet the indoor air quality requirements of the paragraph SEALANTS above.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Perform a field adhesion test in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and [ASTM C1193](#), Method A or ASTM C1521, Method A, Tail Procedure. Remove sealants that fail adhesion testing; clean substrates, reapply sealants, and re-test. Test sealants adjacent to failed sealants. Submit [field adhesion](#) test report indicating tests, locations, dates, results, and remedial actions taken.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

Prepare surfaces according to manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Clean surfaces from dirt, frost, moisture, grease, oil, wax, lacquer, paint, or other foreign matter that would destroy or impair adhesion. Remove oil and grease with solvent; thoroughly remove solvents prior to sealant installation. Wipe surfaces dry with clean cloths. When resealing an existing joint, remove existing caulk or sealant prior to applying new sealant. For surface types not listed below, provide in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed instructions for each specific surface.

3.2.1 Steel Surfaces

Remove loose mill scale by sandblasting or, if sandblasting is impractical or would damage finished work, scraping and wire brushing. Remove protective coatings by sandblasting or using a residue free solvent. Remove resulting debris and solvent residue prior to sealant installation.

3.2.2 Aluminum or Bronze Surfaces

Remove temporary protective coatings from surfaces that will be in contact with sealant. When masking tape is used as a protective coating, remove tape and any residual adhesive prior to sealant application. For removing protective coatings and final cleaning, use non-staining solvents recommended by the manufacturer of the item(s) containing aluminum or bronze surfaces.

3.2.3 Concrete and Masonry Surfaces

Where surfaces have been treated with curing compounds, oil, or other such materials, remove materials by sandblasting or wire brushing. Remove laitance, efflorescence and loose mortar from the joint cavity. Remove resulting debris prior to sealant installation.

3.3 SEALANT PREPARATION

Do not add liquids, solvents, or powders to sealants. Mix multicomponent elastomeric sealants in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.4 APPLICATION

3.4.1 Joint Width-To-Depth Ratios

Acceptable Ratios:

<u>JOINT WIDTH</u>	<u>JOINT DEPTH</u>	
	Minimum	Maximum
For metal, glass, or other nonporous surfaces:		
1/4 inch (minimum)	1/4 inch	1/4 inch
over 1/4 inch	1/2 of width	Equal to width
For wood, concrete, masonry, stone, :		
1/4 inch (minimum)	1/4 inch	1/4 inch
over 1/4 inch to 1/2 inch	1/4 inch	Equal to width
over 1/2 inch to 1 inch	1/2 inch	5/8 inch
Over 1 inch	prohibited	

Unacceptable Ratios: Where joints of acceptable width-to-depth ratios have not been provided, clean out joints to acceptable depths and grind or cut to acceptable widths without damage to the adjoining work. Grinding is prohibited at metal surfaces.

3.4.2 Unacceptable Sealant Use

Do not install sealants in lieu of other required building enclosure weatherproofing components such as flashing, drainage components, and joint closure accessories, or to close gaps between walls, floors, roofs, windows, and doors, that exceed acceptable installation tolerances. Remove sealants that have been used in an unacceptable manner and correct building enclosure deficiencies to comply with contract documents requirements.

3.4.3 Masking Tape

Place masking tape on the finished surface on one or both sides of joint cavities to protect adjacent finished surfaces from primer or sealant smears. Remove masking tape within 10 minutes of joint filling and tooling.

3.4.4 Backstops

Provide backstops dry and free of tears or holes. Tightly pack the back or bottom of joint cavities with backstop material to provide joints in specified depths. Provide backstops where indicated and where backstops are not indicated but joint cavities exceed the acceptable maximum depths specified in JOINT WIDTH-TO-DEPTH RATIOS Table.

3.4.5 Primer

Clean out loose particles from joints immediately prior to application of.

Apply primer to joints in concrete masonry units, wood, and other porous surfaces in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed instructions. Do not apply primer to exposed finished surfaces.

3.4.6 Bond Breaker

Provide bond breakers to surfaces not intended to bond in accordance with, sealant manufacturer's printed instructions for each type of surface and sealant combination specified.

3.4.7 Sealants

Provide sealants compatible with the material(s) to which they are applied. Do not use a sealant that has exceeded its shelf life or has jelled and cannot be discharged in a continuous flow from the sealant gun. Apply sealants in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions with a gun having a nozzle that fits the joint width. Work sealant into joints so as to fill the joints solidly without air pockets. Tool sealant after application to ensure adhesion. Apply sealant uniformly smooth and free of wrinkles. Upon completion of sealant application, roughen partially filled or unfilled joints, apply additional sealant, and tool smooth as specified. Apply sealer over sealants in accordance with the sealant manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

3.5.1 Protection

Protect areas adjacent to joints from sealant smears. Masking tape may be used for this purpose if removed 5 to 10 minutes after the joint is filled and no residual tape marks remain.

3.5.2 Final Cleaning

Upon completion of sealant application, remove remaining smears and stains and leave the work in a clean and neat condition.

- a. Masonry and Other Porous Surfaces: Immediately remove fresh sealant that has been smeared on adjacent masonry, rub clean with a solvent, and remove solvent residue, in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed instructions. Allow excess sealant to cure for 24 hour then remove by wire brushing or sanding. Remove resulting debris.
- b. Metal and Other Non-Porous Surfaces: Remove excess sealant with a solvent moistened cloth. Remove solvent residue in accordance with solvent manufacturer's printed instructions.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 11 13

STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

02/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)
Structural Welding Code - Steel

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.115 (2016) Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors
and Steel Frames

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM HMMA 810 (2009) Hollow Metal Doors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 252 (2017) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of
Door Assemblies

NFPA 80 (2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors
and Other Opening Protectives

STEEL DOOR INSTITUTE (SDI/DOOR)

SDI/DOOR 111 (2009) Recommended Selection and Usage
Guide for Standard Steel Doors, Frames and
Accessories

SDI/DOOR A250.11 (2001) Recommended Erection Instructions
for Steel Frames

SDI/DOOR A250.6 (2003; R2009) Recommended Practice for
Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel
Doors and Frames

SDI/DOOR A250.8 (2003; R2008) Recommended Specifications
for Standard Steel Doors and Frames

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 10C (2016) UL Standard for Safety Positive
Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Doors; G

Frames; G

Show elevations, construction details, metal gages, hardware provisions, method of glazing, and installation details.

Schedule of doors; G

Schedule of frames; G

Submit door and frame locations.

SD-03 Product Data

Doors; G

Frames; G

Submit manufacturer's descriptive literature for doors, frames, and accessories. Include data and details on door construction, panel (internal) reinforcement, insulation, and door edge construction. When "custom hollow metal doors" are provided in lieu of "standard steel doors," provide additional details and data sufficient for comparison to SDI/DOOR A250.8 requirements.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver doors, frames, and accessories undamaged and with protective wrappings or packaging. Strap knock-down frames in bundles. Provide temporary steel spreaders securely fastened to the bottom of each welded frame. Store doors and frames on platforms under cover in clean, dry, ventilated, and accessible locations, with 1/4 inch airspace between doors. Remove damp or wet packaging immediately and wipe affected surfaces dry. Replace damaged materials with new.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD STEEL DOORS

SDI/DOOR A250.8, except as specified otherwise. Prepare doors to receive door hardware as specified in Section 08 71 00. Undercut where indicated. Exterior doors shall have top edge closed flush and sealed to prevent water intrusion. Doors shall be 1-3/4 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated.

2.1.1 Classification - Level, Performance, Model

2.1.1.1 Extra Heavy Duty Doors

SDI/DOOR A250.8, Level 3, physical performance Level A, Model 3 with core

construction as required by the manufacturer for interior doors and for indicated exterior doors, of size(s) and design(s) indicated.

2.2 CUSTOM HOLLOW METAL DOORS

Provide custom hollow metal doors where nonstandard steel doors are indicated. At the Contractor's option, custom hollow metal doors may be provided in lieu of standard steel doors. Door size(s), design(s), materials, construction, gages, and finish shall be as specified for standard steel doors and shall comply with the requirement of NAAMM HMMA 810. Fill all spaces in doors with insulation. Close top and bottom edges with steel channels not lighter than 16 gage. Prepare doors to receive hardware specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE. Undercut doors where indicated. Doors shall be 1-3/4 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 STANDARD STEEL FRAMES

SDI/DOOR A250.8, Level 3, except as otherwise specified. Form frames to sizes and shapes indicated, with welded corners or knock-down field-assembled corners. Provide steel frames for doors, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3.1 Welded Frames

Continuously weld frame faces at corner joints. Mechanically interlock or continuously weld stops and rabbets. Grind welds smooth.

Weld frames in accordance with the recommended practice of the Structural Welding Code Sections 1 through 6, AWS D1.1/D1.1M and in accordance with the practice specified by the producer of the metal being welded.

2.3.2 Knock-Down Frames

Design corners for simple field assembly by concealed tenons, splice plates, or interlocking joints that produce square, rigid corners and a tight fit and maintain the alignment of adjoining members. Provide locknuts for bolted connections.

2.3.3 Anchors

Provide anchors to secure the frame to adjoining construction. Provide steel anchors, zinc-coated or painted with rust-inhibitive paint, not lighter than 18 gage.

2.3.3.1 Wall Anchors

Provide at least three anchors for each jamb. For frames which are more than 7.5 feet in height, provide one additional anchor for each jamb for each additional 2.5 feet or fraction thereof.

- ab. Completed openings: Secure frames to previously placed concrete or masonry with expansion bolts in accordance with SDI/DOOR 111; and

2.3.3.2 Floor Anchors

Provide floor anchors drilled for 3/8 inch anchor bolts at bottom of each jamb member.

2.4 FIRE DOORS AND FRAMES

NFPA 80 and this specification. The requirements of NFPA 80 shall take precedence over details indicated or specified.

2.4.1 Labels

Fire doors and frames shall bear the label of Underwriters Laboratories (UL), Factory Mutual Engineering and Research (FM), or Warnock Hersey International (WHI) attesting to the rating required. Testing shall be in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C. Labels shall be metal with raised letters, and shall bear the name or file number of the door and frame manufacturer. Labels shall be permanently affixed at the factory to frames and to the hinge edge of the door. Door labels shall not be painted.

2.5 HARDWARE PREPARATION

Provide minimum hardware reinforcing gages as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.6. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive finish hardware. Prepare doors and frames for hardware in accordance with the applicable requirements of SDI/DOOR A250.8 and SDI/DOOR A250.6. For additional requirements refer to ANSI/BHMA A156.115. Drill and tap for surface-applied hardware at the project site. Build additional reinforcing for surface-applied hardware into the door at the factory. Locate hardware in accordance with the requirements of SDI/DOOR A250.8, as applicable. Punch door frames to receive a minimum of two rubber or vinyl door silencers on lock side of single doors and one silencer for each leaf at heads of double doors. Set lock strikes out to provide clearance for silencers.

2.6 FINISHES

2.6.1 Factory-Primed Finish

All surfaces of doors and frames shall be thoroughly cleaned, chemically treated and factory primed with a rust inhibiting coating as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.8.

2.7 FABRICATION AND WORKMANSHIP

Finished doors and frames shall be strong and rigid, neat in appearance, and free from defects, waves, scratches, cuts, dents, ridges, holes, warp, and buckle. Molded members shall be clean cut, straight, and true, with joints coped or mitered, well formed, and in true alignment. Dress exposed welded and soldered joints smooth. Design door frame sections for use with the wall construction indicated. Corner joints shall be well formed and in true alignment. Conceal fastenings where practicable. On wraparound frames for masonry partitions, provide a throat opening 1/8 inch larger than the actual masonry thickness. Design other frames in exposed masonry walls or partitions to allow sufficient space between the inside back of trim and masonry to receive caulking compound.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Frames

Set frames in accordance with SDI/DOOR A250.11. Plumb, align, and brace securely until permanent anchors are set. Anchor bottoms of frames with

expansion bolts or powder-actuated fasteners. Build in or secure wall anchors to adjoining construction.

3.1.2 Doors

Hang doors in accordance with clearances specified in [SDI/DOOR A250.8](#). After erection and glazing, clean and adjust hardware.

3.1.3 Fire Doors and Frames

Install fire doors and frames, including hardware, in accordance with [NFPA 80](#).

3.2 PROTECTION

Protect doors and frames from damage. Repair damaged doors and frames prior to completion and acceptance of the project or replace with new, as directed. Wire brush rusted frames until rust is removed. Clean thoroughly. Apply an all-over coat of rust-inhibitive paint of the same type used for shop coat.

3.3 CLEANING

Upon completion, clean exposed surfaces of doors and frames thoroughly. Remove mastic smears and other unsightly marks.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 71 00

DOOR HARDWARE
02/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E283 (2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.1 (2016) Butts and Hinges
ANSI/BHMA A156.13 (2017) Mortise Locks & Latches Series 1000
ANSI/BHMA A156.16 (2013) Auxiliary Hardware
ANSI/BHMA A156.18 (2016) Materials and Finishes
ANSI/BHMA A156.21 (2014) Thresholds
ANSI/BHMA A156.22 (2017) Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems
ANSI/BHMA A156.26 (2012) Continuous Hinges
ANSI/BHMA A156.3 (2014) Exit Devices
ANSI/BHMA A156.4 (2013) Door Controls - Closers
ANSI/BHMA A156.5 (2014) Cylinder and Input Devices for Locks
ANSI/BHMA A156.6 (2015) Architectural Door Trim
ANSI/BHMA A156.7 (2016) Template Hinge Dimensions

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 101 (2018; TIA 18-1) Life Safety Code
NFPA 252 (2017) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
NFPA 72 (2016) National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
NFPA 80 (2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors

and Other Opening Protectives

STEEL DOOR INSTITUTE (SDI/DOOR)

SDI/DOOR A250.8

(2003; R2008) Recommended Specifications
for Standard Steel Doors and Frames

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191

Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and
Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act
(ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL Bld Mat Dir

(updated continuously online) Building
Materials Directory

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Manufacturer's Detail Drawings; G

Verification of Existing Conditions; G

Hardware Schedule; G

Keying System; G

SD-03 Product Data

Hardware Items; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Hardware Schedule Items, Data Package 1; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Key Bitting

1.3 SHOP DRAWINGS

Submit manufacturer's detail drawings indicating all hardware assembly components and interface with adjacent construction. Base shop drawings on verified field measurements and include verification of existing conditions.

1.4 PRODUCT DATA

Indicate fire-ratings at applicable components. Provide documentation of ABA/ADA accessibility compliance of applicable components, as required by 36 CFR 1191 Appendix D - Technical.

1.5 HARDWARE SCHEDULE

Prepare and submit hardware schedule in the following form:

Hardware Item	Quantity	Size	Reference Publication Type No.	Finish	Mfr Name and Catalog No.	Key Control Symbols	UL Mark (If fire-rated and listed)	BHMA Finish Designation

In addition, submit hardware schedule data package 1 in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.6 KEY BITTING CHART REQUIREMENTS

1.6.1 Requirements

Submit key bitting charts to the Contracting Officer prior to completion of the work. Include:

- a. Complete listing of all keys (e.g. AA1 and AA2).
- b. Complete listing of all key cuts (AA1-123456, AA2-123458).
- c. Tabulation showing which key fits which door.
- d. Copy of floor plan showing doors and door numbers.
- e. Listing of 20 percent more key cuts than are presently required in each master system.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Hardware Manufacturers and Modifications

Provide, as far as feasible, locks, hinges, and closers of one lock, hinge, or closer manufacturer's make. Modify hardware as necessary to provide features indicated or specified.

1.7.2 Key Shop Drawings Coordination Meeting

Prior to the submission of the key shop drawing, the Contracting Officer, Contractor, Door Hardware Subcontractor, using Activity and Base Locksmith must meet to discuss and coordinate key requirements for the facility.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver hardware in original individual containers, complete with necessary appurtenances including fasteners and instructions. Mark each individual

container with item number as shown on hardware schedule.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPLATE HARDWARE

Hardware applied to metal or to prefinished doors must be manufactured using a template. Provide templates to door and frame manufacturers in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.7](#) for template hinges. Coordinate hardware items to prevent interference with other hardware.

2.2 HARDWARE FOR FIRE DOORS AND EXIT DOORS

Provide all hardware necessary to meet the requirements of [NFPA 72](#) for door alarms, [NFPA 80](#) for fire doors, [NFPA 101](#) for exit doors, [NFPA 252](#) for fire tests of door assemblies, ABA/ADA accessibility requirements, and all other requirements indicated, even if such hardware is not specifically mentioned in paragraph HARDWARE SCHEDULE. Provide Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. labels for such hardware in accordance with [UL Bld Mat Dir](#) or equivalent labels in accordance with another testing laboratory approved in writing by the Contracting Officer.

2.3 HARDWARE ITEMS

Clearly and permanently mark with the manufacturer's name or trademark, hinges, pivots, locks, latches, exit devices, bolts and closers where the identifying mark is visible after the item is installed. For closers with covers, the name or trademark may be beneath the cover. Coordinate electrified door hardware components with corresponding components specified in Division 28 ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS (ESS).

2.3.1 Hinges

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.1](#). Provide hinges that are 4-1/2 by 4-1/2 inch unless otherwise indicated. Construct loose pin hinges for interior doors and reverse-bevel exterior doors so that pins are non-removable when door is closed. Other anti-friction bearing hinges may be provided in lieu of ball bearing hinges.

2.3.2 Continuous Hinges

Where continuous hinges are required, provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.26](#).

2.3.3 Locks and Latches

2.3.3.1 Mortise Locks and Latches

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.13](#), Series 1000, Operational Grade 1, Security Grade 2. Provide [lever handles](#) with screwless shanks and no exposed screws.

2.3.4 Exit Devices

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.3](#), Grade 1. Provide adjustable strikes for rim type and vertical rod devices. Provide open back strikes for pairs of doors with mortise and vertical rod devices. Provide touch bars in lieu of conventional crossbars and arms.

2.3.5 Cylinders and Cores

Provide cylinders for new locks, including locks provided under other sections of this specification. Provide fully compatible cylinders of Grade 1 products from products of one manufacturer with interchangeable cores that are removable by a special control key. Factory set the cores with seven pin tumblers using the A4 system and F keyway. Submit a core code sheet with the cores. Provide master keyed cores in one system for this project. Provide construction interchangeable cores. **Permanent cylinders to be provided by owner to match existing key system.**

2.3.6 Push Button Mechanisms

Provide in accordance with **ANSI/BHMA A156.5**, Grade 1.

2.3.7 Keying System

Provide an extension of the existing keying system. Existing locks were manufactured by **Yale** and have interchangeable cores. Provide construction interchangeable cores.

2.3.8 Lock Trim

Provide cast, forged, or heavy wrought construction and commercial plain design for lock trim.

2.3.8.1 Lever Handles

Provide lever handles. Provide in accordance with **ANSI/BHMA A156.3** for mortise locks of lever handles for exit devices. Provide lever handle locks with a breakaway feature (such as a weakened spindle or a shear key) to prevent irreparable damage to the lock when force in excess of that specified in **ANSI/BHMA A156.13** is applied to the lever handle. Provide lever handles return to within **1/2 inch** of the door face.

2.3.8.2 Texture

Provide knurled or abrasive coated knobs or lever handles for doors which are accessible to blind persons and which lead to dangerous areas.

2.3.9 Keys

Provide one file key, one duplicate key, and one working key for each key change. Provide one additional working key for each lock of each keyed-alike group. Provide **ten** construction master keys, and **five** control keys for removable cores. Stamp each key with appropriate key control symbol and "U.S. property - do not duplicate." Do not place room number on keys.

2.3.10 Door Bolts

Provide in accordance with **ANSI/BHMA A156.16**. Provide dustproof strikes for bottom bolts, except at doors having metal thresholds. Provide automatic latching flush bolts in accordance with **ANSI/BHMA A156.3**, Type 25.

2.3.11 Closers

Provide in accordance with **ANSI/BHMA A156.4**, Series C02000, Grade 1, with PT 4C. Provide with brackets, arms, mounting devices, fasteners, full size

covers, except at storefront mounting, and other features necessary for the particular application. Size closers in accordance with manufacturer's printed recommendations, or provide multi-size closers, Sizes 1 through 6, and list sizes in the Hardware Schedule. Provide manufacturer's 10 year warranty.

2.3.11.1 Identification Marking

Engrave each closer with manufacturer's name or trademark, date of manufacture, and manufacturer's size designation in locations that will be visible after installation.

2.3.12 Door Protection Plates

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.6](#).

2.3.12.1 Sizes of Kick Plates

[2 inch](#) less than door width for single doors; [1 inch](#) less than door width for pairs of doors. Provide [10 inch](#) kick plates for flush doors .

2.3.13 Door Stops and Silencers

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.16](#). Silencers Type L03011. Provide three silencers for each single door, two for each pair.

2.3.14 Thresholds

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.21](#). Use J35100, with vinyl or silicone rubber insert in face of stop, for exterior doors opening out, unless specified otherwise.

2.3.15 Weatherstripping Gasketing

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.22](#). Provide the type and function designation where specified in paragraph HARDWARE SCHEDULE. Provide a set to include head and jamb seals, sweep strips, and, for pairs of doors, astragals. Air leakage of weatherstripped doors not to exceed [1.25 cubic feet](#) per minute of air per square [foot](#) of door area when tested in accordance with [ASTM E283](#). Provide weatherstripping with one of the following:

2.3.15.1 Extruded Aluminum Retainers

Extruded aluminum retainers not less than [0.050 inch](#) wall thickness with vinyl, neoprene, silicone rubber, or polyurethane inserts. Provide clear (natural) anodized aluminum.

2.3.15.2 Interlocking Type

Zinc or bronze not less than [0.018 inch](#) thick.

2.3.15.3 Spring Tension Type

Spring bronze or stainless steel not less than [0.008 inch](#) thick.

2.3.16 Auxiliary Hardware (Other than locks)

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.16](#), Grade 1.

2.3.17 Special Tools

Provide special tools, such as spanner and socket wrenches and dogging keys, as required to service and adjust hardware items.

2.4 FASTENERS

Provide fasteners of type, quality, size, and quantity appropriate to the specific application. Fastener finish to match hardware. Provide stainless steel or nonferrous metal fasteners in locations exposed to weather. Verify metals in contact with one another are compatible and will avoid galvanic corrosion when exposed to weather.

2.5 FINISHES

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.18](#). Provide hardware in BHMA 630 finish (satin stainless steel), unless specified otherwise. Provide items not manufactured in stainless steel in BHMA 626 finish (satin chromium plated) over brass or bronze, except aluminum paint finish for surface door closers, and except BHMA 652 finish (satin chromium plated) for steel hinges. Provide hinges for exterior doors in stainless steel with BHMA 630 finish or chromium plated brass or bronze with BHMA 626 finish. Furnish exit devices in BHMA 626 finish in lieu of BHMA 630 finish except where BHMA 630 is specified under paragraph HARDWARE SETS. Match exposed parts of concealed closers to lock and door trim. Match hardware finish for aluminum doors to the doors.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Provide hardware in accordance with manufacturers' printed installation instructions. Fasten hardware to wood surfaces with full-threaded wood screws or sheet metal screws. Provide machine screws set in expansion shields for fastening hardware to solid concrete and masonry surfaces. Provide toggle bolts where required for fastening to hollow core construction. Provide through bolts where necessary for satisfactory installation.

3.1.1 Weatherstripping Installation

Provide full contact, weathertight seals that allow operation of doors without binding the weatherstripping.

3.1.1.1 Stop Applied Weatherstripping

Fasten in place with color matched sheet metal screws not more than [9 inch](#) on center after doors and frames have been finish painted.

3.1.1.2 Interlocking Type Weatherstripping

Provide interlocking, self adjusting type on heads and jambs and flexible hook type at sills. Nail weatherstripping to door [1 inch](#) on center and to heads and jambs at [4 inch](#) on center.

3.1.1.3 Spring Tension Type Weatherstripping

Provide spring tension type on heads and jambs. Provide bronze nails with

bronze. Provide stainless steel nails with stainless steel. Space nails not more than 1-1/2 inch on center.

3.1.2 Threshold Installation

Extend thresholds the full width of the opening and notch end for jamb stops. Set thresholds in a full bed of sealant and anchor to floor with cadmium-plated, countersunk, steel screws in expansion sleeves.

3.2 FIRE DOORS AND EXIT DOORS

Provide hardware in accordance with NFPA 72 for door alarms, NFPA 80 for fire doors, NFPA 101 for exit doors, and NFPA 252 for fire tests of door assemblies..

3.3 HARDWARE LOCATIONS

Provide in accordance with SDI/DOOR A250.8, unless indicated or specified otherwise.

- a. Kick and Armor Plates: Push side of single-acting doors. Both sides of double-acting doors.
- b. Mop Plates: Bottom flush with bottom of door.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

After installation, protect hardware from paint, stains, blemishes, and other damage until acceptance of work. Submit notice of testing 15 days before scheduled, so that testing can be witnessed by the Contracting Officer. Adjust hinges, locks, latches, bolts, holders, closers, and other items to operate properly. Demonstrate that permanent keys operate respective locks, and give keys to the Contracting Officer. Correct, repair, and finish, errors in cutting and fitting and damage to adjoining work.

3.5 HARDWARE SETS

Provide hardware for aluminum doors under this section. Deliver Hardware templates and hardware, except field applied hardware, to the aluminum door and frame manufacturer for use in fabricating doors and frames.

Hardware Sets

Set: 1.0

Doors: 205.1

2	Continuous Hinge (A31031G)	CFM (height) HD1		PE
2	Flush Bolt (L04251 / L04261)	555 / 557	630	RO
1	Dust Proof Strike (L04021)	570	630	RO
1	Storeroom Lock (F07)	AUR 8805FL Temp Core	626	YA
1	Interchangeable Core (E09241)	Core as required.	26	
2	Surface Closer (C02011 / C02021)	R 8501 M / PR 8501 M	626	NO
2	Kick Plate (J102)	K1050 10" CSK	630	RO
2	Wall Stop (L02101)	401	630	RO
1	Threshold	114A MSES10SS		PE
1	Head Gasketing (R0Y164)	2893AV		PE
2	Jamb Gasketing (R0Y164)	2903AV		PE
1	Adhesive Gasketing (R0Y154)	S88BL (head & jambs)		PE
2	Sweep	345C		PE
1	Astragal	3494CS 84"		PE

Set: 2.0

Doors: 103.3

2	Continuous Hinge (A31031G)	CFM (height) HD1		PE
1	Exit Device (Type 8, 01)	7160 LBR EO	630	YA
1	Exit Device (Type 8, 08/09)	7160 LBR AU626F	630	YA
1	Interchangeable Core (E09241)	Core as required.	26	
2	Surface Closer (C02021-Spg Stop)	CPS8501	689	NO
2	Kick Plate (J102)	K1050 10" CSK	630	RO
1	Threshold (outswing door)	273x224AFGT		PE
1	Adhesive Gasketing (R0Y154)	S88BL (head & jambs)		PE
1	Astragal	S771BL LAR		PE

Set: 3.0

Doors: 103.1

3	Hinge (A8112)	TA2714	630	MK
1	Exit Device (Type 1, 08/09)	7100F AU626F	630	YA
1	Interchangeable Core (E09241)	Core as required.	26	
1	Cylinder	TYPE AS REQUIRED	626	
1	Surface Closer (C02011 / C02021)	R 8501 M / PR 8501 M	626	NO
1	Kick Plate (J102)	K1050 10" CSK 652 RO		
1	Wall Stop (L02101)	401	630	RO
3	Silencer (L03011)		608	RO

Notes:

Set: 4.0

Doors: 103.2

3	Hinge (A8112)	TA2714	652	MK
1	Exit Device (Type 1, 08/09)	7100F AU626F	630	YA
1	Interchangeable Core (E09241)	Core as required.	26	
1	Surface Closer (C02011 / C02021)	R 8501 M / PR 8501 M	626	NO

1	Kick Plate (J102)	K1050 10" CSK	630	RO
1	Floor Stop (L02121)	470	630	RO
1	Adhesive Gasketing (R0Y154)	S88BL (head & jambs)		PE

Set: 5.0
 Doors: 101.1, 105.1

1	Adhesive Gasketing (R0Y154)	S88BL (head & jambs)		PE
---	-----------------------------	----------------------	--	----

Notes: REUSE REMAINDER OF EXISTING HARDWARE. DOOR AND FRAME IS EXISTING. VERIFY LOCKSET/ EXIT TYPE. VERIFY HINGES AND EXISTING HARDWARE IS IN GOOD CONDITION AND INSTALLED CORRECTLY.

Set: 6.0
 Doors: ST01.1, ST02.1

1	Threshold (outswing door)	273x224AFGT		PE
1	Adhesive Gasketing (R0Y154)	S88BL (head & jambs)		PE
1	Sweep (R3A434)	293100CNB		PE
1	Rain Guard (R0Y976)	346C		PE

Notes: REUSE REMAINDER OF EXISTING HARDWARE. DOOR AND FRAME IS EXISTING. VERIFY LOCKSET/ EXIT TYPE. VERIFY HINGES AND EXISTING HARDWARE IS IN GOOD CONDITION AND INSTALLED CORRECTLY.

Set: 7.0
 Doors: 104.1, 104.2

1	Existing Door, Frame	and Hardware		OT
---	----------------------	--------------	--	----

Notes: EXISTING HARDWARE. DOOR AND FRAME IS EXISTING. VERIFY EXISTING HARDWARE IS IN GOOD CONDITION AND INSTALLED CORRECTLY.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 22 00

SUPPORTS FOR PLASTER AND GYPSUM BOARD

02/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A463/A463M	(2010; R 2015) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Aluminum-Coated, by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A653/A653M	(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM C645	(2014; E 2015) Nonstructural Steel Framing Members
ASTM C754	(2015) Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Metal support systems; G

Submit for the erection of metal framing,. Indicate materials, sizes, thicknesses, and fastenings.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the job site and store in ventilated dry locations. Storage area shall permit easy access for inspection and handling. If materials are stored outdoors, stack materials off the ground, supported on a level platform, and fully protected from the weather. Handle materials carefully to prevent damage. Remove damaged items and provide new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Provide steel materials for metal support systems with galvanized coating ASTM A653/A653M, G-60; aluminum coating ASTM A463/A463M, T1-25; or a 55-percent aluminum-zinc coating.

2.1.1 Materials for Attachment of Gypsum Wallboard

2.1.1.1 Nonload-Bearing Wall Framing and Furring

ASTM C645, but not thinner than 0.0179 inch thickness, with 0.0329 inch minimum thickness supporting wall hung items such as cabinetwork, equipment and fixtures.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Systems for Attachment of Gypsum Wallboard

3.1.1.1 Non-loadbearing Wall Framing and Furring

ASTM C754, except as indicated otherwise.

3.2 ERECTION TOLERANCES

Provide framing members which will be covered by finish materials such as wallboard, plaster, or ceramic tile set in a mortar setting bed, within the following limits:

- a. Layout of walls and partitions: 1/4 inch from intended position;
- b. Plates and runners: 1/4 inch in 8 feet from a straight line;
- c. Studs: 1/4 inch in 8 feet out of plumb, not cumulative; and
- d. Face of framing members: 1/4 inch in 8 feet from a true plane.

Provide framing members which will be covered by ceramic tile set in dry-set mortar, latex-portland cement mortar, or organic adhesive within the following limits:

- a. Layout of walls and partitions: 1/4 inch from intended position;
- b. Plates and runners: 1/8 inch in 8 feet from a straight line;
- c. Studs: 1/8 inch in 8 feet out of plumb, not cumulative; and
- d. Face of framing members: 1/8 inch in 8 feet from a true plane.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 29 00

GYPSUM BOARD

08/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- ASTM C1002 (2014) Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs
- ASTM C1047 (2014a) Standard Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base
- ASTM C1396/C1396M (2017) Standard Specification for Gypsum Board
- ASTM C475/C475M (2017) Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board
- ASTM C840 (2017) Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board
- ASTM C954 (2015) Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

- CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

GREEN SEAL (GS)

- GS-36 (2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

GYPSUM ASSOCIATION (GA)

- GA 214 (2010) Recommended Levels of Gypsum Board Finish
- GA 216 (2010) Application and Finishing of Gypsum

Panel Products

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

UL Fire Resistance (2014) Fire Resistance Directory

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Accessories

Submit for each type of gypsum board and for cementitious backer units.

Certifications

Gypsum Board

SD-07 Certificates

Asbestos Free Materials; G

Certify that gypsum board types, gypsum backing board types, cementitious backer units, and joint treating materials do not contain asbestos.

Indoor Air Quality; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Safety Data Sheets

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Manufacturer Maintenance Instructions

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Indoor Air Quality for Gypsum Board; S

VOC Content of Joint Compound; S

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

Submit required indoor air quality certifications in one submittal package.

1.3.1.1 Ceiling and Wall Systems

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold](#) or provide validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this paragraph. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. Gypsum wall board and panels must meet the emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type).

1.3.1.2 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold](#) or provide validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this paragraph. Sealants and non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) must meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#). Aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) must meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [GS-36](#). Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.4.1 Delivery

Deliver materials in the original packages, containers, or bundles with each bearing the brand name, applicable standard designation, and name of manufacturer, or supplier.

1.4.2 Storage

Keep materials dry by storing inside a sheltered building. Where necessary to store gypsum board and cementitious backer units outside, store off the ground, properly supported on a level platform, and protected from direct exposure to rain, snow, sunlight, and other extreme weather conditions. Provide adequate ventilation to prevent condensation. Store per manufacturer's recommendations for allowable temperature and humidity range. Do not store panels near materials that may offgas or emit harmful fumes, such as kerosene heaters, fresh paint, or adhesives. Do not use materials that have visible moisture or biological growth.

1.4.3 Handling

Neatly stack gypsum board and cementitious backer units flat to prevent sagging or damage to the edges, ends, and surfaces.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

Furnish type of gypsum board work specialized by the installer with a minimum of 3 years of documented successful experience.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not expose the gypsum board to excessive sunlight prior to gypsum board application. Maintain a continuous uniform temperature of not less than 50 degrees F and not more than 80 degrees F for at least one week prior to the application of gypsum board work, while the gypsum board application is being done, and for at least one week after the gypsum board is set. Shield air supply and distribution devices to prevent any uneven flow of air across the plastered surfaces. Provide ventilation to exhaust moist air to the outside during gypsum board application, set, and until gypsum board jointing is dry. In glazed areas, keep windows open top and bottom or side to side 3 to 4 inches. Reduce openings in cold weather to prevent freezing of joint compound when applied. For enclosed areas lacking natural ventilation, provide temporary mechanical means for ventilation. In unglazed areas subjected to hot, dry winds or temperature differentials from day to night of 20 degrees F or more, screen openings with cheesecloth or similar materials. Avoid rapid drying. During periods of low indoor humidity, provide minimum air circulation following gypsum boarding and until gypsum board jointing complete and is dry.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Conform to specifications, standards and requirements specified. Provide gypsum board types, gypsum backing board types, cementitious backing units, and joint treating materials manufactured from asbestos free materials only.

2.1.1 Gypsum Board

ASTM C1396/C1396M. Provide certification of indoor air quality for gypsum board.

2.1.1.1 Type X (Special Fire-Resistant)

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges.

2.1.2 Joint Treatment Materials

ASTM C475/C475M. Product must be low emitting VOC types with VOC limits not exceeding 50 g/L. Provide data identifying VOC content of joint compound.

2.1.2.1 All-Purpose Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured to serve as both a taping and a finishing compound and compatible with tape, substrate and fasteners.

2.1.2.2 Joint Tape

Use cross-laminated, tapered edge, reinforced paper, or fiber glass mesh tape recommended by the manufacturer.

2.1.3 Fasteners

2.1.3.1 Screws

ASTM C1002, Type "G", Type "S" or Type "W" steel drill screws for fastening gypsum board to gypsum board, wood framing members and steel framing members less than 0.033 inch thick. ASTM C954 steel drill screws for fastening gypsum board to steel framing members 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick. Provide cementitious backer unit screws with a polymer coating.

2.1.4 Adhesives

2.1.4.1 Adhesive for Fastening Gypsum Board to Metal Framing

Not permitted.

2.1.4.2 Adhesive for Laminating

Not permitted.

2.1.5 Shaftwall Liner Panel

ASTM C1396/C1396M. Conform to the UL Fire Resistance for the Design Numbers(s) indicated for shaftwall liner panels. Manufacture liner panel for cavity shaftwall system, with water-resistant paper faces, bevel edges, single lengths to fit required conditions, 1 inch thick, by 24inch wide.

2.1.6 Accessories

ASTM C1047. Fabricate from corrosion protected steel or plastic designed for intended use. Accessories manufactured with paper flanges are not acceptable. Flanges must be free of dirt, grease, and other materials that may adversely affect bond of joint treatment. Provide prefinished or job decorated materials.

2.1.7 Water

Provide clean, fresh, and potable water.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

3.1.1 Framing and Furring

Verify that framing and furring are securely attached and of sizes and spacing to provide a suitable substrate to receive gypsum board and cementitious backer units. Verify that all blocking, headers and supports are in place to support plumbing fixtures and to receive soap dishes, grab bars, towel racks, and similar items. Do not proceed with work until framing and furring are acceptable for application of gypsum board and cementitious backer units.

3.1.2 Gypsum Board and Framing

Verify that surfaces of gypsum board and framing to be bonded with an adhesive are free of dust, dirt, grease, and any other foreign matter. Do not proceed with work until surfaces are acceptable for application of gypsum board with adhesive.

3.1.3 Masonry Walls

Verify that surfaces of masonry walls to receive gypsum board applied with adhesive are dry, free of dust, oil, form release agents, protrusions and voids, and any other foreign matter. Do not proceed with work until surfaces are acceptable for application of gypsum board with adhesive.

3.1.4 Building Construction Materials

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.2 APPLICATION OF GYPSUM BOARD

Apply gypsum board to framing and furring members in accordance with [ASTM C840](#) or [GA 216](#) and the requirements specified. Apply gypsum board with separate panels in moderate contact; do not force in place. Stagger end joints of adjoining panels. Neatly fit abutting end and edge joints. Use gypsum board of maximum practical length; select panel sizes to minimize waste. Cut out gypsum board to make neat, close, and tight joints around openings. In vertical application of gypsum board, provide panels in lengths required to reach full height of vertical surfaces in one continuous piece. Lay out panels to minimize waste; reuse cutoffs whenever feasible. Surfaces of gypsum board and substrate members may be bonded together with an adhesive. Treat edges of cutouts for plumbing pipes, screwheads, and joints with water-resistant compound as recommended by the gypsum board manufacturer. Provide type of gypsum board for use in each system specified herein as indicated.

3.2.1 Adhesive Application to Interior Masonry or Concrete Walls

Apply in accordance with [ASTM C840](#), System VI or [GA 216](#).

3.2.2 Application of Gypsum Board to Steel Framing and Furring

Apply in accordance with [ASTM C840](#), System VIII or [GA 216](#).

3.2.3 Control Joints

Install expansion and contraction joints in ceilings and walls in accordance with [ASTM C840](#), System XIII or [GA 216](#). [Fill control joints between studs in fire-rated construction with firesafing insulation to match the fire-rating of construction.](#)

3.3 FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD

Tape and finish gypsum board in accordance with [ASTM C840](#), [GA 214](#) and [GA 216](#). Finish plenum areas above ceilings to Level 1 in accordance with [GA 214](#). Finish water resistant gypsum backing board, [ASTM C1396/C1396M](#), to receive ceramic tile to Level 2 in accordance with [GA 214](#). Finish walls and ceilings to receive a heavy-grade wall covering or heave textured finish before painting to Level 3 in accordance with [GA 214](#). Finish walls and ceilings without critical lighting to receive flat paints, light textures, or wall coverings to Level 4 in accordance with [GA 214](#). Unless otherwise specified, finish all gypsum board walls, partitions and ceilings to Level 5 in accordance with [GA 214](#). Provide joint, fastener depression, and corner treatment. Tool joints as smoothly as possible to minimize sanding and dust. Do not use self-adhering fiber glass mesh tape with conventional

drying type joint compounds; use setting or hardening type compounds only. Provide treatment for water-resistant gypsum board as recommended by the gypsum board manufacturer. Protect workers, building occupants, and HVAC systems from gypsum dust.

3.3.1 Uniform Surface

Wherever gypsum board is to receive eggshell, semigloss or gloss paint finish, or where severe, up or down lighting conditions occur, finish gypsum wall surface in accordance to GA 214 Level 5. In accordance with GA 214 Level 5, apply a thin skim coat of joint compound to the entire gypsum board surface, after the two-coat joint and fastener treatment is complete and dry.

3.4 SEALING

Seal openings around pipes, fixtures, and other items projecting through gypsum board and cementitious backer units as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS. Apply material with exposed surface flush with gypsum board or cementitious backer units.

3.5 FIRE-RESISTANT ASSEMBLIES

Wherever fire-rated construction is indicated, provide materials and application methods, including types and spacing of fasteners, wall framing in accordance with the specifications contained in UL Fire Resistance for the Design Number(s) indicated. Joints of fire-rated gypsum board enclosures must be closed and sealed in accordance with UL test requirements or GA requirements. Seal penetrations through rated partitions and ceilings tight in accordance with tested systems.

3.6 PATCHING

Patch surface defects in gypsum board to a smooth, uniform appearance, ready to receive finishes.

3.7 SHAFTWALL FRAMING

Install the shaftwall system in accordance with the system manufacturer's published instructions. Coordinate bucks, anchors, blocking and other items placed in or behind shaftwall framing with electrical and mechanical work. Patch or replace fireproofing materials which are damaged or removed during shaftwall construction.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 51 00

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- ASTM A641/A641M (2009a; R 2014) Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
- ASTM C635/C635M (2017) Standard Specification for Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panel Ceilings
- ASTM C636/C636M (2013) Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels
- ASTM C834 (2017) Standard Specification for Latex Sealants
- ASTM E1264 (2014) Acoustical Ceiling Products
- ASTM E1477 (1998a; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Luminous Reflectance Factor of Acoustical Materials by Use of Integrating-Sphere Reflectometers
- ASTM E580/E580M (2017) Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions
- ASTM E795 (2016) Standard Practices for Mounting Test Specimens During Sound Absorption Tests

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

- CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

- SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-310-04

(2013; with Change 1) Seismic Design for Buildings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Approved Detail Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Acoustical Ceiling Systems; G

SD-04 Samples

Acoustical Units; G

Acoustical Ceiling Tiles; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Ceiling Attenuation Class and Test; G

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE. AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the site in the manufacturer's original unopened containers with brand name and type clearly marked. Carefully handle and store materials in dry, watertight enclosures. Immediately before installation, store acoustical units for not less than 24 hours at the same temperature and relative humidity as the space where they will be installed in order to assure proper temperature and moisture acclimation.

1.4 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Maintain a uniform temperature of not less than 60 degrees F nor more than 85 degrees F and a relative humidity of not more than 70 percent for 24 hours before, during, and 24 hours after installation of acoustical units.

1.5 SCHEDULING

Complete and dry interior finish work such as plastering, concrete and terrazzo work before ceiling installation. Complete mechanical, electrical, and other work above the ceiling line; install and start operating heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems in order to maintain temperature and humidity requirements.

1.6 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a one year period. Include an agreement to repair or replace acoustical panels that fail within the warranty period in the standard performance guarantee or warranty. Failures include, but are not limited to, sagging and warping of panels; rusting and manufacturers defects of grid system.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

Furnish spare tiles, from the same lot as those installed, of each color at the rate of 5 tiles for each 1000 tiles installed.

1.8 OTHER SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

Submit the following:

- a. Reports by an independent testing laboratory attesting that acoustical ceiling systems meet specified sound transmission requirements. Data attesting to conformance of the proposed system to Underwriters Laboratories requirements for the fire endurance rating listed in UL Fire Resistance may be submitted in lieu of test reports.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide sound controlling units mechanically mounted on a ceiling suspension system for acoustical treatment. The unit size, texture, finish, and color must be as specified. The Contractor has the option to substitute inch-pound (I-P) Recessed Light Fixtures (RLF) for metric RLF. If the Contractor opts to furnish I-P RLF, other ceiling elements like acoustical ceiling tiles, air diffusers, air registers and grills, must also be I-P products. Coordinate the whole ceiling system with other details, like the location of access panels and ceiling penetrations, etc., shown on the drawings. The Contractor is responsible for all associated labor and materials and for the final assembly and performance of the specified work and products if I-P products are used. The location and extent of acoustical treatment must be as shown on the [approved detail drawings](#). Submit drawings showing suspension system, method of anchoring and fastening, details, and reflected ceiling plan. Coordinate with paragraph RECLAMATION PROCEDURES for reclamation of mineral fiber acoustical ceiling panels to be removed from the job site.

2.1.1 [Ceiling Attenuation Class and Test](#)

2.1.2 Ceiling Sound Absorption

Determine the Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC) in accordance with ASTM C423 Test Method.

2.1.3 Light Reflectance

Determine light reflectance factor in accordance with [ASTM E1477](#) Test Method.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL UNITS

Submit two samples of each type of acoustical unit and each type of suspension grid tee section showing texture, finish, and color. Conform acoustical units to [ASTM E1264](#), Class A, and the following requirements:

2.2.1 Units for Exposed-Grid System

2.2.1.1 Type

III (non-asbestos mineral fiber with painted finish). Provide Type III Acoustical Ceiling Tiles containing a minimum of 30 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for Type III ceiling tiles. Provide certification of indoor air quality for Type III Ceiling Tiles.

2.2.1.2 Flame Spread

Class A, 25 or less

2.2.1.3 Pattern

E

2.2.1.4 Minimum NRC

0.90 in open office areas when tested on mounting Type E-400 of [ASTM E795](#).

2.2.1.5 Minimum Light Reflectance Coefficient

0.90

2.2.1.6 Nominal Size

24 by 24 inch

2.2.1.7 Edge Detail

Square

2.2.1.8 Finish

Factory-applied standard finish.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

Provide exposed-grid standard width flange suspension system conforming to [ASTM C635/C635M](#) for intermediate-duty systems. Provide surfaces exposed to view of aluminum or steel with a factory-applied white baked-enamel finish. Provide wall molding having a flange of not less than $15/16$ inch. Provide inside and outside corner caps. Suspended ceiling framing system must have the capability to support the finished ceiling, light fixtures, air diffusers, and accessories, as shown. Provide a suspension system with a maximum deflection of 1/360 of the span length. Conform seismic details to the guidance in [UFC 3-310-04](#) and [ASTM E580/E580M](#).

Provide Suspension System containing a minimum of 15 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for suspension systems.

2.4 HANGERS

Provide hangers and attachment capable of supporting a minimum 300 pound ultimate vertical load without failure of supporting material or attachment.

2.4.1 Wires

Conform wires to [ASTM A641/A641M](#), Class 1, 0.08 inch (12 gauge) in diameter.

2.5 FINISHES

Use manufacturer's standard textures, patterns and finishes as specified for acoustical units and suspension system members. Treat ceiling suspension system components to inhibit corrosion.

2.6 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

Conform acoustical sealant to [ASTM C834](#), nonstaining. Provide sealants used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#). For products located on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system), provide certification of [indoor air quality for Sealants](#).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

Examine surfaces to receive directly attached acoustical units for unevenness, irregularities, and dampness that would affect quality and execution of the work. Rid areas, where acoustical units will be cemented, of oils, form residue, or other materials that reduce bonding capabilities of the adhesive. Complete and dry interior finish work such as plastering, concrete, and terrazzo work before installation. Complete and approve mechanical, electrical, and other work above the ceiling line prior to the start of acoustical ceiling installation. Provide acoustical work complete with necessary fastenings, clips, and other accessories required for a complete installation. Do not expose mechanical fastenings in the finished work. Lay out hangers for each individual room or space. Provide hangers to support framing around beams, ducts, columns, grilles, and other penetrations through ceilings. Keep main runners and carrying channels clear of abutting walls and partitions. Provide at least two main runners for each ceiling span. Wherever required to bypass an object with the hanger wires, install a subsuspension system so that all hanger wires will be plumb.

3.1.1 Suspension System

Install suspension system in accordance with [ASTM C636/C636M](#) and as specified herein. Do not suspend hanger wires or other loads from underside of steel decking.

3.1.1.1 Plumb Hangers

Install hangers plumb and not pressing against insulation covering ducts and pipes. Where lighting fixtures are supported from the suspended ceiling system, provide hangers at a minimum of four hangers per fixture and located not more than 6 inch from each corner of each fixture.

3.1.1.2 Splayed Hangers

Where hangers must be splayed (sloped or slanted) around obstructions, offset the resulting horizontal force by bracing, countersplaying, or other acceptable means.

3.1.2 Wall Molding

Provide wall molding where ceilings abut vertical surfaces. Miter corners where wall moldings intersect or install corner caps. Secure wall molding not more than 3 inch from ends of each length and not more than 16 inch on centers between end fastenings. Provide wall molding springs at each acoustical unit in semi-exposed or concealed systems.

3.1.3 Acoustical Units

Install acoustical units in accordance with the approved installation instructions of the manufacturer. Ensure that edges of acoustical units are in close contact with metal supports, with each other, and in true alignment. Arrange acoustical units so that units less than one-half width are minimized. Hold units in exposed-grid system in place with manufacturer's standard hold-down clips, if units weigh less than 1 psf or if required for fire resistance rating.

3.1.4 Caulking

Seal all joints around pipes, ducts or electrical outlets penetrating the ceiling. Apply a continuous ribbon of acoustical sealant on vertical web of wall or edge moldings.

3.2 CLEANING

Following installation, clean dirty or discolored surfaces of acoustical units and leave them free from defects. Remove units that are damaged or improperly installed and provide new units as directed.

3.3 RECLAMATION PROCEDURES

Neatly stack ceiling tile, designated for recycling by the Contracting Officer, on 4 by 4 foot pallets not higher than 4 foot. Panels must be completely dry. Shrink wrap and symmetrically stack pallets on top of each other without falling over.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 90 00

PAINTS AND COATINGS

05/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONFERENCE OF GOVERNMENTAL INDUSTRIAL HYGIENISTS (ACGIH)

ACGIH 0100 (2015; Suppl 2002-2016) Documentation of the Threshold Limit Values and Biological Exposure Indices

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D235 (2002; R 2012) Mineral Spirits (Petroleum Spirits) (Hydrocarbon Dry Cleaning Solvent)

ASTM D4214 (2007; R 2015) Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Degree of Chalking of Exterior Paint Films

ASTM D4263 (1983; R 2012) Indicating Moisture in Concrete by the Plastic Sheet Method

ASTM D523 (2014) Standard Test Method for Specular Gloss

ASTM D6386 (2016) Standard Practice for Preparation of Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coated Iron and Steel Product and Hardware Surfaces for Painting

ASTM F1869 (2016) Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI 107 (2012) Primer, Rust-Inhibitive, Water Based

MPI 141 (2012) Latex, Interior, High Performance Architectural, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)

MPI 144 (2012) Latex, Interior, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, (MPI Gloss Level 2)

MPI 145 (2012) Latex, Interior, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, (MPI Gloss Level 3)

MPI 147 (May 2016) Latex, Interior, Institutional

Low Odor/VOC, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)

MPI 39 (2012) Primer, Latex, for Interior Wood

MPI 4 (2012) Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler

MPI 50 (2012) Primer Sealer, Latex, Interior

MPI 79 (2012) Primer, Alkyd, Anti-Corrosive for Metal

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC PA 1 (2016) Shop, Field, and Maintenance Coating of Metals

SSPC PA Guide 3 (1982; E 1995) A Guide to Safety in Paint Application

SSPC SP 1 (2015) Solvent Cleaning

SSPC SP 12/NACE No.5 (2002) Surface Preparation and Cleaning of Metals by Waterjetting Prior to Recoating

SSPC SP 2 (1982; E 2000; E 2004) Hand Tool Cleaning

SSPC SP 3 (1982; E 2004) Power Tool Cleaning

SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3 (2007) Commercial Blast Cleaning

SSPC VIS 3 (2004) Guide and Reference Photographs for Steel Surfaces Prepared by Hand and Power Tool Cleaning

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

EPA Method 24 (2000) Determination of Volatile Matter Content, Water Content, Density, Volume Solids, and Weight Solids of Surface Coatings

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

FED-STD-313 (2014; Rev E) Material Safety Data, Transportation Data and Disposal Data for Hazardous Materials Furnished to Government Activities

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.1000 Air Contaminants

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

The current MPI, "Approved Product List" which lists paint by brand, label, product name and product code as of the date of contract award, will be used to determine compliance with the submittal requirements of this specification. The Contractor may choose to use a subsequent MPI "Approved Product List", however, only one list may be used for the entire contract and each coating system is to be from a single manufacturer. All coats on a particular substrate must be from a single manufacturer. No variation from the MPI Approved Products List is acceptable.

Samples of specified materials may be taken and tested for compliance with specification requirements.

SD-03 Product Data

Coating; G

Manufacturer's Technical Data Sheets

SD-04 Samples

Color; G

Submit manufacturer's samples of paint colors. Cross reference color samples to color scheme as indicated.

SD-07 Certificates

Qualification Testing laboratory for coatings; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Application instructions

Mixing

Detailed mixing instructions, minimum and maximum application temperature and humidity, potlife, and curing and drying times between coats.

Manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets

Submit manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets for coatings, solvents, and other potentially hazardous materials, as defined in FED-STD-313.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Coatings; G

Preprinted cleaning and maintenance instructions for all coating systems shall be provided.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Field Samples and Tests

The Contracting Officer may choose up to two coatings that have been delivered to the site to be tested at no cost to the Government. Take samples of each chosen product as specified in the paragraph "Sampling Procedures." Test each chosen product as specified in the paragraph "Testing Procedure." Products which do not conform, shall be removed from the job site and replaced with new products that conform to the referenced specification. Testing of replacement products that failed initial testing shall be at no cost to the Government.

1.3.1.1 Sampling Procedure

The Contracting Officer will select paint at random from the products that have been delivered to the job site for sample testing. The Contractor shall provide **one quart** samples of the selected paint materials. The samples shall be taken in the presence of the Contracting Officer, and labeled, identifying each sample. Provide labels in accordance with the paragraph "Packaging, Labeling, and Storage" of this specification.

1.3.1.2 Testing Procedure

Provide Batch Quality Conformance Testing for specified products, as defined by and performed by MPI. As an alternative to Batch Quality Conformance Testing, the Contractor may provide **Qualification Testing** for specified products above to the appropriate MPI product specification, using the third-party laboratory approved under the paragraph "Qualification Testing" laboratory for coatings. The qualification testing lab report shall include the backup data and summary of the test results. The summary shall list all of the reference specification requirements and the result of each test. The summary shall clearly indicate whether the tested paint meets each test requirement. Note that Qualification Testing may take 4 to 6 weeks to perform, due to the extent of testing required.

Submit name, address, telephone number, FAX number, and e-mail address of the independent third party laboratory selected to perform testing of coating samples for compliance with specification requirements. Submit documentation that laboratory is regularly engaged in testing of paint samples for conformance with specifications, and that employees performing testing are qualified. If the Contractor chooses MPI to perform the Batch Quality Conformance testing, the above submittal information is not required, only a letter is required from the Contractor stating that MPI will perform the testing.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

1.4.1 Environmental Protection

In addition to requirements specified elsewhere for environmental protection, provide coating materials that conform to the restrictions of the local Air Pollution Control District and regional jurisdiction. Notify Contracting Officer of any paint specified herein which fails to conform.

1.4.2 Lead Content

Do not use coatings having a lead content over 0.06 percent by weight of nonvolatile content.

1.4.3 Chromate Content

Do not use coatings containing zinc-chromate or strontium-chromate.

1.4.4 Asbestos Content

Materials shall not contain asbestos.

1.4.5 Mercury Content

Materials shall not contain mercury or mercury compounds.

1.4.6 Silica

Abrasive blast media shall not contain free crystalline silica.

1.4.7 Human Carcinogens

Materials shall not contain ACGIH 0100 confirmed human carcinogens (A1) or suspected human carcinogens (A2).

1.5 PACKAGING, LABELING, AND STORAGE

Paints shall be in sealed containers that legibly show the contract specification number, designation name, formula or specification number, batch number, color, quantity, date of manufacture, manufacturer's formulation number, manufacturer's directions including any warnings and special precautions, and name and address of manufacturer. Pigmented paints shall be furnished in containers not larger than 5 gallons. Paints and thinners shall be stored in accordance with the manufacturer's written directions, and as a minimum, stored off the ground, under cover, with sufficient ventilation to prevent the buildup of flammable vapors, and at temperatures between 40 to 95 degrees F.

1.6 SAFETY AND HEALTH

Apply coating materials using safety methods and equipment in accordance with the following:

Work shall comply with applicable Federal, State, and local laws and regulations, and with the ACCIDENT PREVENTION PLAN, including the Activity Hazard Analysis as specified in Section 01 35 26 GOVERNMENT SAFETY REQUIREMENTS and in Appendix A of EM 385-1-1. The Activity Hazard Analysis shall include analyses of the potential impact of painting operations on painting personnel and on others involved in and adjacent to the work zone.

1.6.1 Safety Methods Used During Coating Application

Comply with the requirements of SSPC PA Guide 3.

1.6.2 Toxic Materials

To protect personnel from overexposure to toxic materials, conform to the

most stringent guidance of:

- a. The applicable [manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets](#) (SDS) or local regulation.
- b. [29 CFR 1910.1000](#).
- c. [ACGIH 0100](#), threshold limit values.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Comply, at minimum, with manufacturer recommendations for space ventilation during and after installation.

1.7.1 Coatings

Do not apply coating when air or substrate conditions are:

- a. Less than [5 degrees F](#) above dew point;
- b. Below [50 degrees F](#) or over [95 degrees F](#), unless specifically pre-approved by the Contracting Officer and the product manufacturer. Under no circumstances shall application conditions exceed manufacturer recommendations.

1.8 COLOR SELECTION

Colors of finish coats shall be as indicated or specified. Where not indicated or specified, colors shall be selected by the Contracting Officer. Manufacturers' names and color identification are used for the purpose of color identification only. Named products are acceptable for use only if they conform to specified requirements. Products of other manufacturers are acceptable if the colors approximate colors indicated and the product conforms to specified requirements.

Tint each coat progressively darker to enable confirmation of the number of coats.

Color, texture, and pattern of wall coating systems shall be as indicated.

1.9 LOCATION AND SURFACE TYPE TO BE PAINTED

1.9.1 Painting Included

Where a space or surface is indicated to be painted, include the following unless indicated otherwise.

- a. Surfaces behind portable objects and surface mounted articles readily detachable by removal of fasteners, such as screws and bolts.
- b. New factory finished surfaces that require identification or color coding and factory finished surfaces that are damaged during performance of the work.
- c. Existing coated surfaces that are damaged during performance of the work.

1.9.1.1 Interior Painting

Includes new surfaces, existing uncoated surfaces, and existing coated

surfaces of the building and appurtenances as indicated and existing coated surfaces made bare by cleaning operations. Where a space or surface is indicated to be painted, include the following items, unless indicated otherwise.

- a. Exposed columns, girders, beams, joists, and metal deck; and
- b. Other contiguous surfaces.

1.9.2 Painting Excluded

Do not paint the following unless indicated otherwise.

- a. Surfaces concealed and made inaccessible by panelboards, fixed ductwork, machinery, and equipment fixed in place.
- b. Surfaces in concealed spaces. Concealed spaces are defined as enclosed spaces above suspended ceilings, furred spaces, attic spaces, crawl spaces, elevator shafts and chases.
- c. Steel to be embedded in concrete.
- d. Copper, stainless steel, aluminum, brass, and lead except existing coated surfaces.
- e. Hardware, fittings, and other factory finished items.

1.9.3 Mechanical and Electrical Painting

Includes field coating of interior new and existing surfaces.

- a. Where a space or surface is indicated to be painted, include the following items unless indicated otherwise.
 - (1) Exposed piping, conduit, and ductwork;
 - (2) Supports, hangers, air grilles, and registers;
 - (3) Miscellaneous metalwork and insulation coverings.
- b. Do not paint the following, unless indicated otherwise:
 - (1) New zinc-coated, aluminum, and copper surfaces under insulation
 - (2) New aluminum jacket on piping
 - (3) New interior ferrous piping under insulation.

1.9.4 Definitions and Abbreviations

1.9.4.1 Qualification Testing

Qualification testing is the performance of all test requirements listed in the product specification. This testing is accomplished by MPI to qualify each product for the MPI Approved Product List, and may also be accomplished by Contractor's third party testing lab if an alternative to Batch Quality Conformance Testing by MPI is desired.

1.9.4.2 Batch Quality Conformance Testing

Batch quality conformance testing determines that the product provided is the same as the product qualified to the appropriate product specification. This testing shall only be accomplished by MPI testing lab.

1.9.4.3 Coating

A film or thin layer applied to a base material called a substrate. A coating may be a metal, alloy, paint, or solid/liquid suspensions on various substrates (metals, plastics, wood, paper, leather, cloth, etc.). They may be applied by electrolysis, vapor deposition, vacuum, or mechanical means such as brushing, spraying, calendaring, and roller coating. A coating may be applied for aesthetic or protective purposes or both. The term "coating" as used herein includes emulsions, enamels, stains, varnishes, sealers, epoxies, and other coatings, whether used as primer, intermediate, or finish coat. The terms paint and coating are used interchangeably.

1.9.4.4 DFT or dft

Dry film thickness, the film thickness of the fully cured, dry paint or coating.

1.9.4.5 DSD

Degree of Surface Degradation, the MPI system of defining degree of surface degradation. Five (5) levels are generically defined under the Assessment sections in the MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual.

1.9.4.6 EPP

Environmentally Preferred Products, a standard for determining environmental preferability in support of Executive Order 13101.

1.9.4.7 EXT

MPI short term designation for an exterior coating system.

1.9.4.8 INT

MPI short term designation for an interior coating system.

1.9.4.9 micron / microns

The metric measurement for 0.001 mm or one/one-thousandth of a millimeter.

1.9.4.10 mil / mils

The English measurement for 0.001 in or one/one-thousandth of an inch, equal to 25.4 microns or 0.0254 mm.

1.9.4.11 mm

The metric measurement for millimeter, 0.001 meter or one/one-thousandth of a meter.

1.9.4.12 MPI Gloss Levels

MPI system of defining gloss. Seven (7) gloss levels (G1 to G7) are generically defined under the Evaluation sections of the MPI Manuals. Traditionally, Flat refers to G1/G2, Eggshell refers to G3, Semigloss refers to G5, and Gloss refers to G6.

Gloss levels are defined by MPI as follows:

Gloss Level	Description	Units at 60 degrees	Units at 85 degrees
G1	Matte or Flat	0 to 5	10 max
G2	Velvet	0 to 10	10 to 35
G3	Eggshell	10 to 25	10 to 35
G4	Satin	20 to 35	35 min
G5	Semi-Gloss	35 to 70	
G6	Gloss	70 to 85	
G7	High Gloss		

Gloss is tested in accordance with [ASTM D523](#). Historically, the Government has used Flat (G1 / G2), Eggshell (G3), Semi-Gloss (G5), and Gloss (G6).

1.9.4.13 MPI System Number

The MPI coating system number in each Division found in either the MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual or the Maintenance Repainting Manual and defined as an exterior (EXT/REX) or interior system (INT/RIN). The Division number follows the CSI Master Format.

1.9.4.14 Paint

See Coating definition.

1.9.4.15 REX

MPI short term designation for an exterior coating system used in repainting projects or over existing coating systems.

1.9.4.16 RIN

MPI short term designation for an interior coating system used in repainting projects or over existing coating systems.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Conform to the [coating](#) specifications and standards referenced in PART 3. Submit [manufacturer's technical data sheets](#) for specified [coatings](#) and solvents. Comply with applicable regulations regarding toxic and hazardous materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION OF AREAS AND SPACES NOT TO BE PAINTED

Prior to surface preparation and coating applications, remove, mask, or

otherwise protect, hardware, hardware accessories, machined surfaces, radiator covers, plates, lighting fixtures, public and private property, and other such items not to be coated that are in contact with surfaces to be coated. Following completion of painting, workmen skilled in the trades involved shall reinstall removed items. Restore surfaces contaminated by coating materials, to original condition and repair damaged items.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

Remove dirt, splinters, loose particles, grease, oil, disintegrated coatings, and other foreign matter and substances deleterious to coating performance as specified for each substrate before application of paint or surface treatments. Oil and grease shall be removed prior to mechanical cleaning. Cleaning shall be programmed so that dust and other contaminants will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces. Exposed ferrous metals such as nail heads on or in contact with surfaces to be painted with water-thinned paints, shall be spot-primed with a suitable corrosion-inhibitive primer capable of preventing flash rusting and compatible with the coating specified for the adjacent areas.

3.2.1 Additional Requirements for Preparation of Surfaces With Existing Coatings

Before application of coatings, perform the following on surfaces covered by soundly-adhered coatings, defined as those which cannot be removed with a putty knife:

- a. Test existing finishes for lead before sanding, scraping, or removing. If lead is present, refer to paragraph Toxic Materials.
- b. Wipe previously painted surfaces to receive solvent-based coatings, except stucco and similarly rough surfaces clean with a clean, dry cloth saturated with mineral spirits, [ASTM D235](#). Allow surface to dry. Wiping shall immediately precede the application of the first coat of any coating, unless specified otherwise.
- c. Sand existing glossy surfaces to be painted to reduce gloss. Brush, and wipe clean with a damp cloth to remove dust.
- d. The requirements specified are minimum. Comply also with the [application instructions](#) of the paint manufacturer.
- e. Previously painted surfaces specified to be repainted and damaged during construction shall be thoroughly cleaned of all grease, dirt, dust or other foreign matter.
- f. Blistering, cracking, flaking and peeling or other deteriorated coatings shall be removed.
- g. Chalk shall be removed so that when tested in accordance with [ASTM D4214](#), the chalk resistance rating is no less than 8.
- h. Slick surfaces shall be roughened. Damaged areas such as, but not limited to, nail holes, cracks, chips, and spalls shall be repaired with suitable material to match adjacent undamaged areas.
- i. Edges of chipped paint shall be feather edged and sanded smooth.
- j. Rusty metal surfaces shall be cleaned as per SSPC requirements.

Solvent, mechanical, or chemical cleaning methods shall be used to provide surfaces suitable for painting.

- k. New, proposed coatings shall be compatible with existing coatings.

3.2.2 Existing Coated Surfaces with Minor Defects

Sand, spackle, and treat minor defects to render them smooth. Minor defects are defined as scratches, nicks, cracks, gouges, spalls, alligating, chalking, and irregularities due to partial peeling of previous coatings.

3.2.3 Substrate Repair

- a. Repair substrate surface damaged during coating removal;
- b. Sand edges of adjacent soundly-adhered existing coatings so they are tapered as smooth as practical to areas involved with coating removal; and
- c. Clean and prime the substrate as specified.

3.3 PREPARATION OF METAL SURFACES

3.3.1 Existing and New Ferrous Surfaces

- a. Ferrous Surfaces including Shop-coated Surfaces and Small Areas That Contain Rust, Mill Scale and Other Foreign Substances: Solvent clean or detergent wash in accordance with [SSPC SP 1](#) to remove oil and grease. Where shop coat is missing or damaged, clean according to [SSPC SP 2](#),. Shop-coated ferrous surfaces shall be protected from corrosion by treating and touching up corroded areas immediately upon detection.
- b. Surfaces With More Than 20 Percent Rust, Mill Scale, and Other Foreign Substances: Clean entire surface in accordance with [SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3](#) /[SSPC SP 12/NACE No.5](#) WJ-3.

3.3.2 Final Ferrous Surface Condition:

For tool cleaned surfaces, the requirements are stated in [SSPC SP 2](#) and [SSPC SP 3](#). As a visual reference, cleaned surfaces shall be similar to photographs in [SSPC VIS 3](#).

3.3.3 Galvanized Surfaces

- a. New or Existing Galvanized Surfaces With Only Dirt and Zinc Oxidation Products: Clean with solvent, or non-alkaline detergent solution in accordance with [SSPC SP 1](#). If the galvanized metal has been passivated or stabilized, the coating shall be completely removed by brush-off abrasive blast. New galvanized steel to be coated shall not be "passivated" or "stabilized" If the absence of hexavalent stain inhibitors is not documented, test as described in [ASTM D6386](#), Appendix X2, and remove by one of the methods described therein.
- b. Galvanized with Slight Coating Deterioration or with Little or No Rusting: Water jetting to [SSPC SP 12/NACE No.5](#) WJ3 to remove loose coating from surfaces with less than 20 percent coating deterioration and no blistering, peeling, or cracking. Use inhibitor as recommended by the coating manufacturer to prevent rusting.

- c. Galvanized With Severe Deteriorated Coating or Severe Rusting: Water jet to **SSPC SP 12/NACE No.5** WJ3 degree of cleanliness.

3.3.4 Non-Ferrous Metallic Surfaces

Aluminum and aluminum-alloy, lead, copper, and other nonferrous metal surfaces.

Surface Cleaning: Solvent clean in accordance with **SSPC SP 1** and wash with mild non-alkaline detergent to remove dirt and water soluble contaminants.

3.4 PREPARATION OF CONCRETE AND CEMENTITIOUS SURFACE

3.4.1 Concrete and Masonry

- a. Curing: Concrete, stucco and masonry surfaces shall be allowed to cure at least 30 days before painting, except concrete slab on grade, which shall be allowed to cure 90 days before painting.
- b. Surface Cleaning: Remove the following deleterious substances.
 - (1) Dirt, Chalking, Grease, and Oil: Wash new and existing uncoated surfaces with a solution composed of **1/2 cup** trisodium phosphate, **1/4 cup** household detergent, and **4 quarts** of warm water. Then rinse thoroughly with fresh water. Wash existing coated surfaces with a suitable detergent and rinse thoroughly. For large areas, water blasting may be used.
 - (2) Fungus and Mold: Wash , existing coated, and existing uncoated surfaces with a solution composed of **1/2 cup** trisodium phosphate, **1/4 cup** household detergent, **1 quart** 5 percent sodium hypochlorite solution and **3 quarts** of warm water. Rinse thoroughly with fresh water.
 - (3) Paint and Loose Particles: Remove by wire brushing.
 - (4) Efflorescence: Remove by scraping or wire brushing followed by washing with a 5 to 10 percent by weight aqueous solution of hydrochloric (muriatic) acid. Do not allow acid to remain on the surface for more than five minutes before rinsing with fresh water. Do not acid clean more than **4 square feet** of surface, per workman, at one time.
- c. Cosmetic Repair of Minor Defects: Repair or fill mortar joints and minor defects, including but not limited to spalls, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and prior to coating application.
- d. Allowable Moisture Content: Latex coatings may be applied to damp surfaces, but not to surfaces with droplets of water. Do not apply epoxies to damp vertical surfaces as determined by **ASTM D4263** or horizontal surfaces that exceed 3 lbs of moisture per 1000 square feet in 24 hours as determined by **ASTM F1869**. In all cases follow manufacturers recommendations. Allow surfaces to cure a minimum of 30 days before painting.

3.5 APPLICATION

3.5.1 Coating Application

Painting practices shall comply with applicable federal, state and local laws enacted to insure compliance with Federal Clean Air Standards. Apply coating materials in accordance with **SSPC PA 1**. **SSPC PA 1** methods are applicable to all substrates, except as modified herein.

At the time of application, paint shall show no signs of deterioration. Uniform suspension of pigments shall be maintained during application.

Unless otherwise specified or recommended by the paint manufacturer, paint may be applied by brush, roller, or spray. Use trigger operated spray nozzles for water hoses. Rollers for applying paints and enamels shall be of a type designed for the coating to be applied and the surface to be coated. Wear protective clothing and respirators when applying oil-based paints or using spray equipment with any paints.

Paints, except water-thinned types, shall be applied only to surfaces that are completely free of moisture as determined by sight or touch.

Thoroughly work coating materials into joints, crevices, and open spaces. Special attention shall be given to insure that all edges, corners, crevices, welds, and rivets receive a film thickness equal to that of adjacent painted surfaces.

Each coat of paint shall be applied so dry film shall be of uniform thickness and free from runs, drops, ridges, waves, pinholes or other voids, laps, brush marks, and variations in color, texture, and finish. Hiding shall be complete.

Touch up damaged coatings before applying subsequent coats. Interior areas shall be broom clean and dust free before and during the application of coating material.

- a. Drying Time: Allow time between coats, as recommended by the coating manufacturer, to permit thorough drying, but not to present topcoat adhesion problems. Provide each coat in specified condition to receive next coat.
- b. Primers, and Intermediate Coats: Do not allow primers or intermediate coats to dry more than 30 days, or longer than recommended by manufacturer, before applying subsequent coats. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for surface preparation if primers or intermediate coats are allowed to dry longer than recommended by manufacturers of subsequent coatings. Each coat shall cover surface of preceding coat or surface completely, and there shall be a visually perceptible difference in shades of successive coats.
- c. Finished Surfaces: Provide finished surfaces free from runs, drops, ridges, waves, laps, brush marks, and variations in colors.

3.5.2 **Mixing** and Thinning of Paints

Reduce paints to proper consistency by adding fresh paint, except when thinning is mandatory to suit surface, temperature, weather conditions, application methods, or for the type of paint being used. Obtain written permission from the Contracting Officer to use thinners. The written permission shall include quantities and types of thinners to use.

When thinning is allowed, paints shall be thinned immediately prior to application with not more than 1 pint of suitable thinner per gallon. The use of thinner shall not relieve the Contractor from obtaining complete hiding, full film thickness, or required gloss. Thinning shall not cause the paint to exceed limits on volatile organic compounds. Paints of different manufacturers shall not be mixed.

3.5.3 Coating Systems

- a. Systems by Substrates: Apply coatings that conform to the respective specifications listed in the following Tables:

Table

Division 3.	Exterior Concrete Paint Table
Division 4.	Exterior Concrete Masonry Units Paint Table
Division 5.	Exterior Metal, Ferrous and Non-Ferrous Paint Table
Division 6.	Exterior Wood; Dressed Lumber, Paneling, Decking, Shingles Paint Table
Division 9:	Exterior Stucco Paint Table
Division 10.	Exterior Cloth Coverings and Bituminous Coated Surfaces Paint Table
Division 3.	Interior Concrete Paint Table
Division 4.	Interior Concrete Masonry Units Paint Table
Division 5.	Interior Metal, Ferrous and Non-Ferrous Paint Table
Division 6.	Interior Wood Paint Table
Division 9:	Interior Plaster, Gypsum Board, Textured Surfaces Paint Table

- b. Minimum Dry Film Thickness (DFT): Apply paints, primers, varnishes, enamels, undercoats, and other coatings to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mil each coat unless specified otherwise in the Tables. Coating thickness where specified, refers to the minimum dry film thickness.
- c. Coatings for Surfaces Not Specified Otherwise: Coat surfaces which have not been specified, the same as surfaces having similar conditions of exposure.
- d. Existing Surfaces Damaged During Performance of the Work, Including New Patches In Existing Surfaces: Coat surfaces with the following:
- (1) One coat of primer.
 - (2) One coat of undercoat or intermediate coat.
 - (3) One topcoat to match adjacent surfaces.
- e. Existing Coated Surfaces To Be Painted: Apply coatings conforming to the respective specifications listed in the Tables herein, except that pretreatments, sealers and fillers need not be provided on surfaces where existing coatings are soundly adhered and in good condition. Do not omit undercoats or primers.

3.6 COATING SYSTEMS FOR METAL

Apply coatings of Tables in Division 5 for Exterior and Interior.

- a. Apply specified ferrous metal primer on the same day that surface is cleaned, to surfaces that meet all specified surface preparation requirements at time of application.
- b. Inaccessible Surfaces: Prior to erection, use one coat of specified primer on metal surfaces that will be inaccessible after erection.
- c. Shop-primed Surfaces: Touch up exposed substrates and damaged coatings to protect from rusting prior to applying field primer.
- d. Pipes and Tubing: The semitransparent film applied to some pipes and tubing at the mill is not to be considered a shop coat, but shall be overcoated with the specified ferrous-metal primer prior to application of finish coats.
- e. Exposed Nails, Screws, Fasteners, and Miscellaneous Ferrous Surfaces. On surfaces to be coated with water thinned coatings, spot prime exposed nails and other ferrous metal with latex primer MPI 107.

3.7 COATING SYSTEMS FOR CONCRETE AND CEMENTITIOUS SUBSTRATES

Apply coatings of Tables in Division 3, 4 and 9 for Exterior and Interior.

3.8 COATING SYSTEMS FOR WOOD AND PLYWOOD

- a. Apply coatings of Tables in Division 6 for Exterior and Interior.
- b. Prior to erection, apply two coats of specified primer to treat and prime wood and plywood surfaces which will be inaccessible after erection.

3.9 INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE

In addition to meeting previously specified requirements, demonstrate mobility of moving components, including swinging and sliding doors, cabinets, and windows with operable sash, for inspection by the Contracting Officer. Perform this demonstration after appropriate curing and drying times of coatings have elapsed and prior to invoicing for final payment.

3.10 WASTE MANAGEMENT

As specified in the Waste Management Plan and as follows. Do not use kerosene or any such organic solvents to clean up water based paints. Properly dispose of paints or solvents in designated containers. Close and seal partially used containers of paint to maintain quality as necessary for reuse. Store in protected, well-ventilated, fire-safe area at moderate temperature. Place materials defined as hazardous or toxic waste in designated containers. Coordinate with manufacturer for take-back program. Set aside scrap to be returned to manufacturer for recycling into new product. When such a service is not available, local recyclers shall be sought after to reclaim the materials. Set aside extra paint for future color matches or reuse by the Government. Where local options exist for leftover paint recycling, collect all waste paint by type and provide for delivery to recycling or collection facility for reuse by local organizations.

3.11 PAINT TABLES

All DFT's are minimum values. Use only materials with a GPS green check mark having a minimum MPI "Environmentally Friendly" E1 rating based on VOC

(EPA Method 24) content levels. Acceptable products are listed in the MPI Green Approved Products List, available at <http://www.specifygreen.com/APL/ProductIdxByMPInum.asp>.

3.11.1 Interior Paint Tables

DIVISION 4: INTERIOR CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS PAINT TABLE

A. New Concrete masonry:

2. Institutional Low Odor / Low VOC Latex

New; MPI INT 4.2E-G3 (Eggshell)

Filler	Primer:	Intermediate:	Topcoat:
MPI 4	N/A	MPI 145	MPI 145
System DFT: 4 mils			

B. Existing, previously painted Concrete masonry:

2. Institutional Low Odor / Low VOC Latex

Existing; MPI RIN 4.2L-G2 (Flat)

Spot Primer:	Intermediate:	Topcoat:
MPI 50	MPI 144	MPI 144
System DFT: 4 mils		

DIVISION 5: INTERIOR METAL, FERROUS AND NON-FERROUS PAINT TABLE

INTERIOR STEEL / FERROUS SURFACES

A. Metal, Mechanical, Electrical, Surfaces adjacent to painted surfaces (Match surrounding finish), and miscellaneous metal items not otherwise specified except floors, hot metal surfaces, and new prefinished equipment:

1. High Performance Architectural Latex

MPI INT 5.1R-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer:	Intermediate:	Topcoat:
MPI 79	MPI 141	MPI 141
System DFT: 5 mils		

DIVISION 6: INTERIOR WOOD PAINT TABLE

A. New and Existing, uncoated Wood and plywood not otherwise specified:

1. Institutional Low Odor / Low VOC Latex

New; MPI INT 6.3V-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer:	Intermediate:	Topcoat:
MPI 39	MPI 147	MPI 147
System DFT: 4 mils		

-- End of Section --

SECTION 21 22 00.00 40

CLEAN AGENT FIRE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

05/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- ASTM A53/A53M** (2012) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
- ASTM B88** (2016) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

- MSS SP-58** (1993; Reaffirmed 2010) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

- NFPA 101** (2018; TIA 18-1) Life Safety Code
- NFPA 2001** (2018) Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems
- NFPA 70** (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14) National Electrical Code
- NFPA 72** (2016) National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

- UL 2127** (2017) UL Standard for Safety Inert Gas Clean Agent Extinguishing System Units
- UL 2166** (2017) UL Standard for Safety Halocarbon Clean Agent Extinguishing System Units
- UL 536** (2014) Flexible Metallic Hose

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval.. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. :

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Previous Product Installation; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

High-Pressure Cylinders; G

Piping Materials; G

Pipe Hangers and Supports; G

Pressure Alarm Switch; G

Nozzle; G

Manual Actuation Stations; G

Installation Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Escutcheons; G

Storage Batteries; G

Battery Charger; G

Smoke Detectors; G

Audible Alarms; G

Visual Alarms; G

Annunciator Panels; G

Electromagnetic Door Holder Release; G

Pressure-Relief Device; G

SD-05 Design Data

Design Analysis; G

Discharge Calculations; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Test Procedure; G

Preliminary Tests; G

Formal Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Certificates of Compliance

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operating Instructions; G

Operation and Maintenance Manuals

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Record Drawings

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

Use State certified contractors to supervise installation and perform acceptance testing of the system in accordance with [NFPA 2001](#).

Perform all work by, or under the direct supervision of the certified contractor

1.3.1 Special Hazards Suppression Systems

Provide the services of a Certified Special Hazards Design Specialist (CSHDS) thoroughly experienced in Clean Agent Suppression System installations on site, to perform or directly supervise the installation, make all necessary adjustments, and perform all tests.

A CSHDS is considered certified when the specialist holds a valid System Layout Certification, Level IV Certification from the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) or is licensed by the State of [New Jersey](#) as a Contractor in accordance with State Statutes, and holds a current Certificate of Competency.

Certification of other recognized agencies with equivalent requirements may be considered. Provide evidence of the Contractor's State Certification and the basis of certification to the Contracting Officer for approval prior to any work being performed.

1.3.2 Previous Product Installation

Submit the names, locations, and client contact information of five successful previous projects of similar size and scope that the installer has constructed using the manufacturer's submitted products for this project.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Design clean agent extinguishing system as per [NFPA 2001](#). Submit plans and calculations for approval before installation. Submit [certificates of compliance](#) for the following items showing conformance with the referenced standards contained in this section:

- a. Piping Materials and Supports

- b. High-Pressure Cylinders
- c. Escutcheons
- d. Pipe Hangers and Supports
- e. Pressure Alarm Switch
- f. Internal Cleaning and Swabbing of Pipe

2.1.1 Installation Drawings

Submit [installation drawings](#) for Clean Agent Fire Protection Systems. Annotate clean agent extinguishing system piping layout with reference points for design. In field wiring diagrams, show locations of devices and points of the system. Prepare working drawings in accordance with the requirements for "Specifications, Plans and Approvals" as specified in [NFPA 2001](#). Include data essential to the proper installation of each system. Integrate with the alarm and detection system specified.

Include details of equipment layout and design. Indicate the general physical layout of all controls, manual actuation stations, and internal tubing and wiring details.

Give full consideration to built-in spaces, piping, electrical equipment, ductwork, and all other construction and equipment for the layout of the system.

Provide electronic drawings in Microstation.dgn format or AutoCAD.dwg format. If the electronic files are AutoCAD format, only use standard AutoCAD fonts and line styles and furnish the pcp file.

2.1.2 Design Requirements

Submit [design analysis](#) and calculations for Fire-Protection Systems including spray areas, hazard by class, and pressure calculations.

Submit clean agent [discharge calculations](#) verifying total storage requirements, flooding concentrations, discharge times, flow through the piping network, pipe sizes, and [nozzle](#) orifice sizes, in accordance with the manufacturer's listed design manual and [NFPA 2001](#).

Design the total flooding system to a concentration of 8.45 percent for [no less than 10](#) minutes.

2.1.3 Equipment Approval

Provide devices and equipment of make and type listed by the Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL), [UL 2127](#), [UL 2166](#), or Factory Mutual (FM) approved. In the UL and FM publications, consider the advisory provisions as mandatory. Reference to the "authority having jurisdiction", AHJ is interpreted as the [Federal Aviation Administration](#).

Provide an approved high-pressure total flooding type Fire-Extinguishing system conforming to [NFPA 2001](#). Acceptable product is Novec-1230.

2.1.4 Performance Requirements

Provide construction type, test, and mark of [high-pressure cylinders](#) in accordance with U.S. Department of Transportation specifications for seamless steel cylinders.

Provide each cylinder with a safety device to relieve excess pressure safely, in advance of the rated cylinder test pressure. Devices are to be Interstate Commerce Commission approved frangible safety disks.

Provide cylinder support racks that anchor to walls and floors.

Main System: Arrange system for fully automatic and manually operated electric control operation, with operating controls of the enclosed release type to prevent accidental operation. Also provide for manual actuation stations and keyed override operations.

2.2 EQUIPMENT

Design and construct the system as a total-flood system to include a fixed supply of extinguishing agent connected to properly sized, fixed piping with fittings and nozzles to direct this agent into the protected area.

2.3 COMPONENTS

2.3.1 Piping

Provide only galvanized, ferrous piping, Schedule 40 manifolds and distribution [piping materials](#) conforming to [ASTM A53/A53M](#), nonferrous drawn seamless copper tubing conforming to [ASTM B88](#), and flexible metallic hose conforming to [UL 536](#).

Provide fittings for changes in direction of piping and for all connections. Reduce pipe sizes in the fitting. Do not use flush bushings. Fuse brazed joints, when used, with an alloy with a melting point above [1,000 degrees F](#).

Provide pipe and fittings having a minimum bursting pressure of [5,000 psi](#). For [1/2 inch](#) and [3/4 inch](#) iron pipe size (ips), provide Schedule 40. For [1 inch](#) or greater, use only Schedule 80 pipe. Standard malleable iron banded fittings or ductile iron fittings are to be used up through [3/4 inch](#) ips. Use extra heavy malleable iron or ductile iron fittings through [2 inch](#) ips. Use forged steel fittings in all sizes over [2 inches](#).

Permanently mark discharge nozzles to identify the nozzle and to show the equivalent single orifice diameter regardless of shape and number of orifices. Design discharge nozzles to uniformly distribute the clean agent throughout the hazard area.

2.3.1.1 Pipe Hangers And Supports

Provide [pipe hangers and supports](#) conforming to [MSS SP-58](#), adjustable type, zinc-coated.

2.3.1.2 Pipe Sleeves

Provide sleeves where piping passes through masonry or concrete walls, floors, roofs and partitions. Use standard weight zinc coating for steel pipe sleeves in outside walls, below and above grade, in floor, and roof

slabs. Zinc coat steel sleeves in partitions having a nominal weight of not less than 0.90 pounds per square foot. Ensure space between piping and the sleeve, is not less than 0.5-inch. Use sleeves of sufficient length to pass through the entire thickness of walls, partitions and slabs. Extend sleeves in floor slabs 2-inches above the finished floor. Pack space between the pipe and sleeve with asbestos free insulation and caulk at both ends of the sleeve with plastic waterproof cement.

2.3.2 Escutcheons

Provide approved-type escutcheons for piping passing through floors, walls, and ceilings, consisting of one-piece or split-type. Provide chrome plated escutcheons where pipe passes through finished ceilings. Other escutcheons may be steel or cast iron, with aluminum paint finish. Securely fasten escutcheons in place with setscrews or other positive means.

2.3.3 Supervisory Switch

2.3.3.1 Low Pressure Alarm Switch

Provide the clean agent tanks with a low pressure alarm switch to warn of clean agent tank depressurization.

2.3.4 Control Panel

Provide a separate control panel for the clean agent system. Route all supervision and control through the building's existing fire alarm panel. Provide the suppression system control panel with power-on, alarm, supervisory, and trouble indicating lights plainly visible when the cabinet is closed. Ensure the following functions are accessible only by unlocking and opening the unit:

- a. Alarm Silence
- b. Trouble Silence
- c. Supervisory Silence
- d. Power On-Off (If standard by the manufacturer)
- e. Alarm/Trouble Acknowledge
- f. Auxiliary Devices (AHU shutdown relay) Maintenance By-pass Switches
- g. System Reset
- h. Manual Actuation Station

Provide the suppression system control panel with all components necessary to monitor and supervise all initiating device circuits. When any detector, connected to the control panel is activated, activate the control panels visual alarm indication and audible signal. (This causes all notification appliances to be activated, including all associated auxiliary control functions.) The control panel is to visually indicate the addressable device or zone in alarm and transmit an alarm condition to the remote Central Fire Monitoring System. Separate audible and visual notification appliance circuits. Provide audible and visual notification appliance circuits having sufficient capacity to operate all devices connected, plus 25 percent minimum spare capacity. Visual notification appliances are to remain operational until the panel has been reset.

Provide a control panel containing all components necessary to monitor and supervise all supervisory device circuits. When any valve tamper switch, pressure switch, or other supervisory device connected to the control panel is activated, they are to activate the control panel supervisory visual indication and supervisory audible device. The control panel is to visually indicate the addressable device or zone in supervisory alarm and transmit a supervisory condition to the remote Central Fire Monitoring System.

Provide a control panel containing all components necessary to operate and supervise the circuits for annunciator panels indicated and auxiliary devices controlling equipment. Provide circuits for auxiliary control relays which are supervised to within 3-feet of the the device controlled in accordance with NFPA 101. Include a maintenance by-pass switch for all auxiliary control devices. Supervise the by-pass to report trouble when in the maintenance by-pass position.

Design the panel to monitor and report as trouble, open supervised circuits, ground faulted supervised circuits, removal of detector or device, removal or failure of control panel module, maintenance by-pass switch activated, loss of primary power, power supply trouble, low battery voltage, loss of battery voltage, and activation of the alarm silence switch. Identify all trouble signals by initiating notification appliance, auxiliary control, or signaling line device. Trouble signals are to activate the control panel trouble visual indication and trouble audible devices, and send a trouble signal to the remote Central Fire Monitoring System.

Provide alarm/trouble reset switches to reset a cleared device in alarm or trouble. Alarm or trouble signals are not to be self-restoring without activating the switch.

Alarm, supervisory, and trouble silence switches are to silence the alarm and trouble audible's. Either switch placed in other than the normal position is to provide the following:

- a. Report as an alarm, supervisory, or a trouble to the Central Fire Monitoring System.
- b. Transfer audible signal to a panel lamp visual indication.
- c. Re-ring the trouble audible if the problem has been cleared, but the switch has been left in the silence position.

When the alarm silencing switches are in the silence position, subsequent alarms are to reactivate the notification appliances, with the strobes remaining operational until the reaction control panel is reset.

Ensure the control panel is suitable for use with the detectors and manual alarm stations, and other preaction devices specified in this section.

Provide a control panel having a normally closed set of dry contacts, single pole, double throw (SPDT), which opens for trouble conditions and a normally open set of dry contacts (SPDT), which closes under alarm conditions for connection to the Central Fire Monitoring System.

Provide continuous duty relays with self-cleaning contacts of silver or an alloy of equivalent performance. Suitably protect supervisory relays

against dust by individual covers. For all relays that provide external functions, such as remote reporting, control device activation, and notification appliance activation, ensure at least one (1) set of space contacts are provided. Permanently mark relays with the coil resistance, operating-current range, and internal pin connections using standard pin numbers.

Provide steel construction control panel, terminal cabinets and battery cabinets (when used). Provide panel and cabinets with a hinged cover and an integral pin-tumbler cylinder lock with removable core that accepts the key presently in use with other control units existing in the area; lock core is provided by the government. Paint cabinets with a prime coat and one or more finish coats of scratch-resistant baked enamel. Provide a red finish coat unless otherwise indicated. Permanently affix an etched metal or engraved laminated plastic identification plate labeled, "Suppression Control Cabinet", to the cabinet door of the preaction control unit to identify the cabinet as a preaction control system cabinet. For cabinets painted red, provide an identification plate with white letters on a black background. For cabinets not painted red, the identification plate is to have white letters on a red background.

Provide a system which operates from a power supply with 120 grounded Vac int and 24 Vdc output, satisfactorily with power input voltage varying from 85 to 110 percent of nominal value. Ensure that the power supply output is capable of powering all initiation, signaling, annunciation, and control devices during alarm condition with 25 percent minimum spare capacity. If supplied within the cabinet, ensure the power on-off switch will disconnect all power sources to the control panel, and that the on-off switch has DC rated contacts.

2.3.4.1 Secondary Power Supply

Provide batteries, charger, and power transfer equipment which supplies the means of automatically supplying the entire preaction system with battery backup power in event of a primary power system failure, and switches to battery power in the event of AC power failure, and switches back to AC power upon return of primary power. Provide a control panel which operates when the backup batteries are disconnected for any reason, and controls charging currents and floating voltage levels to maintain batteries in optimum condition. Provide capability to recharge batteries in event of discharge. Fuse wiring to protect against battery over-current and polarity reversal. Primary power, battery, or charging equipment failure is to activate a preaction control panel trouble signal and visual indication.

2.3.4.1.1 Storage Batteries

Provide sealed and spill-proof battery modules (no corrosive fumes). Utilize only batteries which are listed for preaction service and suitable for high discharge currents required under alarm conditions, sized to operate the suppression and detection system (including voice evacuation systems and UV/IR flame detectors) in normal supervisory condition for 72 hours minimum, then operate the system in the alarm mode for 15 minutes, minimum.

Provide calculations substantiating the battery capacity. Provide reliable separation between cells to prevent contact between terminals of adjacent cells and between battery terminals and other metal parts.

2.3.4.1.2 Battery Charger

Provide completely automatic high/low charging rate type charger capable of battery recovery from full discharge to full charge in 24 hours or less. Provide an ammeter for recording rate of charge and a voltmeter to indicate the state of battery charge. Provide a red pilot light to indicate when batteries are manually placed on a high rate of charge as part of the unit assembly if a high-rate switch is provided.

2.3.5 Manual Actuation Stations

Provide actuation stations for systems at the exits from the protected areas. Ensure manual station operation causes the control panel to go into full alarm condition and discharge Clean Agent into the protected area following the adjustable time delay. Provide separate, clearly labeled, manual stations for control of underfloor discharge and room flooding. Install stations of a type not subject to operation by jarring or vibration. Ensure stations have a dual action release configuration to prevent accidental system discharge. Break-glass-front stations are not permitted; however a pull lever break-glass-rod type is acceptable. Station color is yellow or orange. Place warning signs, "Agent Trade Name" manual release, at each station indicating that operation of the station initiates immediate Fire Suppression Agent discharge. Where building fire alarm pull stations are also mounted at the exits from the protected areas, separate them from Fire Suppression Agent actuation stations by at least 3-feet horizontally. Provide labels to clearly distinguish building fire alarm stations from Fire Suppression Agent stations. Ensure Fire Suppression Agent stations are a different color from building fire alarm pull stations.

2.3.6 Detectors

Design for detection of abnormal conditions utilizing fixed point/rate of rise and UV/IR detectors. . Necessary control and power modules required for operation of the device is integral with the main control panel. Ensure detectors are compatible with the main control panel provided and are suitable for use in a supervised circuit. Ensure detectors do not draw power from the initiating circuit. Take operating power from a separate supervised power supply circuit. Ensure that malfunction of the electrical circuitry to the detector or its control or power units results in the operation of the system trouble devices. Ensure detectors are not susceptible to operation by changes in relative humidity. Each detector contains a visible indicator lamp to show when the unit is activated. Use plug-in type detectors in which the detector base contains screw terminals for making all wiring connections.

2.3.6.1 Detector Spacing and Location

Ensure detector spacing and location is in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 72, the manufacturer's recommendations and the requirements stated herein. Spacing and location of detectors takes into account the airflow into the room and supply diffusers. Do not place detectors closer than 5 feet from any discharge grille. Spacing of detectors on room ceilings is not to exceed 450 square feet per detector. Spacing of detectors under raised floors is not to exceed 250 square feet per detector. Mount detectors installed beneath raised floors with the detector base within 2 inches of the underside of the raised floor framing, with the detector facing downward. Where the space under the raised floor is less than 12 inches in height, mount detectors with their bases either horizontal or vertical, with the detection chambers mounted in the upper half of the underfloor space. Under no circumstances, mount detectors facing upward.

2.3.7 -Abort Switch

Provide one switch where activation of switch is to delay only equipment shutdown and agent discharge. Switch is guarded, spring-loaded type which operates only when pressure is manually applied to the switch. Upon release of manual pressure, switch de-activates allowing delayed functions to resume. After start of agent discharge, switch has no effect. Activation of switch during normal (non-alarm) conditions causes activation of system trouble signals.

2.3.8 Alarm Signaling Devices

Provide each protected area with audible and visual alarms located where shown. Electrically supervise all alarm circuits. Provide separate and distinct audible and visual pre-discharge and discharge signals. Where the building is equipped with a separate fire evacuation alarm system, ensure the discharge signals is distinct from those used by the building fire evacuation system. Provide each signal device with a rigid plastic or metal identification sign with lettering a minimum of 1.5-inches high. Label the pre-discharge alarm "FIRE" and the discharge alarm "Fire Suppression Agent DISCHARGE." Locate post-discharge visual alarms outside all entrances to the protected areas, and provided with signs reading "Fire Suppression Agent DISCHARGED WHEN FLASHING - DO NOT ENTER."

2.3.8.1 Audible Alarms

a. Alarm horns

Provide surface mounted, vibrating type alarm horns suitable for use in an electrically supervised circuit that have a sound output rating of at least 90 decibels at 10 feet. Horns shall match the style and configuration of the existing horns in test cell 2.

2.3.8.2 Visual Alarms

Surface mounted lamp assembly suitable for use in an electrically supervised circuit. Provide flashing stroboscopic type lamps, powered from the control panel alarm circuit. Provide lamps with a minimum of 50 candle power with a flash rate is between 60 and 120 flashes per minute. Protect lamps by a thermo-plastic lens, red for pre-discharge alarms and blue for discharge and post-discharge alarms. Visual alarms may be part of an audio-visual alarm assembly.

2.3.9 Main Annunciator

Annunciator is integral with the main control panel. Provide separate alarm and trouble lamps for each zone alarm initiating circuit located on the exterior of the cabinet door or visible through the cabinet door. Supervision is not required provided that a fault in the annunciator circuits results only in loss of annunciation and does not affect the normal functional operation of the remainder of the system. Ensure each lamp provides specific identification of the zone by means of a permanent label. Do not use generic nondescript wording such as "Zone 1," or "Zone 2," for the label identifications.

2.3.9.1 Annunciation Zones

Arrange annunciation zones as follows: Test Cell # 2, Test Cell # 3, Test Cell # 4.

2.3.9.2 Annunciator Panels

a. Remote Annunciator Panels

Locate as shown. Ensure panel duplicates all requirements specified for the main control panel annunciator, Provide individual zone trouble lamps a single common system trouble lamp.. Provide a panel lamp test switch. Provide zone identification by means of permanently attached rigid plastic or metal plate(s). Silk-screened labels attached to the reverse face of backlighted viewing windows(s). Provide interior surfacepanel.

b. Graphic Annunciator Panel

Locate as shown. Provide interior type, surface -mounted panel. Provide panel with the building floor plan, drawn to scale, with remote alarm lamps mounted to represent the location of each concealed detectorand each alarm in initiating device. Label principal rooms and areas shown with their room numbers or titles Show the panel location on the floor plan. Ensure detectors mounted above ceilings, on ceilings, and different types of initiating devices have different symbols or lamps of different colors for identification. Ensure that lamps illuminate upon actuation of their corresponding device and remain illuminated until the system is reset. Provide a lamp test switch for the panel.

2.3.10 Automatic Fire Dampers

Provide automatic control of fire dampers in air conditioning supply duct work. Ensure activation of fire dampers occurs upon second zone detection, or upon activation of Clean Agent discharge by manual pull station.

2.3.11 Electromagnetic Door Holder Release

Provide where shown. Mount the armature portion on the door and have an adjusting screw for setting the angle of the contact plate. Wall mount the electro-magnetic release, with a total horizontal projection not exceeding 4-inches. Ensure all doors release to close upon first stage (pre-discharge) alarm. Electrical supervision of wiring external of control panel for magnetic door holding circuits is not required.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Electrical Work

Electrical work is specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM, except for control and fire alarm wiring.

2.4.1.1 Wiring

Provide control and fire alarm wiring, including connections to fire alarm systems, under this section and conform to NFPA 70. Use No. 12 AWG minimum wiring for 120 volt circuits. Use No. 14 16 AWG minimum wiring for low voltage DC circuits. Color code all wiring. Use rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit, except electrical metallic tubing may be used in dry locations not enclosed in concrete and where not subject to

mechanical damage. Coordinate all electric work with the Electrical Contractor.

2.4.1.2 Operating Power

Use 120 Vac power, transformed through a two winding isolation type transformer and rectified to 24 volts DC for operation of all signal initiating, signal sounding, trouble signal and master box or transmitter tripping circuits. Provide secondary DC power supply for operation of system in the event of failure of the AC supply. Ensure transfer from normal to emergency power or restoration from emergency to normal power is fully automatic and does not cause transmission of a false alarm. Obtain AC operating power to control panel and battery charger from the line side of the incoming building power source ahead of all building services. Provide independent properly fused safety switch, with provisions for locking the cover and operating handle in the "POWER ON" position for these connections and locate adjacent to the main distribution panel. Paint switch box red and suitably identify by a lettered designation.

2.4.1.3 Conductor Identification

Identify all circuit conductors within each enclosure where a tap, splice or termination is made. Use plastic coated self sticking printed markers or by heat-shrink type sleeves for conductor identification. Attach the markers in a manner that does not permit accidental detachment. Properly identify control circuit terminations.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install materials and equipment in accordance with NFPA 2001. Ensure each system is complete and ready for operation.

Provide each system with an approved pressure-relief device designed to operate between 2,000 and 3,300 psi and located between the storage cylinder manifolds and any normally closed valve. Remove all existing carbon dioxide clean agent systems containers, piping, valves and components associated with the existing carbon dioxide fire suppression system.

3.1.1 Warning Signs

Provide signs manufactured of 3-layer red-white-red micarta, engraved to show white uppercase letters on a red background, warning signs. Warning sign thickness is 1/8-inch thick with beveled edges. Warning signs shall match the text, style, etc of the existing warning signs in test cell #2.

3.1.2 System Control

3.1.2.1 Controls

Provide an electrical and mechanical actuating control system contained in the existing fire alarm panel. Coordinate routing of electrical conduit and wiring from the new detection panels to the existing fire alarm panel with the Electrical Contractor.

3.1.2.2 Suppression System Safing/Disconnect Switch

Connect the positive and negative conductors of the Class B solenoid/actuator/electric release head circuitry in series to a lock switch. Provide and install the switch in an enclosure inside the facility. A clearly visible sign on the enclosure, or immediately adjacent, is to explicitly indicate its purpose as "FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM SAFING SWITCH".

3.1.3 Electrical Work

Refer to [Electrical Drawings for](#) Electrical work.

3.1.4 Operating Instructions

Submit [operating instructions](#) for Clean Agent Fire Protection Systems consisting of raised or embossed white letter on red rigid plastic or enameled steel background and of a size to permit them to be easily read.

Provide operating instructions at each remote control station. Instructions are to clearly indicate necessary steps for the operation of the system.

Submit six copies of the [operation and maintenance manuals](#) 30 days prior to testing the Clean Agent Fire Protection Systems. Update and resubmit data for final approval no later than 30 days prior to contract completion.

3.1.5 Field Painting

Touch-up painting is to match equipment manufacturer's original paint.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Conduct testing to determine conformance with the requirements in the presence of the Contracting Officer.

3.2.1 Manufacturer's Field Service

Provide an experienced manufacturer's field engineer to supervise installation and testing of the system.

3.2.2 Test Procedure

Prepare and submit the clean agent system test procedure to the Contracting Officer for approval 30 days prior to the planned preliminary tests.

3.2.3 Preliminary Tests

Pneumatically test each piping system at 150 psi gage to ensure no leakage or reduction in gage pressure after 2 hours. Use the discharge of breathing air from each system discharge nozzle to test discharge nozzles. Test remote control stations, and all other components and accessories individually to demonstrate proper functioning. At the completion of tests and corrections, submit a signed and dated certificate to the Contracting Officer attesting to the satisfactory completion of all testing and that the system is in operating condition.

3.2.4 Formal Tests

Provide the suppression agent, instruments, personnel, appliances, and equipment necessary for testing are furnished by the Contractor at his expense.

At a time agreed upon by the Government, the Government Fire Protection Engineer will witness formal tests and approve systems before they are accepted. Ensure the presence of an experienced technician regularly employed by the system installer during the testing. During the testing, repeat any of the required tests, as directed by the Contracting Officer. Perform a fan test witnessed by the Government wherein the enclosure integrity is required to perform in accordance with [NFPA 2001](#), Annex C.

Provide the formal test results to the Contracting Officer.

3.3 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

3.3.1 Record Drawings

Upon completion, and before final acceptance of the work, submit a complete set of as-built working drawings, including complete as-built circuit diagrams, of each clean agent system for record purposes. Provide record working drawings no smaller than [30 by 42 inches](#), reproducible with title block [8 by 4 inches](#) similar to full size contract drawings in electronic format.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 00 00

AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS
08/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 62.1 (2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor
Air Quality

ASHRAE 70 (2006; R 2011) Method of Testing for
Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and
Inlets

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A53/A53M (2012) Standard Specification for Pipe,
Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated,
Welded and Seamless

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM C553 (2013) Standard Specification for Mineral
Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for
Commercial and Industrial Applications

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1 (2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

NEMA MG 10 (2017) Energy Management Guide for
Selection and Use of Fixed Frequency
Medium AC Squirrel-Cage Polyphase
Induction Motors

NEMA MG 11 (1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for
Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 701 (2015) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for
Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films

NFPA 90A (2018) Standard for the Installation of
Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1819 (2002) Fire, Smoke and Radiation Damper Installation Guide for HVAC Systems, 5th Edition

SMACNA 1966 (2005) HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, 3rd Edition

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)

Energy Star (1992; R 2006) Energy Star Energy Efficiency Labeling System (FEMP)

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 82 Protection of Stratospheric Ozone

PL 109-58 Energy Policy Act of 2005 (EPA05)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 181 (2013; Reprint Apr 2017) UL Standard for Safety Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors

UL 555 (2006; Reprint Aug 2016) UL Standard for Safety Fire Dampers

UL 6 (2007; Reprint Nov 2014) Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel

UL Bld Mat Dir (updated continuously online) Building Materials Directory

UL Electrical Constructn (2012) Electrical Construction Equipment Directory

UL Fire Resistance (2014) Fire Resistance Directory

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Furnish ductwork, piping offsets, fittings, and accessories as required to provide a complete installation. Coordinate the work of the different trades to avoid interference between piping, equipment, structural, and electrical work. Provide complete, in place, all necessary offsets in piping and ductwork, and all fittings, and other components, required to install the work as indicated and specified.

1.2.1 Mechanical Equipment Identification

The number of charts and diagrams shall be equal to or greater than the number of mechanical equipment rooms. Where more than one chart or diagram per space is required, mount these in edge pivoted, swinging leaf, extruded aluminum frame holders which open to 170 degrees.

1.2.1.1 Charts

Provide chart listing of equipment by designation numbers and capacities such as flow rates, pressure and temperature differences, heating and cooling capacities, horsepower, pipe sizes, and voltage and current characteristics.

1.2.1.2 Diagrams

Submit proposed diagrams, at least 2 weeks prior to start of related testing. provide neat mechanical drawings provided with extruded aluminum frame under 1/8-inch glass or laminated plastic, system diagrams that show the layout of equipment, piping, and ductwork, and typed condensed operation manuals explaining preventative maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal, safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system. After approval, post these items where directed.

1.2.2 Service Labeling

Label equipment, including fans, air handlers, terminal units, etc. with labels made of self-sticking, plastic film designed for permanent installation. Labels shall be in accordance with the typical examples below:

SERVICE	LABEL AND TAG DESIGNATION
Air handling unit Number	AHU - 1
Control and instrument air	CONTROL AND INSTR.
Exhaust Fan Number	EF - 1
VAV Box Number	VAV - 1
Fan Coil Unit Number	FC - 1
Terminal Box Number	TB - 1
Unit Ventilator Number	UV - 1

Identify similar services with different temperatures or pressures. Where pressures could exceed 125 pounds per square inch, gage, include the maximum system pressure in the label. Label and arrow piping in accordance with the following:

- a. Each point of entry and exit of pipe passing through walls.
- b. Each change in direction, i.e., elbows, tees.
- c. In congested or hidden areas and at all access panels at each point required to clarify service or indicated hazard.
- d. In long straight runs, locate labels at distances within eyesight of each other not to exceed 75 feet. All labels shall be visible and

legible from the primary service and operating area.

For Bare or Insulated Pipes	
for Outside Diameters of	Lettering
1/2 thru 1-3/8 inch	1/2 inch
1-1/2 thru 2-3/8 inch	3/4 inch
2-1/2 inch and larger	1-1/4 inch

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Metallic Flexible Duct
 Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts
 Duct Connectors
 Duct Access Doors; G
 Fire Dampers
 Manual Balancing Dampers; G

Diffusers
 Registers and Grilles

Rooftop Units; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Performance Tests; G
 Damper Acceptance Test; G

SD-07 Certificates

Bolts
 Ozone Depleting Substances

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Installation Instructions
 Operation and Maintenance Training

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

Fire Dampers; G
Manual Balancing Dampers; G

Rooftop Units; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Except as otherwise specified, approval of materials and equipment is based on manufacturer's published data.

- a. Where materials and equipment are specified to conform to the standards of the Underwriters Laboratories, the label of or listing with reexamination in **UL Bld Mat Dir**, and **UL 6** is acceptable as sufficient evidence that the items conform to Underwriters Laboratories requirements. In lieu of such label or listing, submit a written certificate from any nationally recognized testing agency, adequately equipped and competent to perform such services, stating that the items have been tested and that the units conform to the specified requirements. Outline methods of testing used by the specified agencies.
- b. Where materials or equipment are specified to be constructed or tested, or both, in accordance with the standards of the ASTM International (ASTM), the ASME International (ASME), or other standards, a manufacturer's certificate of compliance of each item is acceptable as proof of compliance.
- c. Conformance to such agency requirements does not relieve the item from compliance with other requirements of these specifications.
- d. Where products are specified to meet or exceed the specified energy efficiency requirement of FEMP-designated or **Energy Star** certified product categories, equipment selected shall have as a minimum the efficiency rating identified under "Energy-Efficient Products" at <http://www1.eere.energy.gov/femp/procurement>.

These specifications conform to the efficiency requirements as defined in Public Law **PL 109-58**, "Energy Policy Act of 2005" for federal procurement of energy-efficient products. Equipment having a lower efficiency than **Energy Star** or FEMP requirements may be specified if the designer determines the equipment to be more life-cycle cost effective using the life-cycle cost analysis methodology and procedure in 10 CFR 436.

1.4.1 Prevention of Corrosion

Protect metallic materials against corrosion. Manufacturer shall provide rust-inhibiting treatment and standard finish for the equipment enclosures. Do not use aluminum in contact with earth, and where connected to dissimilar metal. Protect aluminum by approved fittings, barrier material, or treatment. Ferrous parts such as anchors, bolts, braces, boxes, bodies, clamps, fittings, guards, nuts, pins, rods, shims, thimbles, washers, and miscellaneous parts not of corrosion-resistant steel or nonferrous materials shall be hot-dip galvanized in accordance with **ASTM A123/A123M** for exterior locations and cadmium-plated in conformance with **ASTM B766** for interior locations.

1.4.2 Asbestos Prohibition

Do not use asbestos and asbestos-containing products.

1.4.3 Ozone Depleting Substances Used as Refrigerants

Minimize releases of Ozone Depleting Substances (ODS) during repair, maintenance, servicing or disposal of appliances containing ODS's by complying with all applicable sections of 40 CFR 82 Part 82 Subpart F. Any person conducting repair, maintenance, servicing or disposal of equipment containing refrigerants must comply with the following:

- a. Do not knowingly vent or otherwise release into the environment, Class I or Class II substances used as a refrigerant.
- b. Do not open appliances without meeting the requirements of 40 CFR 82 Part 82.156 Subpart F, regarding required practices for evacuation and collection of refrigerant, and 40 CFR 82 Part 82.158 Subpart F, regarding standards of recycling and recovery equipment.
- c. Only persons who comply with 40 CFR 82 Part 82.161 Subpart F, regarding technician certification, can conduct work on appliances containing refrigerant.

In addition, provide copies of all applicable certifications to the Contracting Officer at least 14 calendar days prior to initiating maintenance, repair, servicing, dismantling or disposal of appliances, including:

- a. Proof of Technician Certification
- b. Proof of Equipment Certification for recovery or recycling equipment.
- c. Proof of availability of certified recovery or recycling equipment.

1.4.4 Use of Ozone Depleting Substances, Other than Refrigerants

The use of Class I or Class II ODS's listed as nonessential in 40 CFR 82 Part 82.66 Subpart C is prohibited. These prohibited materials and uses include:

- a. Any plastic party spray streamer or noise horn which is propelled by a chlorofluorocarbon
- b. Any cleaning fluid for electronic and photographic equipment which contains a chlorofluorocarbon; including liquid packaging, solvent wipes, solvent sprays, and gas sprays.
- c. Any plastic flexible or packaging foam product which is manufactured with or contains a chlorofluorocarbon, including, open cell foam, open cell rigid polyurethane poured foam, closed cell extruded polystyrene sheet foam, closed cell polyethylene foam and closed cell polypropylene foam except for flexible or packaging foam used in coaxial cabling.
- d. Any aerosol product or other pressurized dispenser which contains a chlorofluorocarbon, except for those listed in 40 CFR 82 Part 82.66 Subpart C.

Request a waiver if a facility requirement dictates that a prohibited

material is necessary to achieve project goals. Submit the waiver request in writing to the Contracting Officer. The waiver will be evaluated and dispositioned.

1.4.5 Detail Drawings

Submit detail drawings showing equipment layout, including assembly and installation details and electrical connection diagrams; ductwork layout showing the location of all supports and hangers, typical hanger details, gauge reinforcement, reinforcement spacing rigidity classification, and static pressure and seal classifications. Include any information required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and functions properly as a unit on the drawings and show equipment relationship to other parts of the work, including clearances required for operation and maintenance. Submit drawings showing bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations. Submit function designation of the equipment and any other requirements specified throughout this Section with the shop drawings.

1.4.6 Test Procedures

Submit proposed test procedures and test schedules for the ductwork leak test, and performance tests of systems, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored equipment at the jobsite from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Additionally, cap or plug all pipes until installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SUSTAINABILITY CRITERIA

For products in this section, where applicable and to extent allowed by performance criteria, provide and document the following:

2.1.1 Reduce Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) for sealants, coatings or adhesives

Low or no VOC's and no added urea formaldehyde for duct sealants, coatings or adhesives, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING paragraph REDUCE VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUNDS (VOC).

2.1.2 Ozone Depleting Substances for Refrigerants

Do not use any Ozone Depleting Substances (ODS) as Refrigerants per requirements in 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING paragraph OZONE DEPLETING SUBSTANCES.

2.2 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide components and equipment that are "standard products" of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of products that are of a similar material, design and workmanship. "Standard products" is defined as being in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years before bid opening, including applications of components and equipment under

similar circumstances and of similar size, satisfactorily completed by a product that is sold on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2-year field service record are acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. Provide equipment items that are supported by a service organization.

2.3 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Except for the fabricated duct, plenums and casings specified in paragraphs "Metal Ductwork" and "Plenums and Casings for Field-Fabricated Units", provide components and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacturing of products that are of a similar material, design and workmanship. This requirement applies to all equipment, including diffusers, registers, fire dampers, and balancing dampers. All energy consuming HVAC equipment must be Energy Star or Federal Energy management Program (FEMP) designated efficiency in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING paragraph ENERGY EFFICIENT EQUIPMENT.

- a. Standard products are defined as components and equipment that have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use in similar applications of similar size for at least two years before bid opening.
- b. Prior to this two year period, these standard products shall have been sold on the commercial market using advertisements in manufacturers' catalogs or brochures. These manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures shall have been copyrighted documents or have been identified with a manufacturer's document number.
- c. Provide equipment items that are supported by a service organization. In product categories covered by Energy Star or the Federal Energy Management Program, provide equipment that is listed on the Energy Star Qualified Products List or that meets or exceeds the FEMP-designated Efficiency Requirements.

2.4 IDENTIFICATION PLATES

In addition to standard manufacturer's identification plates, provide engraved laminated phenolic identification plates for each piece of mechanical equipment. Identification plates are to designate the function of the equipment. Submit designation with the shop drawings. Identification plates shall be three layers, black-white-black, engraved to show white letters on black background. Letters shall be upper case. Identification plates 1-1/2-inches high and smaller shall be 1/16-inch thick, with engraved lettering 1/8-inch high; identification plates larger than 1-1/2-inches high shall be 1/8-inch thick, with engraved lettering of suitable height. Identification plates 1-1/2-inches high and larger shall have beveled edges. Install identification plates using a compatible adhesive.

2.5 EQUIPMENT GUARDS AND ACCESS

Fully enclose or guard belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting setscrews, keys, and other rotating parts exposed to personnel contact according to OSHA requirements. Properly guard or cover with insulation of a type specified, high temperature equipment and piping exposed to contact by personnel or where it creates a potential fire hazard.

2.6 ELECTRICAL WORK

- a. Provide motors, controllers, integral disconnects, contactors, and controls with their respective pieces of equipment, except controllers indicated as part of motor control centers. Provide electrical equipment, including motors and wiring, as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown. For packaged equipment, include manufacturer provided controllers with the required monitors and timed restart.
- b. For single-phase motors, provide high-efficiency type, fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors, including motors that are part of a system, in accordance with NEMA MG 11. Integral size motors shall be the premium efficiency type in accordance with NEMA MG 1.
- c. For polyphase motors, provide squirrel-cage medium induction motors, including motors that are part of a system, and that meet the efficiency ratings for premium efficiency motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Select premium efficiency polyphase motors in accordance with NEMA MG 10.
- d. Provide motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 and of sufficient size to drive the load at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Provide motors rated for continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Provide motor duty that allows for maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Provide motor torque capable of accelerating the connected load within 20 seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Provide motor starters complete with thermal overload protection and other necessary appurtenances. Fit motor bearings with grease supply fittings and grease relief to outside of the enclosure.

2.7 ANCHOR BOLTS

Provide anchor bolts for equipment placed on concrete equipment pads or on concrete slabs. Bolts to be of the size and number recommended by the equipment manufacturer and located by means of suitable templates. Installation of anchor bolts shall not degrade the surrounding concrete.

2.8 PAINTING

Paint equipment units in accordance with approved equipment manufacturer's standards unless specified otherwise. Field retouch only if approved. Otherwise, return equipment to the factory for refinishing.

2.9 INDOOR AIR QUALITY

Provide equipment and components that comply with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.1 unless more stringent requirements are specified herein.

2.10 DUCT SYSTEMS

2.10.1 Metal Ductwork

Provide metal ductwork construction, including all fittings and components, that complies with **SMACNA 1966**, as supplemented and modified by this specification .

- a. Ductwork shall be constructed meeting the requirements for 2 inch system static pressure.
- b. Provide radius type elbows with a centerline radius of 1.5 times the width or diameter of the duct where space permits. Otherwise, elbows having a minimum radius equal to the width or diameter of the duct or square elbows with factory fabricated turning vanes are allowed.
- c. Provide ductwork that meets the requirements of Seal Class C. Provide ductwork in VAV systems upstream of the VAV boxes that meets the requirements of Seal Class A.
- d. Provide sealants that conform to fire hazard classification specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS and are suitable for the range of air distribution and ambient temperatures to which it is exposed. Do not use pressure sensitive tape as a sealant.
- e. Make spiral lock seam duct, and flat oval with duct sealant and lock with not less than 3 equally spaced drive screws or other approved methods indicated in **SMACNA 1966**. Apply the sealant to the exposed male part of the fitting collar so that the sealer is on the inside of the joint and fully protected by the metal of the duct fitting. Apply one brush coat of the sealant over the outside of the joint to at least 2 inch band width covering all screw heads and joint gap. Dents in the male portion of the slip fitting collar are not acceptable. Fabricate outdoor air intake ducts and plenums with watertight soldered or brazed joints and seams.

2.10.1.1 Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts

Use flexible duct runouts only where indicated. Runout length is indicated on the drawings, and is not to exceed 5 feet. Provide runouts that are preinsulated, factory fabricated, and that comply with **NFPA 90A** and **UL 181**. Provide either field or factory applied vapor barrier. Provide not less than 20 ounce glass fabric duct connectors coated on both sides with neoprene. Where coil induction or high velocity units are supplied with vertical air inlets, use a streamlined, vaned and mitered elbow transition piece for connection to the flexible duct or hose. Provide a die-stamped elbow and not a flexible connector as the last elbow to these units other than the vertical air inlet type. Insulated flexible connectors are allowed as runouts. Provide insulated material and vapor barrier that conform to the requirements of Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Do not expose the insulation material surface to the air stream.

2.10.1.2 General Service Duct Connectors

Provide a flexible duct connector approximately 6 inches in width where sheet metal connections are made to fans or where ducts of dissimilar metals are connected. For round/oval ducts, secure the flexible material by stainless steel or zinc-coated, iron clinch-type draw bands. For

rectangular ducts, install the flexible material locked to metal collars using normal duct construction methods. Provide a composite connector system that complies with [NFPA 701](#) and is classified as "flame-retardent fabrics" in [UL Bld Mat Dir](#).

2.10.1.3 Aluminum Ducts

[ASTM B209](#), alloy 3003-H14 for aluminum sheet and alloy 6061-T6 or equivalent strength for aluminum connectors and bar stock.

2.10.2 Duct Access Doors

Provide hinged access doors conforming to [SMACNA 1966](#) in ductwork and plenums where indicated and at all air flow measuring primaries, automatic dampers, fire dampers, coils, thermostats, and other apparatus requiring service and inspection in the duct system. Provide access doors upstream and downstream of air flow measuring primaries and heating and cooling coils. Provide doors that are a minimum [15 by 18 inches](#), unless otherwise shown. Where duct size does not accommodate this size door, make the doors as large as practicable. Equip doors [24 by 24 inches](#) or larger with fasteners operable from inside and outside the duct. Use insulated type doors in insulated ducts.

2.10.3 Fire Dampers

Use 1.5 hour rated fire dampers unless otherwise indicated. Provide fire dampers that conform to the requirements of [NFPA 90A](#) and [UL 555](#). Perform the fire damper test as outlined in [NFPA 90A](#). Provide a pressure relief door upstream of the fire damper. If the ductwork connected to the fire damper is to be insulated then provide a factory installed pressure relief damper. Provide automatic operating fire dampers with a dynamic rating suitable for the maximum air velocity and pressure differential to which it is subjected. Provide fire dampers approved for the specific application, and install according to their listing. Equip fire dampers with a steel sleeve or adequately sized frame installed in such a manner that disruption of the attached ductwork, if any, does not impair the operation of the damper. Equip sleeves or frames with perimeter mounting angles attached on both sides of the wall or floor opening. Construct ductwork in fire-rated floor-ceiling or roof-ceiling assembly systems with air ducts that pierce the ceiling of the assemblies in conformance with [UL Fire Resistance](#). Provide curtain type with damper blades out of the air stream fire dampers. Install dampers that do not reduce the duct or the air transfer opening cross-sectional area. Install dampers so that the centerline of the damper depth or thickness is located in the centerline of the wall, partition or floor slab depth or thickness. Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the installation details given in [SMACNA 1819](#) and in manufacturer's instructions for fire dampers. Perform acceptance testing of fire dampers according to paragraph Fire Damper Acceptance Test and [NFPA 90A](#).

2.10.4 Manual Balancing Dampers

Furnish manual balancing dampers with accessible operating mechanisms. Use chromium plated operators (with all exposed edges rounded) in finished portions of the building. Provide manual volume control dampers that are operated by locking-type quadrant operators. Install dampers that are 2 gauges heavier than the duct in which installed. Unless otherwise indicated, provide opposed blade type multileaf dampers with maximum blade width of 12 inches. Provide access doors or panels for all concealed

damper operators and locking setscrews. Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters not less than the thickness of the insulation when the locking-type quadrant operators for dampers are installed on ducts to be thermally insulated, to provide clearance between the duct surface and the operator. Stand-off mounting items shall be integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

2.10.5 Manual Balancing Dampers

- a. Furnish manual balancing dampers with accessible operating mechanisms. Use chromium plated operators (with all exposed edges rounded) in finished portions of the building. Provide manual volume control dampers that are operated by locking-type quadrant operators.
- b. Unless otherwise indicated, provide opposed blade type multileaf dampers with maximum blade width of 12 inches. Provide access doors or panels for all concealed damper operators and locking setscrews. Provide access doors or panels in hard ceilings, partitions and walls for access to all concealed damper operators and damper locking setscrews. Coordinate location of doors or panels with other affected contractors.
- c. Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters not less than the thickness of the insulation when the locking-type quadrant operators for dampers are installed on ducts to be thermally insulated, to provide clearance between the duct surface and the operator. Stand-off mounting items shall be integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

2.10.5.1 Square or Rectangular Dampers

2.10.5.1.1 Duct Height 12 inches and Less

2.10.5.1.1.1 Frames

Width	Height	Galvanized Steel Thickness	Length
Maximum 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Minimum 20 gauge	Minimum 3 inches
More than 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Minimum 16 gauge	Minimum 3 inches

2.10.5.1.1.2 Single Leaf Blades

Width	Height	Galvanized Steel Thickness	Length
Maximum 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Minimum 20 gauge	Minimum 3 inches
More than 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Minimum 16 gauge	Minimum 3 inches

2.10.5.1.1.3 Blade Axles

To support the blades of round dampers, provide galvanized steel shafts supporting the blade the entire duct diameter frame-to-frame. Axle shafts

shall extend through standoff bracket and hand quadrant.

Width	Height	Material	Square Shaft
Maximum 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Galvanized Steel	Minimum 3/8 inch
More than 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Galvanized Steel	Minimum 1/2 inch

2.10.5.1.1.4 Axle Bearings

Support the shaft on each end at the frames with shaft bearings. Shaft bearings configuration shall be a pressed fit to provide a tight joint between blade shaft and damper frame.

Width	Height	Material
Maximum 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	solid nylon, or equivalent solid plastic, or oil-impregnated bronze
More than 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	oil-impregnated bronze

2.10.5.1.1.5 Control Shaft/Hand Quadrant

Provide dampers with accessible locking-type control shaft/hand quadrant operators.

Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters for the locking-type quadrant operators on dampers installed on ducts to be thermally insulated. Stand-off distance shall be a minimum of 2 inches off the metal duct surface. Stand-off mounting items shall be integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

2.10.5.1.1.6 Finish

Mill Galvanized

2.10.5.1.2 Duct Height Greater than 12 inches

2.10.5.1.2.1 Dampers

Provide dampers with multi-leaf opposed-type blades.

2.10.5.1.2.2 Frames

Maximum 48 inches in height; maximum 48 inches in width; minimum of 16 gauge galvanized steel, minimum of 5 inches long.

2.10.5.1.2.3 Blades

Minimum of 16 gauge galvanized steel; 6 inch nominal width.

2.10.5.1.2.4 Blade Axles

To support the blades of round dampers, provide galvanized square steel shafts supporting the blade the entire duct diameter frame-to-frame. Axle shafts shall extend through standoff bracket and hand quadrant.

2.10.5.1.2.5 Axle Bearings

Support the shaft on each end at the frames with shaft bearings constructed of oil-impregnated bronze, or solid nylon, or a solid plastic equivalent to nylon. Shaft bearings configuration shall be a pressed fit to provide a tight joint between blade shaft and damper frame.

2.10.5.1.2.6 Blade Actuator

Minimum 1/2 inch diameter galvanized steel.

2.10.5.1.2.7 Blade Actuator Linkage

Mill Galvanized steel bar and crank plate with stainless steel pivots.

2.10.5.1.2.8 Control Shaft/Hand Quadrant

Provide dampers with accessible locking-type control shaft/hand quadrant operators.

Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters for the locking-type quadrant operators on dampers installed on ducts to be thermally insulated. Stand-off distance shall be a minimum of 2 inches off the metal duct surface. Stand-off mounting items shall be integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

2.10.5.1.2.9 Finish

Mill Galvanized

2.10.5.2 Round Dampers

2.10.5.2.1 Frames

Size	Galvanized Steel Thickness	Length
4 to 20 inches	Minimum 20 gauge	Minimum 6 inches
22 to 30 inches	Minimum 20 gauge	Minimum 10 inches
32 to 40 inches	Minimum 16 gauge	Minimum 10 inches

2.10.5.2.2 Blades

Size	Galvanized Steel Thickness
4 to 20 inches	Minimum 20 gauge
22 to 30 inches	Minimum 16 gauge
32 to 40 inches	Minimum 10 gauge

2.10.5.2.3 Blade Axles

To support the blades of round dampers, provide galvanized steel shafts supporting the blade the entire duct diameter frame-to-frame. Axle shafts shall extend through standoff bracket and hand quadrant.

Size	Shaft Size and Shape
4 to 20 inches	Minimum 3/8 inch square
22 to 30 inches	Minimum 1/2 inch square
32 to 40 inches	Minimum 3/4 inch square

2.10.5.2.4 Axle Bearings

Support the shaft on each end at the frames with shaft bearings constructed of oil-impregnated bronze, or solid nylon, or a solid plastic equivalent to nylon. Shaft bearings configuration shall be a pressed fit to provide a tight joint between blade shaft and damper frame.

Size	Material
4 to 20 inches	solid nylon, or equivalent solid plastic, or oil-impregnated bronze
22 to 30 inches	solid nylon, or equivalent solid plastic, or oil-impregnated bronze
32 to 40 inches	oil-impregnated bronze, or stainless steel sleeve bearing

2.10.5.2.5 Control Shaft/Hand Quadrant

Provide dampers with accessible locking-type control shaft/hand quadrant operators.

Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters for the locking-type quadrant operators on dampers installed on ducts to be thermally insulated. Stand-off distance shall be a minimum of 2 inches off the metal duct surface. Stand-off mounting items shall be integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

2.10.6 Air Deflectors (Volume Extractors) and Branch Connections

Provide air deflectors (volume extractors) at all duct mounted supply outlets, at takeoff or extension collars to supply outlets, at duct branch takeoff connections, and at 90 degree elbows, as well as at locations as indicated on the drawings or otherwise specified. Conical branch connections or 45 degree entry connections are allowed in lieu of deflectors for branch connections. Furnish all air deflectors (volume extractors), except those installed in 90 degree elbows, with an approved means of adjustment. Provide easily accessible means for adjustment inside the duct or from an adjustment with sturdy lock on the face of the duct. When installed on ducts to be thermally insulated, provide external adjustments with stand-off mounting brackets, integral with the adjustment device, to provide clearance between the duct surface and the adjustment device not less than the thickness of the thermal insulation. Provide factory-fabricated air deflectors consisting of curved turning vanes or louver blades designed to provide uniform air distribution and change of direction with minimum turbulence or pressure loss. Provide factory or field assembled air deflectors (volume extractors). Make adjustment from the face of the diffuser or by position adjustment and lock external to the duct. Provide stand-off brackets on insulated ducts as described herein. Provide fixed air deflectors (volume extractors), also called turning vanes, in 90 degree elbows.

2.10.7 Plenums and Casings for Field-Fabricated Units

2.10.7.1 Access Doors

Provide access doors in each section of the casing. Weld doorframes in place, gasket each door with neoprene, hinge with minimum of two brass hinges, and fasten with a minimum of two brass tension fasteners operable from inside and outside of the casing. Where possible, make doors 36 by 18 inches and locate them 18 inches above the floor. Where the space available does not accommodate doors of this size, use doors as large as the space accommodates. Swing doors so that fan suction or pressure holds doors in closed position, airtight. Provide a push-button station, located inside the casing, to stop the supply.

2.10.7.2 Factory-Fabricated Insulated Sheet Metal Panels

Factory-fabricated components are allowed for field-assembled units, provided all requirements specified for field-fabricated plenums and casings are met. Provide panels of modular design, pretested for structural strength, thermal control, condensation control, and acoustical control. Seal and insulate panel joints. Provide and gasket access doors to prevent air leakage. Provide panel construction that is not less than 20 gauge galvanized sheet steel, assembled with fasteners treated against corrosion. Provide standard length panels that deflect not more than 1/2 inch under operation. Construct details, including joint sealing, not specifically covered, as indicated in SMACNA 1966. Construct the plenums and casings to withstand the specified internal pressure of the air systems.

2.10.7.3 Duct Liner

Unless otherwise specified, duct liner is not permitted.

2.10.8 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles

Provide factory-fabricated units of steel or aluminum that distribute the specified quantity of air evenly over space intended without causing noticeable drafts, air movement faster than 50 fpm in occupied zone, or dead spots anywhere in the conditioned area. Provide outlets for diffusion, spread, throw, and noise level as required for specified performance. Certify performance according to ASHRAE 70. Provide sound rated and certified inlets and outlets according to ASHRAE 70. Provide sound power level as indicated. Provide diffusers and registers with volume damper with accessible operator, unless otherwise indicated; or if standard with the manufacturer, an automatically controlled device is acceptable. Provide opposed blade type volume dampers for all diffusers and registers, except linear slot diffusers. Provide linear slot diffusers with round or elliptical balancing dampers. Where the inlet and outlet openings are located less than 7 feet above the floor, protect them by a grille or screen according to NFPA 90A.

2.10.8.1 Diffusers

Provide diffuser types indicated. Furnish ceiling mounted units with anti-smudge devices, unless the diffuser unit minimizes ceiling smudging through design features. Provide diffusers with air deflectors of the type indicated. Provide air handling troffers or combination light and ceiling diffusers conforming to the requirements of UL Electrical Constructn for the interchangeable use as cooled or heated air supply diffusers or return air units. Install ceiling mounted units with rims tight against ceiling. Provide sponge rubber gaskets between ceiling and surface mounted diffusers for air leakage control. Provide suitable trim for flush mounted diffusers. For connecting the duct to diffuser, provide duct collar that is airtight and does not interfere with volume controller. Provide return or exhaust units that are similar to supply diffusers.

2.10.8.2 Registers and Grilles

Provide units that are four-way directional-control type, except provide return and exhaust registers that are fixed horizontal or vertical louver type similar in appearance to the supply register face. Furnish registers with sponge-rubber gasket between flanges and wall or ceiling. Install wall supply registers at least 6 inches below the ceiling unless otherwise indicated. Locate return and exhaust registers 6 inches above the floor unless otherwise indicated. Achieve four-way directional control by a grille face which can be rotated in 4 positions or by adjustment of horizontal and vertical vanes. Provide grilles as specified for registers, without volume control damper.

2.10.9 Bird Screens and Frames

Provide bird screens that conform to ASTM E2016, No. 2 mesh, aluminum or stainless steel. Provide "medium-light" rated aluminum screens.

2.11 ROOFTOP UNITS

2.11.1 General Description

Furnish as shown on plans, Packaged Systems, Singlezone Heating and Cooling Rooftop Units. Unit performance and electrical characteristics shall be per the job schedule.

Configuration: Fabricate as detailed on prints and drawings:

1. Return plenum/economizer section
2. Filter section
3. Cooling coil section
4. Supply fan section
5. Gas heating section
6. Condensing unit section

The complete unit shall be cULus listed. Gas furnace units shall be UL listed and classified in accordance with ANSI-Z 21.47.

Unit shall comply with ASHRAE 90.1 standards for efficiency and EER.

Each unit shall be specifically designed for outdoor rooftop application and include a weatherproof cabinet. Each unit shall be completely factory assembled and shipped in one piece. MPS packaged units shall be shipped fully charged with Refrigerant 410A and POE oil.

The unit shall undergo a complete factory run test prior to shipment. The factory test shall include final balancing of the supply fan assemblies, a refrigeration circuit run test, a unit control system operations checkout, a unit refrigerant leak test and a final unit inspection.

All units shall have decals and tags to indicate caution areas and aid unit service. Unit nameplates shall be fixed to the main control panel door. Electrical wiring diagrams shall be attached to the control panels. Installation, operating and maintenance bulletins and start-up forms shall be supplied with each unit.

Performance: All scheduled capacities and face areas are minimum accepted values. All scheduled amps, kW, and HP are maximum accepted values that allow scheduled capacity to be met.

Warranty: The manufacturer shall provide 12-month parts only warranty. Defective parts will be repaired or replaced during the warranty period at no charge. The warranty period shall commence at startup or six months after shipment, whichever occurs first.

The manufacturer shall provide extended 48-month, parts only, warranty on the compressor. Defective parts will be repaired or replaced during the warranty period at no charge. The warranty period shall commence at startup or six months after shipment, whichever occurs first.

2.11.2 Cabinet, Casing, and Frame

Panel construction shall be construction of galvanized steel with a baked powder coat finish. Insulation shall be a minimum of 1/2" thick fiberglass with a foil face surface. Panel design shall not have any exposed insulation edges.

Rooftop units shall have hinged access panels

2.11.3 Supply Fan

Supply fan shall be a double width double inlet (DWDI) forward curved centrifugal fan. The supply fan shall be mounted using solid-steel shafts and wheel hubs with mating keyways.

The fan shall be a double inlet, centrifugal wheel and shall rotate in permanently lubricated ball bearings. The wheel shall be made from steel with a corrosion resistant finish. The fan / motor assembly shall be statically and dynamically balanced.

The fan assembly shall have adjustable pitched sheaves on the motor. Bushings shall be used on all sheaves to allow for easy removal of the pulleys from the fan and motor shaft. Fixed bore pulleys fastened to the shaft by setscrews will not be allowed. The drives shall be selected with a 1.2 service factor.

All fan assemblies shall be statically and dynamically balanced at the factory, including a final trim balance, prior to shipment.

Fan motors shall be heavy-duty, 1800 rpm, open drip-proof (ODP). Motors efficiencies shall meet EPart efficiencies. Motors shall be mounted on an adjustable base that provides for proper alignment and belt tension adjustment.

The fan design shall allow for the fan and motor assembly to slide out of the rooftop unit for ease of servicing the equipment

2.11.4 Electrical

Unit wiring shall comply with NEC requirements and with all applicable UL standards. All electrical components shall be UL recognized where applicable. All wiring and electrical components provided with the unit shall be number and color-coded and labeled according to the electrical diagram provided for easy identification. The unit shall be provided with a factory wired weatherproof control panel. Unit shall have a single point power connection for main power connection. A terminal board shall be provided for low voltage control wiring. Each compressor and condenser fan motor shall be furnished with contactors and thermal overload protection. Supply fan motors shall have a factory installed and wired control contactor. Knockouts shall be provided in the bottom of the main control panels for field wiring entrance.

A single non-fused disconnect switch shall be provided for disconnecting electrical power at the unit. Disconnect switches shall be mounted internally to the control panel and operated by an externally mounted handle

2.11.5 Heating and Cooling Sections

Direct expansion (DX) cooling coils shall be fabricated of seamless high efficiency copper tubing that is mechanically expanded into high efficiency aluminum plate fins. Coils shall be a multi-row design. All coils shall be factory leak tested with high pressure air under water.

A stainless steel or non-corrosive polymer positively sloped drain pan shall be provided with the cooling coil. The drain pan shall extend beyond the leaving side of the coil and underneath the cooling coil connections. The drain pan shall have a minimum slope of 1/8" per foot to provide positive draining. The slope of the drain pan shall be in two directions

and comply with ASHRAE Standard 62.1 The drain pan shall be connected to a threaded drain connection extending through the unit base.

The rooftop unit shall include a natural gas heating section. The heating module shall be a tubular design with in-shot gas burners. The heat exchanger tubes shall be constructed of aluminized steel. The module shall have an induced draft fan that will maintain a negative pressure in the heat exchanger tubes for the removal of the flue gases.

The heater shall have an electronic direct spark ignition system with a remote flame sensor. The gas furnace shall have a flame rollout safety protection switches and a high temperature limit switch that will shut the gas valve off upon detection of improper burner manifold operation. The induced draft fan shall have an airflow safety switch that will prevent the gas valve from turning on in the event of no airflow in the flue chamber.

A factory-installed DDC control system shall control the gas heat furnace. The control system shall shut down the entire heating system after two unsuccessful attempts at start-up and require a manual reset. Field installed heating systems shall require a field UL/ETL certification. The manufacturer's rooftop unit UL/ETL certification shall cover the complete unit including the gas heating modules.

2.11.6 Filters

Unit shall be provided with a draw-through filter section. The filter rack shall be designed to accept a 2" filter. The unit design shall have a hinged access door for the filter section.

2.11.7 Outdoor/Return Air Section

Unit shall be provided with an outdoor air economizer section. The 0 to 100% outside air economizer section shall include outdoor, return, and exhaust air dampers. The outside and return air dampers shall be sized to handle 100% of the supply air volume. Damper blades shall be gasketed with side seals and jamb seals to provide an air leakage rate of 4 cfm / square foot of damper area at 1" differential pressure per ASHRAE 90.1 Energy Standard. Leakage rate to be tested in accordance with AMCA Standard 500. A barometric exhaust damper shall be provided to exhaust air out of the back of the unit. A bird screen shall be provided to prevent infiltration of rain and foreign materials. Exhaust damper blades shall be lined with vinyl gasketing on contact edges. Control of the dampers shall be by a factory installed direct coupled actuator. Damper actuator shall be of the modulating, spring return type. An adjustable enthalpy control shall be provided to sense the dry-bulb temperature and relative humidity of the outdoor air stream to determine if outdoor air is suitable for "free" cooling. If outdoor air is suitable for "free" cooling, the outdoor air dampers shall modulate in response to the unit's temperature control system.

2.11.8 Condensing Section

Condenser coils shall be multi-row and fabricated from high efficiency rifled copper tubing mechanically bonded to high efficiency aluminum fins. Each condenser coil shall be factory leak tested with high-pressure air under water. Condenser coils shall be protected from incidental contact to coil fins by a coil guard.

Condenser fans shall be direct drive, axial type designed for low tip speed

and vertical air discharge. Condenser fan rpm shall be 1140 rpm maximum. Fan blades shall be constructed of steel and riveted to a steel center hub. Condenser fan motors shall be heavy-duty, non-reversing type with permanently lubricated ball bearing and thermal protection. Motor design shall be totally enclosed air over (TEAO) to protect the motors from rain and damage by water.

Refrigeration circuit shall be complete with a thermal expansion valve and liquid line filter drier.

Refrigerant gauge ports shall be external to the cabinet for both low and high pressure for ease of service.

Each unit shall have heavy-duty scroll compressors. Each compressor shall be complete with gauge ports, anti-slug protection, motor overload protection and a time delay to prevent short cycling and simultaneous starting of compressors following a power failure. Compressors shall be isolated with resilient rubber isolators to decrease noise transmission. Each unit shall hot gas reheat and humidity controls.

2.11.9 Roof Curb

A prefabricated 14-gauge galvanized steel, mounting curb shall be provided for field assembly on the roof decking prior to unit shipment. The roof curb shall be a full perimeter type with complete perimeter support of the air handling section and condensing section. The curb shall be a minimum of 14" high and include a nominal 2" x 4" wood nailing strip. Gasket shall be provided for field mounting between the unit base and roof curb. Curb shall be insulated.

2.11.10 Controls (DDC)

Provide a completed integrated microprocessor based Direct Digital Control (DDC) system to control all unit functions including temperature control, monitoring, unit safety protection, and diagnostics. This system shall consist of all required temperature sensors, pressure sensors, controller and keypad/display operator interface.

The stand-alone DDC controllers shall not be dependent on communications with any on-site remote PC or master control panel for proper unit operation. The microprocessor shall maintain existing set points and operate alone if the unit loses either direct connect or network communications. The microprocessor memory shall be protected from voltage fluctuations as well as any extended power failures. No settings shall be lost, even during extended power shutdowns.

The DDC control system shall permit starting and stopping of the unit locally or remotely. The control system shall be capable of providing a remote alarm indication. The unit control system shall provide for outside air damper actuation, emergency shutdown, remote heat enable/disable, remote cool enable/disable, heat indication, cool indication, and fan operation.

The keypad interface shall allow convenient navigation and access to all control functions. The unit keypad/display character format shall be 2 lines x 16 characters. For ease of service, the display format shall be English language readout. The user interaction with the display shall provide the following information as a minimum:

1. Return air temperature
2. Supply air temperature
3. Outdoor air temperature
4. Space air temp
5. Dirty filter indication
6. Airflow verification
7. Cooling status
8. Unit status
9. Last 10 active alarms and/or faults

The user interaction with the keypad shall provide the following setpoints as a minimum:

Controls Mode

1. Standby
2. Heat/cool
3. Cool only
4. Heat only
5. Fan only

Occupancy Mode

1. Occupied
2. Unoccupied
3. Tenant override

Night setback and setup space temperature

2.11.11 Communication Feature

The DDC control system shall be factory configured for incorporation into an independent Building Automation System (BAS). Provide field installed communication modules to configure DDC unit controls for interoperability with an independent BAS. Communication module shall support BACnet communication protocols.

BACnet communications shall conform to the BACnet Standard, ANSI/ASHRE Standard 135.

The building automation system shall be able to interact with rooftop unit controllers in any of the following ways

- * Sets the unit's operating and occupancy modes.

- * Monitors all controller inputs, outputs, set points, parameters, and alarms.
- * Sets controller set points and parameters.
- * Clears alarms.
- * Sets the heat/cool changeover temperature.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- a. Install materials and equipment in accordance with the requirements of the contract drawings and approved [manufacturer's installation instructions](#). Accomplish installation by workers skilled in this type of work. Perform installation so that there is no degradation of the designed fire ratings of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors.
- b. No installation is permitted to block or otherwise impede access to any existing machine or system. Install all hinged doors to swing open a minimum of 120 degrees. Provide an area in front of all access doors that clears a minimum of [3 feet](#). In front of all access doors to electrical circuits, clear the area the minimum distance to energized circuits as specified in OSHA Standards, part 1910.333 (Electrical-Safety Related work practices) and an additional [3 feet](#).
- c. Except as otherwise indicated, install emergency switches and alarms in conspicuous locations. Mount all indicators, to include gauges, meters, and alarms in order to be easily visible by people in the area.

3.2.1 Condensate Drain Lines

Provide water seals in the condensate drain from all units. Provide a depth of each seal of [2 inches plus the number of inches, measured in water gauge](#), of the total static pressure rating of the unit to which the drain is connected. Provide water seals that are constructed of 2 tees and an appropriate U-bend with the open end of each tee plugged. Provide pipe cap or plug cleanouts where indicated.

3.2.2 Access Panels

Install access panels for concealed valves, vents, controls, dampers, and items requiring inspection or maintenance of sufficient size, and locate them so that the concealed items are easily serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Provide access panels as specified in [Section 05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS](#).

3.2.3 Flexible Duct

Install pre-insulated flexible duct in accordance with the latest printed instructions of the manufacturer to ensure a vapor tight joint. Provide hangers, when required to suspend the duct, of the type recommended by the duct manufacturer and set at the intervals recommended.

3.2.4 Metal Ductwork

Install according to **SMACNA 1966** unless otherwise indicated. Install duct supports for sheet metal ductwork according to **SMACNA 1966**, unless otherwise specified. Do not use friction beam clamps indicated in **SMACNA 1966**. Anchor risers on high velocity ducts in the center of the vertical run to allow ends of riser to move due to thermal expansion. Erect supports on the risers that allow free vertical movement of the duct. Attach supports only to structural framing members and concrete slabs. Do not anchor supports to metal decking unless a means is provided and approved for preventing the anchor from puncturing the metal decking. Where supports are required between structural framing members, provide suitable intermediate metal framing. Where C-clamps are used, provide retainer clips.

3.2.5 Dust Control

To prevent the accumulation of dust, debris and foreign material during construction, perform temporary dust control protection. Protect the distribution system (supply and return) with temporary seal-offs at all inlets and outlets at the end of each day's work. Keep temporary protection in place until system is ready for startup.

3.2.6 Insulation

Provide thickness and application of insulation materials for ductwork, piping, and equipment according to Section **23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS**. Insulate outdoor air intake ducts and plenums up to the point where the outdoor air reaches the conditioning unit.

3.2.7 Duct Test Holes

Provide holes with closures or threaded holes with plugs in ducts and plenums as indicated or where necessary for the use of pitot tube in balancing the air system. Plug insulated duct at the duct surface, patched over with insulation and then marked to indicate location of test hole if needed for future use.

3.2.8 Rooftop Unit Mounting

Provide foamed **1/2 inch** thick, closed-cell, flexible elastomer insulation to cover width of roof curb mounting flange. Where wood nailers are used, predrill holes for fasteners.

3.2.9 Power Transmission Components Adjustment

Test V-belts and sheaves for proper alignment and tension prior to operation and after 72 hours of operation at final speed. Uniformly load belts on drive side to prevent bouncing. Make alignment of direct driven couplings to within 50 percent of manufacturer's maximum allowable range of misalignment.

3.3 CUTTING AND PATCHING

Install work in such a manner and at such time that a minimum of cutting and patching of the building structure is required. Make holes in exposed locations, in or through existing floors, by drilling and smooth by sanding. Use of a jackhammer is permitted only where specifically approved. Make holes through masonry walls to accommodate sleeves with an iron pipe masonry core saw.

3.4 CLEANING

Thoroughly clean surfaces of piping and equipment that have become covered with dirt, plaster, or other material during handling and construction before such surfaces are prepared for final finish painting or are enclosed within the building structure. Before final acceptance, clean mechanical equipment, including piping, ducting, and fixtures, and free from dirt, grease, and finger marks. When the work area is in an occupied space such as office, laboratory or warehouse protect all furniture and equipment from dirt and debris. Incorporate housekeeping for field construction work which leaves all furniture and equipment in the affected area free of construction generated dust and debris; and, all floor surfaces vacuum-swept clean.

3.5 PENETRATIONS

Provide sleeves and prepared openings for duct mains, branches, and other penetrating items, and install during the construction of the surface to be penetrated. Cut sleeves flush with each surface. Place sleeves for round duct **15 inches** and smaller. Build framed, prepared openings for round duct larger than **15 inches** and square, rectangular or oval ducts. Sleeves and framed openings are also required where grilles, registers, and diffusers are installed at the openings. Provide **one inch** clearance between penetrating and penetrated surfaces except at grilles, registers, and diffusers. Pack spaces between sleeve or opening and duct or duct insulation with mineral fiber conforming with **ASTM C553**, Type 1, Class B-2.

3.5.1 Sleeves

Fabricate sleeves, except as otherwise specified or indicated, from **20 gauge** thick mill galvanized sheet metal. Where sleeves are installed in bearing walls or partitions, provide black steel pipe conforming with **ASTM A53/A53M**, Schedule 20.

3.5.2 Framed Prepared Openings

Fabricate framed prepared openings from **20 gauge** galvanized steel, unless otherwise indicated.

3.5.3 Insulation

Provide duct insulation in accordance with Section **23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS** continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except firewall penetrations. Terminate duct insulation at fire dampers and flexible connections. For duct handling air at or below **60 degrees F**, provide insulation continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air.

3.5.4 Closure Collars

Provide closure collars of a minimum 4 inches wide, unless otherwise indicated, for exposed ducts and items on each side of penetrated surface, except where equipment is installed. Install collar tight against the surface and fit snugly around the duct or insulation. Grind sharp edges smooth to prevent damage to penetrating surface. Fabricate collars for round ducts 15 inches in diameter or less from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Fabricate collars for square and rectangular ducts, or round ducts with minimum dimension over 15 inches from 18 gauge galvanized steel. Fabricate collars for square and rectangular ducts with a maximum side of 15 inches or less from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Install collars with fasteners a maximum of 6 inches on center. Attach to collars a minimum of 4 fasteners where the opening is 12 inches in diameter or less, and a minimum of 8 fasteners where the opening is 20 inches in diameter or less.

3.5.5 Firestopping

Where ducts pass through fire-rated walls, fire partitions, and fire rated chase walls, seal the penetration with fire stopping materials as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.6 FIELD PAINTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except clean to bare metal on metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F. Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Provide aluminum or light gray finish coat.

3.6.1 Temperatures less than 120 degrees F

Immediately after cleaning, apply one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil per coat to metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS

Provide identification tags made of brass, engraved laminated plastic, or engraved anodized aluminum, indicating service and item number on all valves and dampers. Provide tags that are 1-3/8 inch minimum diameter with stamped or engraved markings. Make indentations black for reading clarity. Attach tags to valves with No. 12 AWG 0.0808-inch diameter corrosion-resistant steel wire, copper wire, chrome-plated beaded chain or plastic straps designed for that purpose.

3.8 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

The requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC. Begin testing, adjusting, and balancing only when the air supply and distribution, including controls, has been completed, with the exception of performance tests.

3.9 PERFORMANCE TESTS

After testing, adjusting, and balancing is complete as specified, test each system as a whole to see that all items perform as integral parts of the system and temperatures and conditions are evenly controlled throughout the building. Record the testing during the applicable season. Make corrections and adjustments as necessary to produce the conditions indicated or specified. Conduct capacity tests and general operating tests by an experienced engineer. Provide tests that cover a period of not less than 1 day for each system and demonstrate that the entire system is functioning according to the specifications. Make coincidental chart recordings at points indicated on the drawings for the duration of the time period and record the temperature at space thermostats or space sensors, the humidity at space humidistats or space sensors and the ambient temperature and humidity in a shaded and weather protected area.

Submit test reports for the performance tests in booklet form, upon completion of testing. Document phases of tests performed including initial test summary, repairs/adjustments made, and final test results in the reports.

3.10 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Wipe equipment clean, with no traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots. Provide temporary filters prior to startup of all fans that are operated during construction, and install new filters after all construction dirt has been removed from the building, and the ducts, plenums, casings, and other items specified have been vacuum cleaned. Maintain system in this clean condition until final acceptance. Properly lubricate bearings with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Tighten belts to proper tension. Adjust control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment to setting indicated or directed. Adjust fans to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions. Maintain all equipment installed under the contract until close out documentation is received, the project is completed and the building has been documented as beneficially occupied.

3.11 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

3.11.1 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Submit six manuals at least 2 weeks prior to field training.

3.11.2 Operation And Maintenance Training

Conduct a training course for the members of the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. Make the training period consist of a total of 8 hours of normal working time and start it after all work specified herein is functionally completed and the Performance Tests have been approved. Conduct field instruction that covers all of the items contained in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations. Submit the proposed On-site Training schedule concurrently with the Operation and Maintenance Manuals and at least 14 days prior to conducting the training course.

3.12 BALANCING

3.12.1 Work Description

The work includes duct air and testing, adjusting, and balancing (TAB) of new heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air distribution systems.

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the TAB procedural standard recommended by the TAB trade association that approved the TAB Firm's qualifications. Comply with requirements of AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 (TABB) as supplemented and modified by this specification section. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB procedural standards are considered mandatory.

3.12.2 Air Distribution Systems

Balance systems (TAB) in compliance with this section.

3.12.3 Qualifications

a. TAB Firm

The TAB Firm must be either a member of AABC or certified by the NEBB or the TABB and certified in all categories and functions where measurements or performance are specified.

Certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the firm loses subject certification during this period, the Contractor must immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Firm for approval. Any firm that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections to be performed by the TAB Firm will be considered invalid if the TAB Firm loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by an approved successor.

These TAB services are to assist the prime Contractor in performing the quality oversight for which it is responsible. The TAB Firm must be a prime subcontractor of the Contractor and be financially and corporately independent of the mechanical subcontractor, reporting directly to and paid by the Contractor.

b. TAB Specialist

The TAB Specialist must be either a member of AABC, an experienced technician of the Firm certified by the NEBB, or a Supervisor certified by the TABB. The certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the Specialist loses subject certification during this period, immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Specialist for approval. Any individual that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections performed by the TAB Specialist will be considered invalid if the TAB Specialist loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by the approved successor.

3.12.4 Instrument Calibration Certificates

It is the responsibility of the TAB firm to provide instrumentation that meets the minimum requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved for use on a project. Instrumentation must be in proper operating condition and must be applied in accordance with the instrumentation's manufacturer recommendations.

All instrumentation must bear a valid NIST traceable calibration certificate during field work and during government acceptance testing. All instrumentation must be calibrated within no later than one year of the date of TAB work or government acceptance testing field work.

3.12.5 TAB Standard

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved, i.e., AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 unless otherwise specified herein. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB Standard are considered mandatory. Use the provisions of the TAB Standard, including checklists, report forms, etc., as nearly as practical, to satisfy the Contract requirements. Use the TAB Standard for all aspects of TAB, including qualifications for the TAB Firm and Specialist and calibration of TAB instruments. Where the instrument manufacturer calibration recommendations are more stringent than those listed in the TAB Standard, adhere to the manufacturer's recommendations.

All quality assurance provisions of the TAB Standard such as performance guarantees are part of this contract. For systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard, TAB procedures must be developed by the TAB Specialist. Where new procedures, requirements, etc., applicable to the Contract requirements have been published or adopted by the body responsible for the TAB Standard used (AABC, NEBB, or TABB), the requirements and recommendations contained in these procedures and requirements are considered mandatory, including the latest requirements of ASHRAE 62.1.

3.12.6 Test Reports

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 07 00

THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS
02/13

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only. At the discretion of the Government, the manufacturer of any material supplied will be required to furnish test reports pertaining to any of the tests necessary to assure compliance with the standard or standards referenced in this specification.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A580/A580M (2016) Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Wire

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM C1136 (2017a) Standard Specification for Flexible, Low Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation

ASTM C1710 (2011) Standard Guide for Installation of Flexible Closed Cell Preformed Insulation in Tube and Sheet Form

ASTM C195 (2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement

ASTM C450 (2008) Standard Practice for Fabrication of Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers for NPS Piping, and Vessel Lagging

ASTM C552 (2017) Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation

ASTM C647 (2008; R 2013) Properties and Tests of Mastics and Coating Finishes for Thermal Insulation

ASTM C795 (2008; R 2013) Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel

ASTM C916 (2014) Standard Specification for

Adhesives for Duct Thermal Insulation

- ASTM C920 (2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
- ASTM C921 (2010) Standard Practice for Determining the Properties of Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation
- ASTM D2863 (2017a) Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index)
- ASTM D5590 (2000; R 2010; E 2012) Standard Test Method for Determining the Resistance of Paint Films and Related Coatings to Fungal Defacement by Accelerated Four-Week Agar Plate Assay
- ASTM D882 (2012) Tensile Properties of Thin Plastic Sheeting
- ASTM E2231 (2015) Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics
- ASTM E84 (2018) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
- ASTM E96/E96M (2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

FM GLOBAL (FM)

- FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

MIDWEST INSULATION CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (MICA)

- MICA Insulation Stds (8th Ed) National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

- NFPA 90A (2018) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
- NFPA 90B (2018) Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems

TECHNICAL ASSOCIATION OF THE PULP AND PAPER INDUSTRY (TAPPI)

- TAPPI T403 OM (2010) Bursting Strength of Paper

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-A-24179 (1969; Rev A; Am 2 1980; Notice 1 1987) Adhesive, Flexible Unicellular-Plastic Thermal Insulation

MIL-A-3316 (1987; Rev C; Am 2 1990) Adhesives, Fire-Resistant, Thermal Insulation

MIL-PRF-19565 (1988; Rev C) Coating Compounds, Thermal Insulation, Fire- and Water-Resistant, Vapor-Barrier

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 723 (2008; Reprint Dec 2017) Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

UL 94 (2013; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 General

Provide field-applied insulation and accessories on mechanical systems as specified herein; factory-applied insulation is specified under the piping, duct or equipment to be insulated.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval.

Submit the two SD types, SD-03 Product Data, and SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions at the same time for each system.

SD-03 Product Data

Duct Insulation Systems; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Duct Insulation Systems; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Installer Qualification

Qualified installers shall have successfully completed three or more similar type jobs within the last 5 years.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Materials shall be delivered in the manufacturer's unopened containers. Materials delivered and placed in storage shall be provided with protection from weather, humidity, dirt, dust and other contaminants. The Contracting Officer may reject insulation material and supplies that become dirty, dusty, wet, or contaminated by some other means. Packages or standard containers of insulation, jacket material, cements, adhesives, and coatings delivered for use, and samples required for approval shall have manufacturer's stamp or label attached giving the name of the manufacturer and brand, and a description of the material, date codes, and approximate shelf life (if applicable). Insulation packages and containers shall be asbestos free.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide materials which are the standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Submit a complete list of materials, including manufacturer's descriptive technical literature, performance data, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. The product number, k-value, thickness and furnished accessories including adhesives, sealants and jackets for each mechanical system requiring insulation shall be included. The product data must be copyrighted, have an identifying or publication number, and shall have been published prior to the issuance date of this solicitation. Materials furnished under this section shall be submitted together in a booklet.

2.1.1 Insulation System

Provide insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA National Insulation Standards plates as supplemented by this specification. Provide field-applied insulation for heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air distribution systems and piping systems that are located within, on, under, and adjacent to buildings; and for plumbing systems. Provide CFC and HCFC free insulation.

2.1.2 Surface Burning Characteristics

Unless otherwise specified, insulation must have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Flame spread, and smoke developed indexes, shall be determined by [ASTM E84](#) or [UL 723](#). Test insulation in the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Prepare and mount test specimens according to [ASTM E2231](#).

2.2 MATERIALS

Provide insulation that meets or exceed the requirements of [ASHRAE 90.1 - IP](#). Insulation exterior shall be cleanable, grease resistant, non-flaking and non-peeling. Materials shall be compatible and shall not contribute to corrosion, soften, or otherwise attack surfaces to which applied in either wet or dry state. Materials to be used on stainless steel surfaces shall meet [ASTM C795](#) requirements. Calcium silicate shall not be used on chilled or cold water systems. Materials shall be asbestos free. Provide product

recognized under [UL 94](#) (if containing plastic) and listed in [FM APP GUIDE](#).

2.2.1 Adhesives

2.2.1.1 Acoustical Lining Insulation Adhesive

Adhesive shall be a nonflammable, fire-resistant adhesive conforming to [ASTM C916](#), Type I.

2.2.1.2 Mineral Fiber Insulation Cement

Cement shall be in accordance with [ASTM C195](#).

2.2.1.3 Lagging Adhesive

Lagging is the material used for [thermal insulation](#), especially around a cylindrical object. This may include the insulation as well as the cloth/material covering the insulation. To resist mold/mildew, lagging adhesive shall meet [ASTM D5590](#) with 0 growth rating. Lagging adhesives shall be nonflammable and fire-resistant and shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Adhesive shall be [MIL-A-3316](#), Class 1, pigmented white and be suitable for bonding fibrous glass cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for bonding cotton brattice cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for sealing edges of and bonding glass tape to joints of fibrous glass board; for bonding lagging cloth to thermal insulation; or Class 2 for attaching fibrous glass insulation to metal surfaces. Lagging adhesives shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for pipe and duct insulation.

2.2.1.4 Contact Adhesive

Adhesives may be any of, but not limited to, the neoprene based, rubber based, or elastomeric type that have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). The adhesive shall not adversely affect, initially or in service, the insulation to which it is applied, nor shall it cause any corrosive effect on metal to which it is applied. Any solvent dispersing medium or volatile component of the adhesive shall have no objectionable odor and shall not contain any benzene or carbon tetrachloride. The dried adhesive shall not emit nauseous, irritating, or toxic volatile matters or aerosols when the adhesive is heated to any temperature up to [212 degrees F](#). The dried adhesive shall be nonflammable and fire resistant. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with [MIL-A-24179](#), Type II, Class I. Provide product listed in [FM APP GUIDE](#).

2.2.2 Caulking

[ASTM C920](#), Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use A.

2.2.3 Corner Angles

Nominal [0.016 inch](#) aluminum [1 by 1 inch](#) with factory applied kraft backing. Aluminum shall be [ASTM B209](#), Alloy 3003, 3105, or 5005.

2.2.4 Fittings

Fabricated Fittings are the prefabricated fittings for flexible elastomeric

pipe insulation systems in accordance with [ASTM C1710](#). Together with the flexible elastomeric tubes, they provide complete system integrity for retarding heat gain and controlling condensation drip from chilled-water and refrigeration systems. Flexible elastomeric, fabricated fittings provide thermal protection (0.25 k) and condensation resistance (0.05 Water Vapor Transmission factor). For satisfactory performance, properly installed protective vapor retarder/barriers and vapor stops shall be used on high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications to reduce movement of moisture through or around the insulation to the colder interior surface.

2.2.5 Finishing Cement

[ASTM C450](#): Mineral fiber hydraulic-setting thermal insulating and finishing cement. All cements that may come in contact with Austenitic stainless steel must comply with [ASTM C795](#).

2.2.6 Fibrous Glass Cloth and Glass Tape

Fibrous glass cloth, with 20X20 maximum mesh size, and glass tape shall have maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Tape shall be 4 inch wide rolls. Class 3 tape shall be 4.5 ounces/square yard. Elastomeric Foam Tape: Black vapor-retarder foam tape with acrylic adhesive containing an anti-microbial additive.

2.2.7 Staples

Outward clinching type monel.

2.2.8 Vapor Retarder Required

[ASTM C921](#), Type I, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces **except concealed ductwork**, where a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Minimum tensile strength, 35 pounds/inch width. [ASTM C921](#), Type II, minimum puncture resistance 25 Beach units, tensile strength minimum 20 pounds/inch width. Jackets used on insulation exposed in finished areas shall have white finish suitable for painting without sizing. Based on the application, insulation materials that require manufacturer or fabricator applied pipe insulation jackets are cellular glass, when all joints are sealed with a vapor barrier mastic, and mineral fiber. All non-metallic jackets shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Flexible elastomerics require (in addition to vapor barrier skin) vapor retarder jacketing for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

2.2.8.1 White Vapor Retarder All Service Jacket (ASJ)

ASJ is for use on hot/cold pipes, ducts, or equipment indoors or outdoors if covered by a suitable protective jacket. The product shall meet all physical property and performance requirements of [ASTM C1136](#), Type I, except the burst strength shall be a minimum of 85 psi. [ASTM D2863](#) Limited Oxygen Index (LOI) shall be a minimum of 31.

In addition, neither the outer exposed surface nor the inner-most surface contacting the insulation shall be paper or other moisture-sensitive material. The outer exposed surface shall be white and have an emittance of not less than 0.80. The outer exposed surface shall be paintable.

2.2.8.2 Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier Mastic Coatings

2.2.8.2.1 Vapor Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be self adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed white jacket for use on hot/cold pipes. Permeability shall be less than 0.02 when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M. Products shall meet UL 723 or ASTM E84 flame and smoke requirements and shall be UV resistant.

2.2.8.2.2 Vapor Retarder

The vapor retarder coating shall be fire and water resistant and appropriately selected for either outdoor or indoor service. Color shall be white. The water vapor permeance of the compound shall be 0.013 perms or less at 43 mils dry film thickness as determined according to procedure B of ASTM E96/E96M utilizing apparatus described in ASTM E96/E96M. The coating shall be nonflammable, fire resistant type. To resist mold/mildew, coating shall meet ASTM D5590 with 0 growth rating. Coating shall meet MIL-PRF-19565 Type II (if selected for indoor service) and be Qualified Products Database listed. All other application and service properties shall be in accordance with ASTM C647.

2.2.8.3 Laminated Film Vapor Retarder

ASTM C1136, Type I, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork; where Type II, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Vapor retarder shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flexible Elastomeric exterior foam with factory applied UV Jacket. Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and an excellent WVT rate.

2.2.8.4 Polyvinylidene Chloride (PVDC) Film Vapor Retarder

The PVDC film vapor retarder shall have a maximum moisture vapor transmission of 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance of 150 Beach units, a minimum tensile strength in any direction of 30 lb/inch when tested in accordance with ASTM D882, and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.2.8.5 Polyvinylidene Chloride Vapor Retarder Adhesive Tape

Requirements must meet the same as specified for Laminated Film Vapor Retarder above.

2.2.8.6 Vapor Barrier/Weather Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be greater than 3 ply self adhesive laminate -white vapor barrier jacket- superior performance (less than 0.0000 permeability when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M). Vapor barrier shall meet UL 723 or ASTM E84 25 flame and 50 smoke requirements; and UV resistant. Minimum burst strength 185 psi in accordance with TAPPI T403 OM. Tensile strength 68 lb/inch width (PSTC-1000). Tape shall be as specified for laminated film vapor barrier above.

2.2.9 Vapor Retarder Not Required

ASTM C921, Type II, Class D, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except ductwork, where Type IV, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.10, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Jacket shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.2.10 Wire

Soft annealed ASTM A580/A580M Type 302, 304 or 316 stainless steel, 16 or 18 gauge.

2.2.11 Insulation Bands

Insulation bands shall be 1/2 inch wide; 26 gauge stainless steel.

2.2.12 Sealants

Sealants shall be chosen from the butyl polymer type, the styrene-butadiene rubber type, or the butyl type of sealants. Sealants shall have a maximum permeance of 0.02 perms based on Procedure B for ASTM E96/E96M, and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.3 DUCT INSULATION SYSTEMS

2.3.1 Factory Applied Insulation

Provide factory-applied ASTM C552, cellular glass thermal insulation according to manufacturer's recommendations for insulation with insulation manufacturer's standard reinforced fire-retardant vapor barrier, with identification of installed thermal resistance (R) value and out-of-package R value.

2.3.1.1 Blanket Insulation

Calculate minimum thickness in accordance with ASHRAE 90.1 - IP.

2.3.2 Duct Insulation Jackets

2.3.2.1 All-Purpose Jacket

Provide insulation with insulation manufacturer's standard reinforced fire-retardant jacket with or without integral vapor barrier as required by the service. In exposed locations, provide jacket with a white surface suitable for field painting.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION - GENERAL

Insulation shall only be applied to unheated and uncooled piping and equipment. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall not be compressed at joists, studs, columns, ducts, hangers, etc. The insulation shall not pull apart after a one hour period; any insulation found to pull apart after one hour, shall be replaced.

3.1.1 Installation

Except as otherwise specified, material shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. Insulation materials shall not be applied until tests specified in other sections of this specification are completed. Material such as rust, scale, dirt and moisture shall be removed from surfaces to receive insulation. Insulation shall be kept clean and dry. Insulation shall not be removed from its shipping containers until the day it is ready to use and shall be returned to like containers or equally protected from dirt and moisture at the end of each workday. Insulation that becomes dirty shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to use. If insulation becomes wet or if cleaning does not restore the surfaces to like new condition, the insulation will be rejected, and shall be immediately removed from the jobsite. Joints shall be staggered on multi layer insulation. Mineral fiber thermal insulating cement shall be mixed with demineralized water when used on stainless steel surfaces. Insulation, jacketing and accessories shall be installed in accordance with **MICA Insulation Stds** plates except where modified herein or on the drawings.

3.1.2 Firestopping

Where **pipes** and **ducts** pass through fire walls, fire partitions, above grade floors, and fire rated chase walls, the penetration shall be sealed with fire stopping materials. The protection of ducts at point of passage through firewalls must be in accordance with **NFPA 90A** and/or **NFPA 90B**. All other penetrations, such as piping, conduit, and wiring, through firewalls must be protected with a material or system of the same hourly rating that is listed by UL, FM, or a NRTL.

3.1.3 **Pipes/Ducts/Equipment** That Require Insulation

Insulation is required on all **supply air ducts** except for omitted items as specified.

3.2 **DUCT INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION**

Except for oven hood exhaust duct insulation, corner angles shall be installed on external corners of insulation on ductwork in exposed finished spaces before covering with jacket. Air conditioned spaces shall be defined as those spaces directly supplied with cooled conditioned air (or provided with a cooling device such as a fan-coil unit) and heated conditioned air (or provided with a heating device such as a unit heater, radiator or convector).

3.2.1 Duct Insulation Minimum Thickness

Duct insulation minimum thickness in accordance with Table 4.

Table 4 - Minimum Duct Insulation (inches)	
Cold Air Ducts	2.0
Relief Ducts	1.5
Fresh Air Intake Ducts	1.5

Table 4 - Minimum Duct Insulation (inches)	
Warm Air Ducts	2.0
Relief Ducts	1.5
Fresh Air Intake Ducts	1.5

3.2.2 Insulation and Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier for Cold Air Duct

Insulation and vapor retarder/vapor barrier shall be provided for the following cold air ducts and associated equipment.

- a. Supply ducts.
- b. Flexible run-outs
- c. Fresh air intake ducts.
- d. Ducts exposed to weather.

Insulation for rectangular ducts shall be flexible type where concealed, minimum density 3/4 pcf, and rigid type where exposed, minimum density 3 pcf. Insulation for both concealed or exposed round/oval ducts shall be flexible type, minimum density 3/4 pcf or a semi rigid board, minimum density 3 pcf, formed or fabricated to a tight fit, edges beveled and joints tightly butted and staggered. Insulation for all exposed ducts shall be provided with either a white, paint-able, factory-applied Type I jacket or a field applied vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket coating finish as specified, the total field applied dry film thickness shall be approximately 1/16 inch. Insulation on all concealed duct shall be provided with a factory-applied Type I or II vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket. Duct insulation shall be continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except firewall penetrations. Duct insulation terminating at fire dampers, shall be continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air and which may be prone to condensate formation. Duct insulation and vapor retarder/vapor barrier shall cover the collar, neck, and any un-insulated surfaces of diffusers, registers and grills. Vapor retarder/vapor barrier materials shall be applied to form a complete unbroken vapor seal over the insulation. Sheet Metal Duct shall be sealed in accordance with Section 23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM.

3.2.2.1 Installation on Concealed Duct

- a. For rectangular, oval or round ducts, flexible insulation shall be attached by applying adhesive around the entire perimeter of the duct in 6 inch wide strips on 12 inch centers.
- b. For rectangular and oval ducts, 24 inches and larger insulation shall be additionally secured to bottom of ducts by the use of mechanical fasteners. Fasteners shall be spaced on 16 inch centers and not more than 16 inches from duct corners.
- c. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, mechanical fasteners shall be provided on sides of duct risers for all duct sizes. Fasteners shall be spaced on 16 inch centers and not more than 16 inches from duct corners.

- d. Insulation shall be impaled on the mechanical fasteners (self stick pins) where used and shall be pressed thoroughly into the adhesive. Care shall be taken to ensure vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket joints overlap 2 inches. The insulation shall not be compressed to a thickness less than that specified. Insulation shall be carried over standing seams and trapeze-type duct hangers.
- e. Where mechanical fasteners are used, self-locking washers shall be installed and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- f. Jacket overlaps shall be secured with staples and tape as necessary to ensure a secure seal. Staples, tape and seams shall be coated with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- g. Breaks in the jacket material shall be covered with patches of the same material as the vapor retarder jacket. The patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration in all directions and shall be secured with tape and staples. Staples and tape joints shall be sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- h. At jacket penetrations such as hangers, thermometers, and damper operating rods, voids in the insulation shall be filled and the penetration sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- i. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed and flashed with a reinforced vapor retarder coating finish or tape with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.. The coating shall overlap the adjoining insulation and un-insulated surface 2 inches. Pin puncture coatings shall extend 2 inches from the puncture in all directions.
- j. Where insulation standoff brackets occur, insulation shall be extended under the bracket and the jacket terminated at the bracket.

3.2.2.2 Installation on Exposed Duct Work

- a. For rectangular ducts, rigid insulation shall be secured to the duct by mechanical fasteners on all four sides of the duct, spaced not more than 12 inches apart and not more than 3 inches from the edges of the insulation joints. A minimum of two rows of fasteners shall be provided for each side of duct 12 inches and larger. One row shall be provided for each side of duct less than 12 inches. Mechanical fasteners shall be as corrosion resistant as G60 coated galvanized steel, and shall indefinitely sustain a 50 lb tensile dead load test perpendicular to the duct wall.
- b. Form duct insulation with minimum jacket seams. Fasten each piece of rigid insulation to the duct using mechanical fasteners. When the height of projections is less than the insulation thickness, insulation shall be brought up to standing seams, reinforcing, and other vertical projections and shall not be carried over. Vapor retarder/barrier jacket shall be continuous across seams, reinforcing, and projections. When height of projections is greater than the insulation thickness,

insulation and jacket shall be carried over. Apply insulation with joints tightly butted. Neatly bevel insulation around name plates and access plates and doors.

- c. Impale insulation on the fasteners; self-locking washers shall be installed and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- d. Seal joints in the insulation jacket with a 4 inch wide strip of tape. Seal taped seams with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.
- e. Breaks and ribs or standing seam penetrations in the jacket material shall be covered with a patch of the same material as the jacket. Patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration and shall be secured with tape and stapled. Staples and joints shall be sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.
- f. At jacket penetrations such as hangers, thermometers, and damper operating rods, the voids in the insulation shall be filled and the penetrations sealed with a flashing sealant.
- g. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed and flashed with a reinforced vapor retarder coating finish. The coating shall overlap the adjoining insulation and un-insulated surface 2 inches. Pin puncture coatings shall extend 2 inches from the puncture in all directions.
- h. Oval and round ducts, flexible type, shall be insulated with factory Type I jacket insulation with minimum density of 3/4 pcf, attached as in accordance with MICA standards.

3.2.3 Insulation for Warm Air Duct

Insulation and vapor barrier shall be provided for the following warm air ducts and associated equipment:.

- a. Supply ducts.
- b. Return air ducts.
- c. Relief air ducts
- d. Flexible run-outs (field insulated).
- e. Plenums.
- f. Duct-mounted coil casings.
- g. Coil-headers and return bends.
- h. Coil casings.
- i. Fresh air intake ducts.
- j. Filter boxes.
- k. Mixing boxes.
- l. Supply fans.

- m. Site-erected air conditioner casings.
- n. Ducts exposed to weather.

Insulation for rectangular ducts shall be flexible type where concealed, and rigid type where exposed. Insulation on exposed ducts shall be provided with a white, paint-able, factory-applied Type II jacket, or finished with adhesive finish. Flexible type insulation shall be used for round ducts, with a factory-applied Type II jacket. Insulation on concealed duct shall be provided with a factory-applied Type II jacket. Adhesive finish where indicated to be used shall be accomplished by applying two coats of adhesive with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry film thickness shall be approximately 1/16 inch. Duct insulation shall be continuous through sleeves and prepared openings. Duct insulation shall terminate at fire dampers and flexible connections.

3.2.3.1 Installation on Concealed Duct

- a. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, insulation shall be attached by applying adhesive around the entire perimeter of the duct in 6 inch wide strips on 12 inch centers.
- b. For rectangular and oval ducts 24 inches and larger, insulation shall be secured to the bottom of ducts by the use of mechanical fasteners. Fasteners shall be spaced on 18 inch centers and not more than 18 inches from duct corner.
- c. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, mechanical fasteners shall be provided on sides of duct risers for all duct sizes. Fasteners shall be spaced on 18 inch centers and not more than 18 inches from duct corners.
- d. The insulation shall be impaled on the mechanical fasteners where used. The insulation shall not be compressed to a thickness less than that specified. Insulation shall be carried over standing seams and trapeze-type hangers.
- e. Self-locking washers shall be installed where mechanical fasteners are used and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- f. Insulation jacket shall overlap not less than 2 inches at joints and the lap shall be secured and stapled on 4 inch centers.

3.2.3.2 Installation on Exposed Duct

- a. For rectangular ducts, the rigid insulation shall be secured to the duct by the use of mechanical fasteners on all four sides of the duct, spaced not more than 16 inches apart and not more than 6 inches from the edges of the insulation joints. A minimum of two rows of fasteners shall be provided for each side of duct 12 inches and larger and a minimum of one row for each side of duct less than 12 inches.
- b. Duct insulation with factory-applied jacket shall be formed with minimum jacket seams, and each piece of rigid insulation shall be fastened to the duct using mechanical fasteners. When the height of projection is less than the insulation thickness, insulation shall be brought up to standing seams, reinforcing, and other vertical projections and shall not be carried over the projection. Jacket shall be continuous across seams, reinforcing, and projections. Where the

height of projections is greater than the insulation thickness, insulation and jacket shall be carried over the projection.

- c. Insulation shall be impaled on the fasteners; self-locking washers shall be installed and pin trimmed and bent over.
- d. Joints on jacketed insulation shall be sealed with a 4 inch wide strip of tape and brushed with vapor retarder coating.
- e. Breaks and penetrations in the jacket material shall be covered with a patch of the same material as the jacket. Patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration and shall be secured with adhesive and stapled.
- f. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed with tape and brushed with vapor retarder coating.
- g. Oval and round ducts, flexible type, shall be insulated with factory Type I jacket insulation, minimum density of 3/4 pcf attached by staples spaced not more than 16 inches and not more than 6 inches from the degrees of joints. Joints shall be sealed in accordance with item "d." above.

3.2.4 Duct Test Holes

After duct systems have been tested, adjusted, and balanced, breaks in the insulation and jacket shall be repaired in accordance with the applicable section of this specification for the type of duct insulation to be repaired.

3.2.5 Duct Exposed to Weather

3.2.5.1 Installation

Ducts exposed to weather shall be insulated and finished as specified for the applicable service for exposed duct inside the building. After the above is accomplished, the insulation shall then be further finished as detailed in the following subparagraphs.

3.2.5.2 Round Duct

Laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - Less than 0.0000 permeability, (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or greater than 8 ply, heavy duty, white and natural) membrane shall be applied overlapping material by 3 inches no bands or caulking needed - see manufacturer's recommended installation instructions. Aluminum jacket with factory applied moisture retarder shall be applied with the joints lapped not less than 3 inches and secured with bands located at circumferential laps and at not more than 12 inch intervals throughout. Horizontal joints shall lap down to shed water and located at 4 or 8 o'clock position. Joints shall be sealed with metal jacketing sealant to prevent moisture penetration. Where jacketing abuts an un-insulated surface, joints shall be sealed with metal jacketing sealant.

3.2.5.3 Fittings

Fittings and other irregular shapes shall be finished as specified for rectangular ducts.

3.2.5.4 Rectangular Ducts

Two coats of weather barrier mastic reinforced with fabric or mesh for outdoor application shall be applied to the entire surface. Each coat of weatherproof mastic shall be 1/16 inch minimum thickness. The exterior shall be a metal jacketing applied for mechanical abuse and weather protection, and secured with screws or vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket less than 0.0000 permeability greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black, and embossed or greater than 8 ply, heavy duty white and natural. Membrane shall be applied overlapping material by 3 inches. No bands or caulking needed-see manufacturing recommend installation instructions.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 54

DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL SYSTEMS

04/06

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL (AMCA)

AMCA 500-D (2012) Laboratory Methods of Testing
Dampers for Rating

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B31.1 (2004) Power Piping

ASME BPVC SEC VIII (2004) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Codes:
Section VIII Rules for Construction of
Pressure Vessels, Division 1

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C62.41 (1991; R 1995) Recommended Practice for
Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power
Circuits

IEEE C62.45 (2002) Surge Testing for Equipment
Connected to Low-Voltage (1000v and
less) AC Power Circuits

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14) National Electrical Code

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA HVAC Duct Const Stds (1995, 2nd Ed) HVAC Duct Construction
Standards - Metal and Flexible

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1449 (2014; Reprint Jul 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Surge Protective Devices

UL 506 (2017) UL Standard for Safety Specialty
Transformers

UL 916

(1998; Rev thru Feb 2004) Energy
Management Equipment

1.2 SUBCONTRACTOR SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Perform all work in this section in accordance with the paragraph entitled "Subcontractor Special Requirements" in Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS. The paragraph specifies that all contract requirements of this section shall be accomplished directly by a first tier subcontractor. No work required shall be accomplished by a second tier subcontractor.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1.3.1 Digital Controller

A control module which is microprocessor based, programmable by the user, has integral input/output within the module or on network connected modules, and performs stand-alone operations.

1.3.2 Direct Digital Control (DDC)

Digital controls, as defined in this specification, performing control logic. The controller directly senses building environment and makes control decisions based on user defined, controller resident programs. The controller outputs control signals that directly operate valves, dampers, and motor controllers. No conventional control devices, pneumatic or electronic, such as receiver-controllers, thermostats, and logic units are present within or interface with a direct digital control loop. Actuators are electric or pneumatic, and the controller output is converted to the appropriate type of signal.

1.3.3 DDC System

A system made up of one or more digital controllers which communicate on a network.

1.3.4 Distributed Control

The intent of distributed control is to install the controllers near their respective controlled equipment. The control system consists of stand-alone controllers, with the total number of input and output points limited to 48 or less per controller. Failure of any single controller will not cause the loss of more than 48 control points.

1.3.5 Dynamic Control

A process that optimizes energy efficiency of HVAC systems (air handling units, converters, chillers, and boilers) by increasing and decreasing setpoints or starting and stopping equipment in response to heating and cooling needs of the facility. A requirement of dynamic control is knowing the heating/cooling demand status of the process. Therefore dynamic control requires controllers connected in a communications network.

1.3.6 Firmware

Firmware is software programmed into read only memory (ROM) and erasable programmable read only memory (EPROM) chips. Software may not be changed without physically altering the chip.

1.3.7 Hand-Held Terminal

A hand-held terminal is a manufacturer specific device connected directly to a communications port on a controller, through which the controller is accessed and, in some cases, programmed.

1.3.8 Input/Output (I/O) Points

I/O points refer to analog inputs (AI), digital inputs (DI), analog outputs (AO), and digital outputs (DO) in a digital controller. Another term for digital inputs and outputs is binary inputs and outputs. Inputs are from analog sensors (temperature, pressure, humidity, flow) and digital sensors (motor status, flow switches, switch position, and pulse output devices). Outputs operate modulating and on/off control devices.

1.3.9 I/O Expansion Unit

An I/O expansion unit provides additional point capacity to a digital controller and communicates with the stand-alone digital controller on a LAN. An I/O unit is not stand-alone because the control program does not reside in the I/O unit. An I/O expander which connects directly to a stand alone controller through a multi-line microprocessor bus is restricted to reside within 3 feet of the stand alone controller and is considered part of the stand alone controller.

1.3.10 Local Area Network (LAN)

- a. A communications bus that interconnects digital controllers for peer-to-peer (see "peer-to-peer" below) communications. Different levels of LANs are possible within a single DDC system. In this case, a digital controller on a higher level LAN acts as a network controller to the controllers on the lower level LAN. The network controller, then, has at least two LAN communications ports. One port supports peer-to-peer communications with other digital controllers on the higher level LAN. The other port supports communications with the digital controllers on the lower level LAN.
- b. LANs permit sharing global information. This allows building and site wide control strategies such as peak demand limiting, dynamic control strategies, coordinated response to alarm conditions, and remote monitoring and programming of digital controllers.

1.3.11 Microprocessor

A microprocessor refers to the central processing unit (CPU) that contains all registers and logic circuitry that allow digital controllers to function.

1.3.12 Output Signal Conversion

Output signal conversion refers to changing one kind of control output into a proportionally related signal appropriate for direct actuation of the controlled device. An example is converting a 4 to 20 mA or 0 to 10 VDC signal to a proportional 3 to 15 psig signal to operate a pneumatic actuator.

1.3.13 Optimum Start

Optimum start is a method of starting HVAC equipment prior to scheduled occupancy in order to have the building at setpoint when occupied. Optimum start is based on the zone temperatures, zone setpoints, and outdoor temperature.

1.3.14 Peer-to-Peer

Peer-to-peer refers to controllers connected on a communications LAN that act independently, as equals, and communicate with each other to pass information.

1.3.15 PID

PID refers to proportional, integral, and derivative control; the three types of action that are used in controlling modulating equipment.

1.3.16 Resolution

Refers to the number of possible states an input value or output value can take and is a function of the digital controller I/O circuitry; the A/D converter for input and the D/A converter for output. Ten bit resolution has 1024 possible states.

1.3.17 Stand-Alone Control

Refers to the digital controller performing required climate control, and energy management functions without connection to another digital controller or computer. Requirements for stand-alone control are a time clock, a microprocessor, resident control programs, PID control, and I/O. All stand-alone controllers have a communication port and firmware for direct connection and interrogation with a laptop computer or similar hand-held device. This interrogation includes parameter changes and program downloads.

1.3.18 Terminal Control Unit (TCU)

An off-the-shelf, stand-alone digital controller equipped for communication on a lower level LAN. TCUs may deviate from stand-alone only in receiving energy management and time information from a stand alone digital controller. A TCU is commonly application specific and is used for distributed control of specific HVAC subsystems. A TCU communicates with other digital controllers. Typically, a TCU communicates on a lower level LAN. Examples where TCUs are used include small air handling units (AHUs), variable air volume (VAV) boxes, fan coil units, and heat pumps.

1.4 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- a. Provide new DDC systems including associated equipment and accessories. Manufacturer's products, including design, materials, fabrication, assembly, erection, examination, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance with ASME B31.1 and NFPA 70, except as modified herein or indicated otherwise.
- b. Provide the DDC systems to maintain stable temperature control and all other conditions as indicated. The end-to-end accuracy of the system, including temperature sensor error, wiring error, A/D

conversion, and display, shall be 1 degree F or less.

1.4.1 Design Requirements

1.4.1.1 Control System Schematic

Provide control system schematic that includes the following:

- a. Location of each input and output device
- b. Flow diagram of each HVAC component, for instance flow through coils, fans, dampers
- c. Name or symbol for each component such as V-1, DM-2, and T-1 for a valve, damper motor, and temperature sensor, respectively
- d. Setpoints
- e. Sensor range
- f. Actuator range
- g. Valve and damper schedules and normal position
- h. Switch points on input switches
- i. Written sequence of operation for each schematic
- j. Schedule identifying each sensor and controlled device with the following information:
 - (1) LAN and Software point name with send and receive address if applicable
 - (2) Point type (AO, AI, DO, DI)
 - (3) Point range
 - (4) Digital controller number for each point

1.4.1.2 Electrical Equipment Ladder Diagrams

Submit diagrams showing electrical equipment interlocks, including voltages and currents.

1.4.1.3 Component Wiring Diagrams

Submit a wiring diagram for each type of input device and each type of output device. Diagram shall show how the device is wired and powered; showing typical connections at the digital controller and each power supply, as well as at the device itself. Show for all field connected devices, including, but not limited to, control relays, motor starters, electric or electronic actuators, and temperature, pressure, flow, proof, and humidity sensors and transmitters.

1.4.1.4 Terminal Strip Diagrams

Submit a diagram of each terminal strip, including digital controller terminal strips, terminal strip location, termination numbers and associated point names.

1.4.1.5 Communication Architecture Schematic

Submit a schematic showing communication networks used for all DDC system controllers, workstations, and field interface devices.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

List of Drawings; G

List of Symbols and Abbreviations Used on Drawings; G

List of I/O Points; G

Equipment Components List; G

AC Power Table; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Control system schematic; G

Ladder diagrams; G

Component wiring diagrams; G

Terminal strip diagrams; G

Communication architecture schematic; G

SD-03 Product Data

DDC hardware; G

DDC capabilities; G

Input devices; G

Output devices; G

Surge and Transient Protection; G

SD-07 Certificates

Contractors Qualifications; G

Training; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Controls and HVAC System Operators Manual; G

DDC Manufacturer's Hardware and Software Manuals; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Training Course Documentation; G

Service organizations; G

Contractor certification; G

1.6 Operating environment

Protect components from humidity and temperature variations, dust, and other contaminants, within limits published by the manufacturer.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Standard Products

- a. Material and equipment shall be standard products of manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such product, using similar materials, design and workmanship. The standard products shall have been in commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use shall include applications of similarly sized equipment and materials used under similar circumstances and sold on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures.
- b. Products are supported by a local service organization.

1.7.1.1 DDC Hardware

- a. I/O type and characteristics
- b. Resident programs
- c. Communications ports
- d. Protected memory
- e. Operating temperature limits

1.7.1.2 DDC Capabilities

- a. Communications; baud rates, communication ports, hierarchy

- b. Trending capabilities
 - c. Alarming capabilities; capable of alarm generation as defined in this specification
 - d. Messaging capabilities
 - e. Self diagnostic capabilities
 - e. PID control capabilities
- 1.7.1.3 **Input Devices**
- a. Transmitters
 - b. Temperature sensors
 - c. Humidity sensors
 - d. Pressure sensors
 - e. Flow or motor proof
 - f. Sensor wells
- 1.7.1.4 **Output Devices**
- a. Dampers
 - b. Valves
 - c. Actuators
 - d. Control relays
 - e. Solenoid air valves
 - f. Electronic to pneumatic transducer
- 1.7.1.5 **Surge and Transient Protection**
- a. Power line
 - b. Communications lines
 - c. Controller I/O
- 1.7.2 **Nameplates and Tags**
- a. Nameplates and tags bearing device unique identifiers shall be engraved or stamped. Permanently attach nameplates to HVAC control panel doors and back plates.
 - b. For each field mounted piece of equipment attach a plastic or metal tag with equipment name and point identifier.

1.7.3 Verification of Dimensions

The contractor shall verify all dimensions in the field, and shall advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing work.

1.7.4 Drawings

Because of the small scale of the drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required. The Contractor shall carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work, and shall furnish all work necessary to meet such conditions.

1.7.4.1 List of Drawings

Provide a list of drawings.

1.7.4.2 List of Symbols and Abbreviations Used on Drawings

Provide an index of symbols and abbreviations used on the drawings.

1.7.4.3 List of I/O Points

For each input and output physically connected to a digital controller provide, on a controller by controller basis, provide the following:

- a. Point description: for example: mixed air temperature, supply fan start/stop, etc.
- b. Point type: AO, AI, DO, or DI.
- c. Point range
- d. Sensor range associated with point range:
- e. Software name(s) associated with point, if any.
- f. Point connection terminal number

1.7.4.4 Equipment Components List

Submit a listing of controllers and connected devices shown on control system schematic. List the following:

- a. Control system schematic name
- b. Description
- c. Manufacturer of controller
- d. Controller's name
- e. Equipment part numbers
- f. Cv for valves
- g. For actuators:
 - (1) Motive force (such as pneumatic, or electric)

(2) Normal position

(3) Nominal operating range (such as 3 to 7 psi, 4 to 8 mA)

1.7.4.5 AC Power Table

Submit a table listing each controller and the circuit breaker number, panel box number, and physical location of each controller's source of AC power.

1.7.5 Contractors Qualifications

- a. The Contractor or subcontractor performing the work shall have completed at least three DDC systems installations of a similar design and have successfully operated a similar sequence of operation for at least three years.

1.7.6 Pressure Tank Certification

Provide certification stating pressure tanks are constructed and labeled in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC VIII for a minimum of 125 psig working pressure.

1.7.7 Training Course Documentation

Training course documentation including a manual for each trainee plus two additional copies and one copy of audiovisual training aids, if used. Documentation shall include an agenda, defined objectives for each lesson and detailed description of the subject matter of each lesson.

1.7.8 Service Organizations

Qualified service organization list including the names and telephone numbers of organizations qualified to service the HVAC control systems.

1.7.9 Contractor Certification

Provide certification that installation of the control system is complete and meets the technical requirements of this section.

1.7.10 Controls and HVAC System Operators Manual

Provide two copies of a Control and HVAC Systems Operators Manual. Provide in a 3 ring binder with a minimum of the following 7 sections. Use tabs to divide each section.

- a. Description of HVAC Systems: Provide a description of the HVAC system components and control system. Include sequence of operation and a complete points list.
- b. Controls Drawings: Provide drawings as specified in submittal paragraph.
- c. Control Program Listings: Provide listing of all control programs, including terminal equipment controller setup pages if used.
- d. Current Operating Parameters: Provide printouts of input and

output setup information, (database setups). This section provides information such as point addresses, slopes and offsets for all points, database of points, etc.

- e. Design Information: Include relevant design data and calculations.
- f. Control Equipment Technical Data Sheets: Provide technical data sheets for all controller hardware and accessories.
- g. Backup of Control Program: Provide backup copies of the control program and ACAD control drawings on CD-ROM .

1.7.11 DDC Manufacturer's Hardware and Software Manuals

Provide the following manuals.

- a. Installation and Technical Manuals for all digital controller hardware.
- b. Operator Manuals for all digital controllers.
- c. Programming Manuals for all digital controllers.

1.7.12 Modification of References

The advisory provision in ASME B31.1 and NFPA 70 are mandatory. Substitute the word "shall" for "should" wherever it appears and interpret all references to the "authority having jurisdiction" and "owner" to mean the Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DDC SYSTEM

- a. Provide a DDC system as a distributed control system. The system shall have stand-alone digital controllers, a communications Network.
- b. Provide an operator programmable system to perform closed-loop, modulating control of building equipment. Connect all digital controllers through the communication network to share common data and report to workstation computers. Provide workstation DDC software capable of programming and monitoring the digital controllers. The control system shall be capable of downloading programs between the workstation and digital controllers.
- c. Provide the quantity of digital controllers indicated on the drawings to perform required climate control, energy management, and alarm functions. The quantity of controllers shall be no less than the number shown on drawings. All material used shall be currently in production.

2.1.1 Direct Digital Controllers

DDC hardware shall be UL 916 rated.

2.1.1.1 Distributed Control

Apply digital controllers in a distributed control manner.

2.1.1.2 I/O Point Limitation

Total number of I/O hardware points, including those communicated over a LAN, used by a single stand-alone digital controller, including I/O expansion units shall not exceed 48.

2.1.1.3 Environmental Operating Limits

Provide digital controllers that operate in environmental conditions between 32 and 120 degrees F.

2.1.1.4 Stand-Alone Control

Provide stand-alone digital controllers.

2.1.1.5 Internal Clock

Provide a clock with each stand-alone controller. Each controller shall have its clock backed up by a battery or capacitor with sufficient capacity to maintain clock operation for a minimum of 72 hours during power outage.

2.1.1.6 Memory

- a. Provide sufficient memory for each controller to support required control, communication, trends, alarms, and messages
- b. Memory Protection: Programs residing in memory shall be protected either by using EEPROM, flash memory, or by an uninterruptible power source (battery or uninterruptible power supply (UPS)). The backup power source shall have sufficient capacity to maintain volatile memory during an AC power failure. Where the uninterruptible power source is rechargeable (a rechargeable battery), provide sufficient back-up capacity for a minimum of seventy-two hours. The rechargeable power source shall be constantly charged while the controller is operating under normal line power. Where a non-rechargeable power source is used, provide sufficient capacity for a minimum of two years accumulated power failure. Batteries shall be replaceable without soldering.

2.1.1.7 Inputs

Provide input function integral to the direct digital controller. Provide input type(s) as required by the DDC design. For each type of input used on high-level controllers, provide at least one similar spare input point per controller.

- a. Analog Inputs: Allowable input types are 100 ohm (or higher) platinum RTDs, thermistors, 4 to 20 mA, and 0-10 VDC. Thermistor and direct RTD inputs must have appropriate conversion curves stored in controller software or firmware. Analog to digital (A/D) conversion shall have 10-bit minimum resolution.
- b. Digital Inputs: Digital inputs shall sense open/close, on/off, or other two state indications.

2.1.1.8 Outputs

Provide output function integral to the direct digital controller. Provide output type(s) as required by the DDC design. For each type of output used on high-level controllers, provide at least one similar spare output point per controller.

- a. Analog Outputs: Provide controllers with 10 bit minimum output resolution. Output shall be 4 to 20 mA, 0 to 10 VDC, or 0 to 20 psig. Each pneumatic output shall have feedback for monitoring of the actual pneumatic signal.
- b. Digital Outputs: Provide contacts rated at a minimum of 1 ampere at 24 volts.

2.1.1.9 PID Control

Provide controllers with proportional integral, and derivative control capability. Terminal controllers (TCV) are not required to have the derivative component.

2.1.1.10 Digital Controller Networking Capabilities

The upper level digital controllers shall be capable of networking with other similar upper level controllers. Upper level controllers shall also be capable of communicating over a network between buildings.

2.1.1.11 Communications Ports

- a. Controller-to-Controller LAN Communications Ports: Controllers in the building DDC system shall be connected in a communications network. Controllers shall have controller to controller communication ports to both peer controllers (upper level controllers) and terminal controllers (lower level controllers). Network may consist of more than one level of local area network and one level may have multiple drops. Communications network shall permit sharing information between controllers, allowing execution of dynamic control strategies, and coordinated response to alarm conditions. Minimum baud rate for the lowest level LAN is 9600 Baud. Minimum baud rate for the highest level LAN shall be 9600 Baud. Minimum baud rate for a DDC system consisting of a single LAN is 9600 Baud.
- b. On-Site Interface Ports: Provide a RS-232, RS-485, or RJ-11 communications port for each digital controller that allows direct connection of a computer or hand held terminal and through which the controller may be fully accessed. Controller access shall not be limited to access through another controller. On-site interface communication ports shall be in addition to the communications port(s) supporting controller to controller communications. Communication rate is 9600 Baud minimum. Every controller on the highest level LAN shall have a communications port supporting direct connection of a computer; a hand held terminal port is not sufficient. By connecting a computer to this port, every controller in the direct digital control system shall be accessible and programmable.. The following operations shall be available: downloading and uploading control programs, modifying programs and program data base, and retrieving or accepting trend reports, status reports, messages, and alarms.

- c. Remote Work Station Interface Port: Provide one additional direct connect computer port in each DDC system for permanent connection of a remote operator's work station, unless the workstation is a node on the LAN. All operations possible by directly connecting a computer to a controller at the highest level LAN shall be available through this port.d. Telecommunications Interface Port: Provide one additional telecommunications port in each DDC system permitting remote communications via telephone. All operations possible by directly connecting a computer to a controller at the highest level LAN shall be available through the telecommunications port. A telecommunications port provided on a digital controller shall be in addition to the port required for directly connecting a computer to the controller. Telecommunication baud rate is 28000 minimum.

2.1.1.12 Modem

Provide two modems per DDC system to communicate between the digital control system and the computer workstation. Minimum modem baud rate is 56 Kbaud with v.90 communication standard.

2.1.1.13 Digital Controller Cabinet

Each indoor digital controller cabinet shall protect the controller from dust and rated NEMA 1, unless specified otherwise. Each outdoor digital controller cabinet shall protect the controller from all outside conditions and rated NEMA 4. Cabinets for high level controllers shall be hinged door, lockable, and have offset removable metal back plate.

2.1.1.14 Main Power Switch

Each controller on the highest level LAN or each control cabinet shall have a main external power switch for isolation of the controller from AC power. The switch shall be located in the DDC cabinet.

2.1.2 Terminal Control Units

- a. The same company as the digital controllers shall manufacture TCUs.
- b. TCUs shall automatically start-up on return of power after a failure, and previous operating parameters shall exist or shall be automatically downloaded from a digital controller on a higher level LAN.
- c. TCUs do not require an internal clock if they get time information from a higher level digital controller.

2.1.3 DDC Software

2.1.3.1 Sequence of Control

Provide, in the digital controllers, software to execute the sequence of control. Provide one registered copy of all software used to program control sequences in all direct digital controllers and LAN controllers on the computer workstation. Provide any access keys which restrict programming language software functions or the ability to compile or prepare programming for download to controllers. Provide final copy of

each program used in the system in both compiled and editable formats. Where specially programmed factory configured smart controllers are used in the system, provide minimum factory programming tools and specialized controller programs ready for download to replacement controllers. At minimum, controllers must be capable of performing programming functions outlined in the following "Parameter Modification" section.

2.1.3.2 Parameter Modification

Provide software to modify control parameters. Parameter modification for all controllers (high level and low level application specific) is through the main workstation computer and with laptop computer or keypad terminal directly at each controller. Modifications accomplished without having to make changes directly in line-by-line programming. When the control program is of the line-by-line type, database parameters in the following list that take real number values require assignment of variable names so parameters can be changed without modifying programming. Alternatively, block programming languages shall provide for modification of these database parameters in fill-in-the-blank screens. Parameters of like type, including those in different high level and low level controllers, may be grouped together for a single, global change. For example, an operator may group all second floor space temperature setpoints into a group and raise the setpoint by two degrees with a single command. The following parameters shall be modifiable in this way:

- a. Setpoints
- b. Dead band limits and spans
- c. Reset schedules
- d. Switch over points
- e. PID gains and time between control output changes
- f. Time
- g. Timed local override time
- h. Occupancy schedules
- i. Holidays
- j. Alarm points, alarm limits, and alarm messages
- k. Point definition database
- l. Point enable, disable, and override
- m. Trend points, trend intervals, trend reports
- n. Analog input default values
- o. Passwords
- p. Communications parameters including network and telephone communications setups

2.1.3.3 Differential

Where setpoint is in response to some analog input such as temperature, pressure, or humidity, include a setpoint differential to prevent short cycling of control devices.

2.1.3.4 Motor and Flow Status Delay

Provide an adjustable delay between when a motor is commanded on or off and when the control program looks to the motor or flow status input for confirmation of successful command execution.

2.1.3.5 Run time Accumulation

Provide resettable run time accumulation for each controlled digital output.

2.1.3.6 Timed Local Override

Provide user definable adjustable run time for each push of a momentary contact timed local override. Pushes shall be cumulative with each push designating the same length of time. Provide a user definable limit on the number of contact closures summed, such as 6, before the contact closures are ignored. Timed local overrides are disabled during occupancy periods.

2.1.3.7 Time Programs

Provide programs to automatically adjust for leap years, daylight savings time, and operator time adjustments.

2.1.3.8 Scheduling

- a. Individual controlled equipment shall be schedulable with schedule based on time of day, day of week, and day of year. Equipment may be associated into groups. Each group may be associated with a different schedule. Changing the schedule of a group shall change the schedule of all equipment in the group. Groups may be modified, created and deleted by the operator.
- b. Provide capability to view and modify schedules in a seven-day week format. When control program does not automatically compute holidays, provide capability to enter holiday schedules one full year at a time.

2.1.3.9 Point Override

I/O and virtual points shall accept software overrides to any possible value.

2.1.3.10 Alarming

I/O points and software points shall be alarmable. Alarms may be enabled and disabled for every point. Alarm limits shall be adjustable on analog points. Controllers connected to an external communications device such as a printer, terminal, or computer, shall download alarm and alarm message when alarm occurs. When a computer workstation is connected to a DDC system with a LAN or modem, operator selected alarm conditions will initiate a call and report to the computer. Otherwise alarms will be stored and automatically downloaded when a communications link occurs. The following

conditions shall generate alarms:

- a. Motor is commanded on or off but motor status input indicates no change
- b. Temperature, humidity, or pressure strays outside selectable limits
- c. An analog input takes a value indicating sensor failure
- d. A module is not communicating on the LAN
- e. A power outage occurs

2.1.3.11 Messages

Messages shall be operator defined and assigned to alarm or status conditions. Messages shall be displayed on the workstation or printer when these conditions occur.

2.1.3.12 Trending

DDC system shall have the capability to trend all I/O and virtual points. Points may be associated into groups. A trend report may be set up for each group. The period between logging consecutive trend values shall range from one minute to 60 minutes at a minimum. The minimum number of consecutive trend values stored at one time shall be 30 per variable. When trend memory is full, the most recent data shall overwrite the oldest data. Trend data shall be capable of being uploaded to computer. Trend data shall be available on a real time basis; trend data shall appear numerically and graphically on a connected computer's screen as the data is processed from the DDC system. Trend reports shall be capable of uploading to computer for storage.

2.1.3.13 Status Display

Current status of I/O and virtual points shall be displayed on command. Points shall be associated into functional groups, such as all the I/O and virtual points associated with control of a single air handling unit, and displayed as a group, so the status of a single mechanical system can be readily checked. A group shall be selectable from a menu of groups having meaningful names; such as AHU-4, Second Floor, Chiller System, and other such names.

2.1.3.14 Diagnostics

Each controller shall perform self-diagnostic routines and provide messages to an operator when errors are detected. The DDC system shall be capable of recognizing a non-responsive module on a LAN. The remaining, responsive modules on a LAN shall not operate in a degraded mode.

2.1.3.15 Power Loss

During a power outage, each controller shall assume a disabled status and outputs shall go to a user definable state. Upon restoration of power, DDC system shall perform an orderly restart, with sequencing of outputs.

2.1.3.16 Program Transfer

Provide software for download of control programs and database from a

computer to controllers and upload of same to computer from controllers. Every digital controller in the DDC system shall be capable of being downloaded and uploaded to through a single controller on the highest level LAN.

2.1.3.17 Password Protection

Provide at least three levels of password protection to the DDC system permitting different levels of access to the system. The lowest level allows monitoring only. The highest level allows full control of all functions, including setting new passwords.

2.1.3.18 Energy Data Recording

Provide a resettable signal accumulation for each meter at the main building digital controller.

- a. Calculate hot water thermal energy in BTU/HR using hot water supply temperature and flow and hot water return temperature signals.
- b. Calculate chilled water thermal energy in BTU/HR using chilled water supply temperature and flow and chilled water return temperature signals.
- c. Record electrical energy in BTU/HR.
- d. Record steam in lbs/hr.
- e. Record natural gas in 100 cubic feet.

2.1.4 Workstation

2.1.4.1 Graphic-Based Software

Use graphic-based software to provide a user-friendly interface to the DDC system. Graphic-based software shall provide graphical representation of the building, the buildings mechanical systems, and the DDC system. The current value and point name of every I/O point shall be shown on at least one graphic and in its appropriate physical location relative to building and mechanical systems.

- a. Graphics shall closely follow the style of the control drawings in representing mechanical systems, sensors, controlled devices, and point names.
- b. Graphic Title: Graphics shall have an identifying title visible when the graphic is viewed.
- c. Dynamic Update: When the workstation is on-line with the control system, point data shall update dynamically on the graphic images.
- d. Graphic Penetration: Provide graphic penetration when the capability exists. For systems without graphic penetration, provide menu penetration for selection of individual graphics to give the same hierarchical affect provided by graphic penetration.
- e. Graphic Types: Graphic-based software shall have graphics of the

building exterior, building section, floor plans, and mechanical systems. Provide the following graphics:

- (1) Building Exterior Graphic: Show exterior architecture, major landmarks, and building number.
 - (2) Building Section Graphic: Show floors in section graphic with appropriate floor name on each floor.
 - (3) Floor Plan Graphics: Provide a single graphic for each floor, unless the graphic will contain more information than can reasonably be shown on a single graphic. Each heating or cooling zone within a floor plan shall have a zone name and its current temperature displayed within the zone outline. Show each controlled variable in the zone. Provide visual warning for each point in alarm.
 - (4) Mechanical System Graphics: Provide two-dimensional drawings to symbolize mechanical equipment; do not use line drawings. Show controlled or sensed mechanical equipment. Each graphic shall consist of a single mechanical system; examples are a graphic for an air handling unit, a graphic for a VAV box, a graphic for a heating water system, and a graphic for a chiller system. Place sensors and controlled devices associated with mechanical equipment in their appropriate locations. Place point name and point value adjacent to sensor or controlled device. Provide visual warning of each point in alarm. Point values shall update dynamically on the graphic.
- f. Graphic Editing: Full capacity as provided by a draw software package shall be included for operator editing of graphics. Graphics may be created, deleted, modified, and text added. Provide capability to store graphic symbols in a symbol directory and import these symbols into graphics. A minimum of 256 colors shall be available.
- g. Dynamic Point Editing: Provide full editing capability for deleting, adding, and modifying dynamic points on graphics.
- h. Trending: Trend data shall be displayed graphically, with control variable and process variable plotted as functions of time on the same chart. Graphic display of trend data shall be internal to the workstation software and not resulting from download of trend data into a third-party spreadsheet program such as Excel, unless such transfer is automatic and transparent to the operator, and the third-party software is included with the workstation software package. At the operator's discretion, trend data shall be plotted real time.

2.2 SENSORS AND INPUT HARDWARE

2.2.1 Field Installed Temperature Sensors

2.2.1.1 Thermistors

Precision thermistors may be used in temperature sensing applications below 200 degrees F. Sensor accuracy over the application range shall be 0.36 degree F or less between the range of 32 to 150 degrees F. Stability error of the thermistor over five years shall not exceed 0.25 degree F

cumulative. Sensor element and leads shall be encapsulated. Bead thermistors are not allowed. A/D conversion resolution error shall be kept to 0.1 degree F. Total error for a thermistor circuit shall not exceed 0.5 degree F, which includes sensor error and digital controller A/D conversion resolution error. Provide 18 gage twisted and shielded cable for thermistors.

2.2.1.2 Resistance Temperature Detectors (RTDs)

Provide RTD sensors with 1000 ohm, or higher, platinum elements that are compatible with the digital controllers. Sensors shall be encapsulated in epoxy, series 300 stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or copper. Temperature sensor accuracy shall be 0.1 percent (1 ohm) of expected ohms (1000 ohms) at 32 degrees F. Temperature sensor stability error over five years shall not exceed 0.25 degree F cumulative. Direct connection of RTDs to digital controllers, without transmitters, is preferred provided controller supports direct connection of RTDs. When RTDs are connected directly to the controller, keep lead resistance error to 0.25 degree F or less. Total error for a RTD circuit shall not exceed 0.5 degree F, which includes sensor error, lead resistance error or 4 to 20 mA or 0 to 10 VDC transmitter error, and A/D conversion resolution error.

2.2.1.3 Temperature Sensor Details

- a. Room Type: Conceal element behind protective cover matched to the room interior. Room temperature sensors connected directly to application specific controllers shall have integral pushbutton, system override digital input button, and a setpoint adjustment lever. Provide a connection to allow interrogation of the digital controller.
- b. Duct Averaging Type: Continuous averaging RTDs for ductwork applications shall be one foot in length for each 4 square feet of ductwork cross-sectional area with a minimum length of 6 feet. Probe type duct sensors of one foot length minimum are acceptable in ducts 12 feet square and less.
- c. Immersion Type: Three inches total immersion for use with sensor wells, unless otherwise indicated.
- d. Sensor Wells: Stainless steel material. Provide heat-sensitive transfer agent between exterior sensor surface and interior well surface.
- e. Outside Air Type: Provide element on the buildings north side with sunshade to minimize solar effects. Mount element at least 3 inches from building outside wall. Sunshade shall not inhibit the flow of ambient air across the sensing element. Shade shall protect sensing element from snow, ice, and rain.

2.2.2 Transmitters

Transmitters shall have 4 to 20 mA or 0 to 10 VDC output linearly scaled to the temperature, pressure, humidity, or flow range sensed. Transmitter shall be matched to the sensor, factory calibrated, and sealed. Total error shall not exceed 0.1 percent at any point across the measured span. Supply voltage shall be 24 volts AC or DC. Transmitters shall have non-interactive offset and span adjustments. For temperature sensing, transmitter stability shall not exceed 0.05 degrees C a year.

2.2.2.1 Spans and Ranges

Transmitter spans or ranges shall meet the following:

a. Temperature:

(1) 50 degrees F span: Room, chilled water, cooling coil discharge air, return air sensors

(2) 100 degrees F span: Outside air, hot water, heating coil discharge air, mixed air sensors

(3) 200 degrees F span: High temperature hot water, heating hot water, chilled/hot water system sensors.

b. Pressure:

(1) -0.5 to 0.5 inches water differential range: static pressure control of rooms

(2) 0 to 5 inches water differential range: Duct static pressure

(3) 0 to 60 psig differential: Water differential pressure

c. Relative Humidity:

(1) 10 to 90 percent minimum relative humidity range

2.2.3 Relative Humidity Transmitters

Provide integral humidity transducer and transmitter. Output of relative humidity instrument shall be a 4 to 20 mA or 0 to 10 VDC signal proportional to full range of relative humidity input. Accuracy shall be 2 percent of full scale, long-term stability shall be less than one percent drift per year. Sensing element shall be polymer type.

2.2.4 Pressure Transmitters

Provide integral pressure transducer and transmitter. Output of pressure instrument shall be a 4 to 20 mA signal proportional to the pressure span. Accuracy shall be 1.0 percent. Linearity shall be 0.1 percent.

2.2.5 Current Transducers

Provide current transducers to monitor amperage of motors. Select current transducer for normal measured amperage to be near 50 percent of full-scale range. Current transducers shall have an accuracy of one percent and 4 to 20 mA or 0 to 10 VDC output signal.

2.2.6 Air Quality Sensors

2.2.6.1 Air Quality Sensor

Provide carbon monoxide air quality sensors. The Sensor must compensate for temperature and humidity, have span and calibration potentiometers, operate on 24 VDC power with output of 0-10 VDC and operating between 32 to 140 degrees F and 5 to 95 percent RH. Provide isolation power supply for each sensor. See drawings for sensor requirements.

2.2.7 Input Switches

2.2.7.1 Timed Local Override

Provide momentary contact push button override with override time set in controller software. Provide to override DDC time of day program and activate occupancy program for assigned units. Upon expiration of override time, the control system shall return to time-of-day program. Time interval for the length of operation shall be software adjustable and shall expire unless reset.

2.2.7.2 Hand-Off-Auto Switch

Provide hand-off-auto switch with name plate to manually switch between off, DDC (auto) and manual (hand) control. Size and wire hand-off-auto switch to switch control (120 VAC or less), not line, circuitry. Wire all safety controls to protect circuit and equipment during both hand and auto operation.

2.3 OUTPUT HARDWARE

2.3.1 Dampers

Damper shall conform to **SMACNA HVAC Duct Const Stds.**

- a. A single damper section shall have blades no longer than **48 inches** and shall be no higher than **72 inches**. Maximum damper blade width shall be **8 inches**. Larger sized damper shall be made from a combination of sections.
- b. Dampers shall be steel, or other materials where shown. Flat blades shall be made rigid by folding the edges. Blades shall be provided with compressible seals at points of contact. The channel frames of the dampers shall be provided with jamb seals to minimize air leakage. Dampers shall not leak in excess of **20 cfm per square foot** at **4 inches water** gage static pressure when closed. Seals shall be suitable for an operating temperature range of minus **40 degrees F** to **200 degrees F**. Dampers shall be rated at not less than **2000 fpm** air velocity. All blade-operating linkages shall be within the frame so that blade-connecting devices within the same damper section will not be located directly in the air stream. Damper axles shall be **0.5 inch** (minimum) plated steel rods supported in the damper frame by stainless steel or bronze bearings. Blades mounted vertically shall be supported by thrust bearings. Pressure drop through dampers shall not exceed **0.04 inch water** gage at **1000 fpm** in the wide-open position. Frames shall not be less than **2 inches** in width. Dampers shall be tested in accordance with **AMCA 500-D**.
- c. Operating links external to dampers (such as crank arms, connecting rods, and line shafting for transmitting motion from damper actuators to dampers) shall withstand a load equal to twice the maximum required damper-operating force. Rod lengths shall be adjustable. Links shall be brass, bronze, zinc-coated steel, or stainless steel. Moving parts in contact with one another shall be of different materials. Working parts of joints and clevises shall be brass, bronze, or stainless steel. Adjustments of crank arms shall control the open and closed position of dampers.

2.3.2 Actuators

2.3.2.1 Electric Actuators

Provide direct drive electric actuators for all control applications, except where indicated otherwise. When operated at rated voltage, each actuator shall be capable of delivering torque required for continuous uniform motion and shall have end switch to limit travel, or shall withstand continuous stalling without damage. Actuators shall function properly with range of 85 to 110 percent of line voltage.

Provide gears manufactured from steel, copper alloy, fiber, or reinforced nylon. Provide hardened steel running shafts in sleeve bearing of copper alloy, hardened steel, nylon, or ball bearing. Provide two-position actuators of the single direction, spring return, or reversing type. Provide proportioning actuators capable of stopping at all points in the cycle and starting in either direction, from any point.

Provide reversing and proportioning actuators with limit switches to limit travel in either direction unless operator is stall type. Actuators shall have a simple switch for reversing direction, and a button to disengage clutch for manual adjustments. Provide reversible shaded pole, split capacitor, synchronous, or stepper type electric motors.

2.3.3 Output Switches

2.3.3.1 Control Relays

Shall be double pole, double throw (DPDT), UL listed, with contacts rated to the application, indicator light, and dust proof enclosure. Light indicator is lit when coil is energized and is off when coil is not energized. Relays shall be socket type, plug into a fixed base, and replaceable without need of tools or removing wiring. Encapsulated "PAM" type relays are permissible for terminal control applications.

2.3.3.2 Solenoid Air Valves

Each valve shall have three port operation: common, normally open, and normally closed. Internal parts shall be brass, bronze, or stainless steel. Valves shall be rated at 50 psig minimum when used in a control system operating at 25 psig or less, or 150 psig when used in a control system operating in the range 25 to 100 psig.

2.4 ELECTRICAL POWER AND DISTRIBUTION

For controller power provide a new, dedicated 120 VAC 60 Hz source, three wire (black, white, and green). Run green ground wire to panel ground; conduit grounds are not sufficient.

2.4.1 Transformers

Transformers shall conform to [UL 506](#). Power digital controllers and terminal control units (TCU's) from dedicated circuit breakers with surge protection specified. Transformers for digital controllers serving terminal equipment on lower level LANs may be grouped to have specified surge protection sized for the number of controllers on a single transformer. Provide a fuse on the transformer secondary side.

2.4.2 Surge Protection

Surge and transient protection consist of devices installed externally to digital controllers.

2.4.2.1 Power Line Surge Protection

Surge suppressors external to digital controller, shall be installed on all incoming AC power. Surge suppressor shall be rated by [UL 1449](#), have a fault indicating light, and have clamping voltage ratings below the following levels:

- a. Unit is a transient voltage surge suppressor 120 VAC/1 phase/2 wire plus ground, hard wire individual equipment protector.
- b. Unit must react within 5 nanoseconds and automatically reset.
- c. Voltage protection threshold, line to neutral, starts at no more than 211 volts peak on the 120 VAC line.
- d. The transient voltage surge suppressor must have an independent secondary stage equal to or greater than the primary stage joule rating.
- e. The primary suppression system components must be pure Silicon Avalanche Diodes.
- f. Silicon Avalanche Diodes or Metal Oxide Varistors are acceptable in the independent secondary suppression system.
- g. The Transient Suppression System shall incorporate an indication light which denotes whether the primary and/or secondary transient protection components is/are functioning.
- h. All system functions of the Transient Suppression System must be individually fused and not short circuit the AC power line at any time.
- i. The Transient Suppression System shall incorporate an EMI/RFI noise filter with a minimum attenuation of 13 dB at 10 kHz to 300 MHz.
- j. The system must comply with [IEEE C62.41](#), Class "B" requirements and be tested according to [IEEE C62.45](#).
- k. The system shall operate at -20 degrees C to +50 degrees C.

2.4.2.2 Telephone and Communication Line Surge Protection

Provide transient surge protection to protect the DDC controllers and LAN related devices from surges that occur on the phone lines (modem or direct connect) and on inter-unit LAN communications. Devices shall be UL listed.

- a. The surge protection shall be a rugged package with continuous, non-interrupting protection and not use crowbar technology. Instant automatic reset after safely eliminating transient surges, induced lightning, and other forms of transient over voltages.
- b. Unit must react within 5 nanoseconds using only solid-state

silicone avalanche technology.

- c. Unit shall be installed at the proper distance as recommended by the manufacturer.

2.4.2.3 Controller Input/Output Protection

Controller input/output points shall surge protection with optical isolation, metal oxide varistors (MOV), or silicon avalanche devices. Fuses are not permitted for surge protection.

2.4.3 Wiring

Provide complete electric wiring for DDC System, including wiring to transformer primaries. Control circuit wiring shall not run in the same conduit as power wiring over 100 volts. Circuits operating at more than 100 Volts shall be in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Circuits operating at 100 Volts or less shall be defined as low voltage and shall be run in rigid or flexible conduit, metallic tubing, metal raceways or wire trays, or armored cable. Provide circuit and wiring protection as required by NFPA 70. Aluminum-sheathed cable or aluminum conduit may be used but shall not be buried in concrete. Use conduit or plenum-rated cable in HVAC plenums. HVAC plenums include the space between a drop ceiling and the architectural ceiling, within walls, and within ductwork. Protect exposed wiring from abuse and damage.

2.4.3.1 AC Control Wiring

- a. Control wiring for 24 V circuits shall be insulated copper 18 AWG minimum and rated for 300 VAC service.
- b. Wiring for 120 V shall be 14 AWG minimum and rated for 600 V service.

2.4.3.2 Analog Signal Wiring

Analog signal wiring shall be 18 AWG single or multiple twisted pair. Each cable shall be 100 percent shielded, and have 20 AWG drain wire. Each wire shall have insulation rated to 300 V AC. Cables shall have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper (cable-shield tape). Install analog signal wiring in conduit separate from AC power circuits.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Perform installation under supervision of competent technicians regularly employed in the installation of DDC systems.

3.1.1 Wiring Criteria

- a. Input/output identification: Permanently label each field wire, cable, or pneumatic tube at each end with unique descriptive identification.
- b. Rigid or flexible conduit shall be terminated at all sensors, panels, troughs, and output devices.

- c. Surge Protection: Install surge protection per manufacturer's specification.
- d. Grounding: Ground controllers and cabinets to a good earth ground. Ground controller to a ground in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Conduit grounding alone is not sufficient; all grounding must have a direct path to building earth ground. Ground sensor drain wire shields at controller end.
- e. Contractor is responsible for correcting all associated ground loop problems.
- f. Wiring in panel enclosures shall run in covered wire track.

3.1.2 Digital Controllers

Do not divide control of a single mechanical system such as an air handling unit, boiler, chiller, or terminal equipment between two or more controllers. A single controller shall manage control functions for a single mechanical system. It is permissible, however, to manage more than one mechanical system with a single controller.

3.1.3 Temperature Sensors

Provide temperature sensors in locations to sense the appropriate condition. Provide sensor where they are easy to access and service without special tools. Calibrate sensors to accuracy specified. In no case will sensors designed for one application be installed for another application.

3.1.3.1 Room Temperature Sensors

Provide on interior walls to sense average room temperature conditions. Avoid locations near heat sources or which may be covered by office furniture. Room temperature sensors should not be mounted on exterior walls when other locations are available. Mount center of sensor at 5 feet above finished floor.

3.1.3.2 Duct Temperature Sensors

- a. Provide sensors in ductwork in general locations as indicated. Select specific sensor location within duct to accurately sense appropriate air temperatures. Do not locate sensors in dead air spaces or positions obstructed by ducts or equipment. Install gaskets between the sensor housing and duct wall. Seal duct and insulation penetrations.
- b. String duct averaging sensors horizontally between two rigid supports in a serpentine position to sense average conditions. Insulate temperature sensing elements from supports. Provide hinged duct access doors to install averaging sensors if needed.
- c. Locate freeze protection sensors in appropriate locations to sense lowest temperatures, to avoid potential problems with air stratification. Lowest horizontal pass shall be not more than 1 foot above bottom tube of coil.

3.1.3.3 Immersion Temperature Sensors

Provide thermowells for sensors measuring temperatures in liquid applications or pressure vessels. Locate wells to sense continuous flow conditions. Do not install wells using extension couplings. Where piping diameters are smaller than the length of the wells, provide wells in piping at elbows to sense flow across entire area of well. Wells shall not restrict flow area to less than 70 percent of pipe area. Increase piping size as required to avoid restriction. Provide thermowells with thermal transmission material within the well.

3.1.3.4 Outside Air Temperature Sensors

Provide outside air temperature sensor in weatherproof enclosure on north side of the building, away from exhaust hoods, air intakes and other areas that may affect temperature readings. Provide sun shields to from direct sunlight.

3.1.4 Damper Actuators

Actuators shall not be mounted in the air stream.

3.1.5 Thermometers

Provide thermometers at locations indicated. Mount thermometers to allow reading when standing on the floor.

3.1.6 Differential Pressure Sensors

- a. Duct Static Pressure Sensing: Locate duct static pressure tip approximately two-thirds of distance from supply fan to end of duct with the greatest pressure drop.
- b. Pumping Proof with Differential Pressure Switches: Install high pressure side between pump discharge and check valve.
- c. Steam Pressure Sensing: Install snubbers and isolation valves on steam pressure sensing applications.
- d. Variable Speed Control: The cycle time and characteristics of the input signal from the differential pressure sensors shall be fully compatible with the variable speed controller. Coordinate the requirements with the provided associated equipment.

3.1.7 Pressure Gages

Pneumatic output lines shall have pressure gages mounted near the digital controllers.

3.1.8 Control Drawings

- a. Post laminated copies of as-built control system drawings in each mechanical room.
- b. Provide 3 sets of as-built control drawings to the Contracting Officer.

3.2 CONTROLLER TUNING

The Contractor shall tune each controller in a manner consistent with that described in the *ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook*. Tuning shall consist of adjustment of the proportional, integral, and where applicable, the derivative (PID) settings to provide stable closed-loop control. Each loop shall be tuned while the system or plant is operating at a high gain (worst case) condition, where high gain can generally be defined as a low-flow or low-load condition. Upon final adjustment of the PID settings, in response to a change in controller setpoint, the controlled variable shall settle out at the new setpoint with no more than two (2) oscillations above and below setpoint. Upon settling out at the new setpoint the controller output shall be steady. With the exception of naturally slow processes such as zone temperature control, the controller shall settle out at the new setpoint within five (5) minutes. The Contractor shall return the controller to its original setpoint and shall record and submit the final PID configuration settings with the O&M Instructions and on the associated Points Schedule.

3.3 TEST AND BALANCE SUPPORT

Controls contractor will coordinate with and provide full time on-site technical support to test and balance (TAB) personnel. This support shall include:

- a. On-site operation of control systems for proper operating modes during all phases of balancing and testing.
- b. Control setpoint adjustments for proper balancing of all relevant mechanical systems, including VAV boxes.
- c. Setting all control loops with setpoints and adjustments determined by TAB personnel.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 General

- a. Obtain approval of the field test plan and performance verification test plan for each phase of testing before beginning that phase of testing. Give the Contracting Officer written notification of planned testing at least 30 days prior to test. Notification shall be accompanied by the proposed test procedures. In no case will the Contractor be allowed to start testing without written Government approval of field test plan and performance verification test plan.
- b. Demonstrate compliance of the heating, ventilating, and air conditioning control system with the contract documents. Furnish personnel, equipment, instrumentation, and supplies necessary to perform calibration and site testing. Ensure that test personnel are regularly employed in the testing and calibration of DDC systems.
- c. Testing will include field tests and performance verification tests. Field tests shall demonstrate proper calibration of input and output devices, and the operation of specific equipment. Performance verification test shall ensure proper execution of the sequence of operation and proper tuning of control loops.

- d. Before scheduling the performance verification test, furnish field test documentation and written Certified Statement of Field Test Completion to the Contracting Officer for approval. The statement, certified by the DDC system provider, states that the installed system has been calibrated, tested, and is ready for the performance verification test. Do not start the performance verification test prior to receiving written permission from the Government.
- e. Tests are subject to oversight and approval by the Contracting Officer. The testing shall not be run during scheduled seasonal off-periods of heating and cooling systems.

3.4.2 Test Reporting for Field Testing and Performance Verification Tests

- a. During and after completion of the Field Tests, and again after the Performance Verification Tests, identify, determine causes, replace, repair or calibrate equipment that fails to meet the specification, and submit a written report to the Government.
- b. Document all tests with detailed test results. Explain in detail the nature of each failure and corrective action taken. Provide a written report containing test documentation after the Field Tests and again after the Performance Verification Tests. Convene a test review meeting at the job site to present the results to the Government. As part of this test review meeting, demonstrate by performing all portions of the field tests or performance verification test that each failure has been corrected. Based on the report and test review meeting, the Government will determine either the restart point or successful completion of testing. Do not retest until after receipt of written notification by the Government. At the conclusion of retest, assessment will be repeated.

3.4.3 Field Test Plan

Obtain approval of the field test plan for each phase of testing before beginning that phase of testing. Give to the Contracting Officer written notification of planned testing at least 45 days prior to test. Notification shall be accompanied by the proposed test procedures. In no case will the Contractor be allowed to start testing without written Government approval of test procedures. The field test plan shall consist of detailed instructions for complete testing to prove performance of the heating, ventilating and air-conditioning system and digital control system and shall include tests requirements specified in the PART 3 paragraph entitled "Contractor's Field Tests".

3.4.4 Performance Verification Test Plan

Obtain approval of the performance verification test plan for each phase of testing before beginning that phase of testing. These test phases shall cover the same phases as those for the field tests. Submit this test plan along with the field test plan. In no case will the Contractor be allowed to start performance verification testing without written Government approval of the performance verification test plan. The test plan shall consist of detailed step-by-step instructions for complete testing to prove control system maintains set points, control loops are tuned, and controllers are programmed for the correct sequence of operation. The test

plan shall also cover test requirements specified in the PART 3 paragraph entitled "Performance Verification Test."

3.4.5 Contractor's Field Tests

Field tests shall include the following:

3.4.5.1 System Inspection

Observe the HVAC system in its shutdown condition. Check dampers and valves for proper normal positions. Document each position for the test report.

3.4.5.2 Calibration Accuracy and Operation of Inputs Test

Verify correct calibration and operation of input instruments. For each sensor and transmitter, including those for temperature, pressure, humidity, and air quality, record the reading at the sensor or transmitter location using calibrated test equipment. On the same table, record the corresponding reading at the digital controller for the test report. The test equipment shall have been calibrated within one year of use. Test equipment calibration shall be traceable to the measurement standards of the National Institute of Standards and Technology.

3.4.5.3 Actuator Range Adjustment Test

With the digital controller, apply a control signal to each actuator and verify that the actuator operates properly from its normal position to full range of stroke position. Record actual spring ranges and normal positions for all modulating control valves and dampers. Include documentation in the test report.

3.4.5.4 Digital Controller Startup and Memory Test

Demonstrate that programming is not lost after a power failure, and digital controllers automatically resume proper control after a power failure.

3.4.5.5 Surge Protection Test

Show that surge protection, meeting the requirements of this specification, has been installed on incoming power to the digital controllers and on communications lines.

3.4.5.6 Application Software Operation Test

Test compliance of the application software for:

- a. Ability to communicate with digital controllers, uploading and downloading of control programs
- b. Text editing program: Demonstrate ability to edit the control program off line.
- c. Reporting of alarm conditions: Force alarms conditions for each alarm, and ensure workstation receives alarms.
- d. Reporting trend and status reports: Demonstrate ability of software to receive, display, and save trend and status reports.

3.4.6 Performance Verification Tests

Conduct the performance verification tests to demonstrate control system maintains setpoints, control loops are tuned, and controllers are programmed for the correct sequence of operation. Conduct performance verification test during seven days of continuous HVAC and DDC systems operation and before final acceptance of work. Specifically the performance verification test shall demonstrate the following:

3.4.6.1 Execution of Sequence of Operation

Demonstrate the HVAC system operates properly through the complete sequence of operation, for example seasonal, occupied/unoccupied, and warm-up. Demonstrate proper control system response for abnormal conditions by simulating these conditions. Demonstrate hardware interlocks and safeties work. Demonstrate the control system performs the correct sequence of control after a loss of power.

3.4.6.2 Control Loop Stability and Accuracy

Furnish the Government graphed trends of control loops to demonstrate the control loop is stable and that setpoint is maintained. Control loop response shall respond to setpoint changes and stabilize in 3 minutes. Control loop trend data shall be real time and the time between data points shall not be greater than one minute. The contractor shall provide a printer, either the project printer or temporary, at the job site for printing graphed trends. The printer shall remain on the job site throughout Performance Verification Testing to allow printing trends.

3.5 TRAINING

Submit a training course schedule, syllabus, and training materials 14 days prior to the start of training. Obtain approval of the training course before beginning that phase of training. Furnish a qualified instructor to conduct training courses for designated personnel in the maintenance and operation of the HVAC and DDC system. Orient training to the specific system being installed under this contract. Use operation and maintenance manual as the primary instructional aid in contractor provided activity personnel training. Base training on the Operations and Maintenance manuals and a DDC training manual. Manuals shall be delivered for each trainee with two additional sets delivered for archiving at the project site. Training manuals shall include an agenda, defined objectives and a detailed description of the subject matter for each lesson. Furnish audio-visual equipment and all other training materials and supplies. A training day is defined as 8 hours of classroom or lab instruction, including two 15 minute breaks and excluding lunch time, Monday through Friday, during the daytime shift in effect at the training facility. For guidance, the Contractor should assume the attendees will have a high school education and are familiar with HVAC systems.

3.5.1 DDC Training Phase I

The first class shall be taught for a period of 1 consecutive training day at least 2 weeks prior to the scheduled Performance Verification Test. The first course shall be taught in a government provided facility on base. Training shall be classroom, but have hands-on operation of similar digital controllers. A maximum of 5 personnel will attend this course. Upon completion of this course, each student should be able to perform elementary operations and describe the general hardware architecture and

functionality of the system. This course shall include but not be limited to:

- a. Theory of operation
- b. Hardware architecture
- c. Operation of the system
- d. Operator commands
- e. Control sequence programming
- f. Data base entry
- g. Reports and logs
- h. Alarm reports
- i. Diagnostics

3.5.2 DDC Training Phase II

The second course shall be taught in the field, using the operating equipment at the project site for a total of 1 day. A maximum of 5 personnel will attend the course. The course shall consist of hands-on training under the constant monitoring of the instructor. Course content should duplicate DDC Training Phase I course as applied to the installed system. The instructor shall determine password issued to each student before each session. Upon completion of this course, students should be fully proficient in the operation of each system function.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 31 13.00 40

METAL DUCTS

05/16

PART 1 GENERAL

Section 23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS apply to work specified in this section.

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

- AISC 325 (2017) Steel Construction Manual
- AISC 360 (2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

- ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK (2012) Handbook, HVAC Systems and Equipment (IP Edition)
- ASHRAE FUN IP (2017) Fundamentals Handbook, I-P Edition

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

- AWS A5.8/A5.8M (2011; Amendment 2012) Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
- ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
- ASTM A653/A653M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
- ASTM A924/A924M (2017a) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
- ASTM C1071 (2016) Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material)

ASTM D257 (2014) Standard Test Methods for D-C Resistance or Conductance of Insulating Materials

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A (2018) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)

SMACNA 1966 (2005) HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, 3rd Edition

SMACNA 1987 (2006) HVAC Duct Systems Inspection Guide, 3rd Edition

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)

SAE AMS 2480 (2009; Rev H) Phosphate Treatment, Paint, Base

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 181 (2013; Reprint Apr 2017) UL Standard for Safety Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors

UL 555 (2006; Reprint Aug 2016) UL Standard for Safety Fire Dampers

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Connection Diagrams; G

Offset Fitting Configurations; G

SD-03 Product Data

Equipment and Performance Data

Galvanized Steel Ductwork Materials; G

Double-Wall Sheet Metal Ducts; G

Turning Vanes; G

Flexible Duct Materials; G

Manual Volume Dampers; G

SD-07 Certificates

Listing of Product Installations

Galvanized Steel Ductwork Materials

Double-Wall Sheet Metal Ducts
Turning Vanes

Dampers

Flexible Connectors

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Record Drawings; G

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Include the manufacturer's style or catalog numbers, specification and drawing reference numbers, warranty information, and fabrication site information within material, equipment, and fixture lists.

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide low-pressure systems ductwork and plenums where maximum air velocity is 2,000-feet per minute (fpm) and maximum static pressure is 2-inches water gage (wg), positive or negative.

Submit connection diagrams for low pressure ductwork systems indicating the relation and connection of devices and apparatus by showing the general physical layout of all controls, the interconnection of one system (or portion of system) with another, and internal tubing, wiring, and other devices.

2.1.1 Design Requirements

Submit records of existing conditions including the results of a survey consisting of work area conditions, and features of existing structures and facilities within and adjacent to the jobsite.

2.2 COMPONENTS

2.2.1 Round Sheet Metal Duct Fittings

Submit **offset fitting configurations** for approval. Shop fabricate fittings.

2.2.1.1 Fittings Construction

Manufacture as separate fittings, not as tap collars welded or brazed into duct sections.

Provide two-piece type miter elbows for angles less than 31 degrees, three-piece type for angles 31 through 60 degrees, and five-piece type for angles 61 through 90 degrees. Ensure centerline radius of elbows is 1-1/2 times fitting cross section diameter.

Provide conical type crosses, increasers, reducers, reducing tees, and 90-degree tees.

Ensure cutouts in fitting body are equal to branch tap dimension or, where smaller, excess material is flared and rolled into smooth radius nozzle configuration.

2.2.2 Double-Wall Aluminum Ducts

Shop fabricate ducts and fittings.

Construction comprises of an airtight, vapor barrier, **aluminum** outer pressure shell, a **2 inch** insulation layer, and **an aluminum** inner liner that completely covers the insulation throughout the system. **Provide standing seam counter flashing on top and sides.**

Provide insulation conforming to **NFPA 90A** and **ASTM C1071** for thermal conductivity in accordance with **ASTM D257**.

2.2.3 Fittings

Make **round branch connections with bell mouth** tap collars into duct sections.

Construct two-piece type elbows for angles through 35 degrees, three-piece type for angles 36 through 71 degrees, and five-piece type for angles 72 through 90 degrees.

2.2.4 Turning Vanes

Provide double-wall type turning vanes, commercially manufactured.

2.2.5 Dampers

Construct low pressure drop, high-velocity manual volume dampers, and high-velocity fire dampers in accordance with **ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK**, Chapter 16, **ASHRAE FUN IP**, Chapter 32 and **SMACNA 1966**.

2.2.6 Flexible Connectors for Sheet Metal

Use UL listed connectors, **30-ounce per square yard**, waterproof, fire-retardant, airtight, woven fibrous-glass cloth, double coated with

chloroprene. Clear width, not including clamping section, is 6 to 8-inches.

2.2.7 Duct Hangers

For duct hangers in contact with galvanized duct surfaces, provide galvanized steel painted with inorganic zinc.

2.2.8 Mill-Rolled Reinforcing and Supporting Materials

Provide mill-rolled structural steel conforming to [ASTM A36/A36M](#). Whenever in contact with sheet metal ducting, provide galvanized steel in accordance with [ASTM A123/A123M](#).

In lieu of mill-rolled structural steel, submit equivalent strength, proprietary-design, rolled-steel structural support systems for approval.

2.2.9 Flexible Duct Materials

Ensure flexible duct connectors comply with [NFPA 90A](#), and conform with [UL 181](#), Class 1 material.

Provide wire-reinforced cloth duct consisting of a vinyl-impregnated and coated fibrous-glass cloth bonded to and supported by a corrosion-protected spring steel helix. Fabric may be a laminate of metallic film and fibrous glass. Ensure working pressure rating of ducting is not less than three times maximum system pressure, and the temperature range is [minus 20 to plus 175 degrees F](#).

Provide wire-reinforced fibrous-glass duct consisting of a minimum [1 pound/cubic foot](#) density fibrous glass, bonded to and supported by corrosion-protected spring helix. Vapor barriers are a minimum of [4 mil](#), pigmented polyvinylchloride film. Ensure duct is bendable without damage through 180 degrees with an inside bend radius not greater than two duct diameters. Minimum wall thickness is [1-inch](#). Thermal conductivity is not greater than [0.23 BTU per hour per square foot per degrees F](#) at 75 degrees F mean temperature. Ensure permeance is not greater than [0.10 perm](#). Working pressure range is from [minus 1/2-inch](#) wg to [plus 1-1/2-inches](#) wg. Working temperature ranges from [minus 20 to plus 250 degrees F](#). Minimum sustained velocity without delamination is [2,400 fpm](#). Use materials conforming to [NFPA 90A](#).

2.2.10 Manual Volume Dampers

Conform to [SMACNA 1966](#) for volume damper construction.

Equip dampers with an indicating quadrant regulator with a locking feature externally located and easily accessible for adjustment and standoff brackets to allow mounting outside external insulation. Where damper rod lengths exceed [30-inches](#), provide a regulator at each end of damper shaft.

2.2.10.1 Damper Construction

Provide all damper shafts with two-end bearings.

Ensure splitter damper is [22-gage](#) sheet metal and is [2 gages](#) heavier than

duct in which installed. Hinges are 1/8-inch thick door type.

Provide a full length damper shaft and extend it beyond the damper blade. use a 3/8-inch square shaft for damper lengths up to 20 -inches and a 1/2 -inch square shaft for damper lengths 20-inches and larger. Where necessary to prevent damper vibration or slippage, provide adjustable support rods with locking provisions external to duct at damper blade end.

Provide dampers in ducts having a width perpendicular to the axis of the damper that is greater than 12-inches of multiblade type having a substantial frame with blades fabricated of 16-gage metal. Provide blades not exceeding 10-inches in width and 48 -inches in length, pinned to 1/2 -inch diameter shafts. Ensure dampers greater than 48-inches in width are made in two or more sections with intermediate mullions, each section being mechanically interlocked with the adjoining section or sections. Provide blades with graphite-impregnated nylon bearings and connect so that adjoining blades rotate in opposite directions.

2.2.11 Fire Dampers and Wall Collars

Ensure fire damper locations are in accordance with NFPA 90A.

Provide fire dampers in ductwork at firewall barriers.

Construct and label fire dampers in accordance with UL 555 to provide damper and mounting fire-resistance that equals or exceeds fire-resistance of the construction in which installed. For link loads in excess of 20 pounds, provide UL-approved quartzoid links.

Construct wall collars in accordance with UL 555.

2.3 MATERIALS

2.3.1 Galvanized Steel Ductwork Materials

Provide hot-dip galvanized carbon steel ductwork sheet metal of lock-forming quality, with regular spangle-type zinc coating, conforming to ASTM A924/A924M and ASTM A653/A653M, Designation G90. Treat duct surfaces to be painted by annealing.

Conform to ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter 16, ASHRAE FUN IP, Chapter 32 and SMACNA 1966 for sheet metal gages and reinforcement thickness.

Low pressure ductwork minimum thicknesses are:

MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS	
<u>DUCT WIDTH</u> <u>INCHES</u>	<u>GAGE</u>
0-12	26
13-30	24
31-60	22

2.3.2 Brazing Materials

Provide silicon bronze brazing materials conforming to AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

2.3.3 Mill-Rolled Reinforcing and Supporting Materials

Conform to [ASTM A36/A36M](#) for mill-rolled structural steel. Wherever in contact with sheet metal ducting, galvanize to conforming with [ASTM A123/A123M](#) .

In lieu of mill-rolled structural steel, submit for approval, equivalent strength, proprietary design, rolled-steel structural support systems.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

For sheet metal surfaces to be painted, and surfaces to which adhesives are to be applied, clean surface of oil, grease, and deleterious substances.

Ensure strength is adequate to prevent failure under service pressure or vacuum created by fast closure of duct devices. Provide leaktight, automatic relief devices.

3.1.1 Construction Standards

Provide sheet metal construction in accordance with the recommendations for best practices in [ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK](#), Chapter 16, [ASHRAE FUN IP](#), Chapter 32, [SMACNA 1966](#), and [NFPA 90A](#).

Design and fabricate supplementary steel in accordance with [AISC 360](#) and [AISC 325](#).

Where construction methods for certain items are not described in the referenced standards or herein, perform the work in accordance with recommendations for best practice defined in [ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK](#).

3.2 INSTALLATION

Fabricate an airtight system. Include reinforcements, bracing, supports, framing, gasketing, sealing, and fastening to provide rigid construction and freedom from vibration, airflow-induced motion and noise, and excessive deflection at specified maximum system air pressure and velocity.

Provide offsets and transformations as required to avoid interference with the building construction, piping, or equipment.

Make plenum anchorage provisions, sheet metal joints, and other areas airtight and watertight by caulking, mating galvanized steel and concrete surfaces with a two-component elastomer.

3.2.1 Jointing

Enclose dampers located behind architectural intake or exhaust louvers by a rigid sheet metal collar and sealed to building construction with elastomers for complete air tightness.

Provide outside air-intake ducts and plenums made from sheet metal with soldered watertight joints.

3.2.2 Ducts

Wherever ducts pass through firewalls or through walls or floors dividing

conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces, provide a flanged segment in that surface during surface construction.

Where interiors of ducting may be viewed through air diffusion devices, construct the viewed interior with sheet metal and paint flat black.

3.2.2.1 Ductwork Cleaning Provisions

Protect open ducting from construction dust and debris in a manner approved by the Contracting Officer. Clean dirty assembled ducting by subjecting all main and branch interior surfaces to airstreams moving at velocities two times specified working velocities, at static pressures within maximum ratings. This may be accomplished by: filter-equipped portable blowers which remain the Contractor's property; wheel-mounted, compressed-air operated perimeter lances which direct the compressed air and which are pulled in the direction of normal airflow; or other means approved by the Contracting Officer. Use water- and oil- free compressed air for cleaning ducting. After construction is complete, and prior to acceptance of the work, remove construction dust and debris from exterior surfaces.

3.3 APPLICATION

3.3.1 Low Pressure Sheet Metal Ducts

Weld angle iron frames at corners and ends, whenever possible. Rivet or weld angle iron reinforcements to ducts not more than 6-inches on center, with not less than two points of attachment. Spot welding, where used, is 3-inches on center.

Seal standard seam joints with an elastomer compound to comply with SMACNA 1966 Seal Class A, B or C as applicable.

Limit crossbreaking to 4-feet and provide on all ducts 8-inches wide and wider. Provide bead reinforcement in lieu of crossbreaking where panel popping may occur. Where rigid insulation is applied, crossbreaking is not required.

3.3.1.1 Longitudinal Duct Seams

Provide Pittsburgh lock corner seams.

3.3.1.2 Joints and Gaskets

Bolt companion angle flanges together with 1/4-inch diameter bolts and nuts spaced 6-inches on center. Gasket flanged joints with chloroprene full-face gaskets 1/8-inch thick, with Shore A 40 durometer hardness. Use one piece gaskets, vulcanized at joints.

3.3.1.3 Flexible Duct Joints

Between flexible duct without sheet metal collars and round metal ductwork connections make joints by trimming the ends, coating the inside of the flexible duct for a distance equal to depth of insertion with elastomer caulk, and by securing with sheet metal screws or binding with a strap clamp.

3.3.1.4 Square Elbows

Provide single-vane duct turns in accordance with SMACNA 1966, use on ducts

12 inches in width and narrower.

Provide double-vane duct turns in accordance with SMACNA 1966.

3.3.1.5 Radius Elbows

Conform to SMACNA 1966 for radius elbows. Provide an inside radius equal to the width of the duct. Where installation conditions preclude use of standard elbows, the inside radius may be reduced to a minimum of .50 times duct width. Install turning vanes in accordance with the following schedule.

	RADIUS OF TURNING VANES IN PERCENT OF DUCT WIDTH		
WIDTH OF ELBOWS INCHES	<u>VANE NO. 1</u>	<u>VANE NO. 2</u>	<u>VANE NO. 3</u>
Up to 16	56	--	--
17 to 48	43	73	--
49 and over	37	55	83

Where two elbows are placed together in the same plane for ducts 30-inches wide and larger, continue the guide vanes through both elbows rather than spaced in accordance with above schedule.

3.3.1.6 Outlets, Inlets, and Duct Branches

Install branches, inlets, and outlets so that air turbulence is reduced to a minimum and air volume properly apportioned. Install adjustable splitter dampers at all supply junctions to permit adjustment of the amount of air entering the branch. Wherever an air-diffusion device is shown as being installed on the side, top, or bottom of a duct, and whenever a branch take-off is not of the splitter type; provide a commercially manufactured 45 degree side-take-off (STO) fitting with manual volume damper to allow adjustment of the air quantity and to provide an even flow of air across the device or duct it services.

Where a duct branch is to handle more than 25 percent of the air handled by the duct main, use a complete 90-degree increasing elbow with an inside radius of 0.75 times branch duct width. Size of the leading end of the increasing elbow within the main duct with the same ratio to the main duct size as the ratio of the related air quantities handled.

Where a duct branch is to handle 25 percent or less of the air handled by the duct main, construct the branch connection with a 45 degree side take-off entry in accordance with SMACNA 1966.

3.3.1.7 Duct Transitions

Where the shape of a duct changes, ensure the angle of the side of the transition piece does not exceed 30 degrees from the straight run of duct connected thereto.

Where equipment is installed in ductwork, ensure the angle of the side of the transition piece from the straight run of duct connected thereto does not exceed 30 degrees on the upstream side of the equipment and 30 degrees on the downstream side of the equipment.

3.3.1.8 Branch Connections

Construct radius tap-ins in accordance with [SMACNA 1966](#).

3.3.1.9 Access Openings

Construct access door in accordance with [SMACNA 1966](#), except that sliding doors may be used only for special conditions upon prior approval. Provide double-panel type doors.

Install access doors and panels in ductwork adjacent to fire dampers at any item requiring periodic inspection, adjustment, maintenance, or cleaning, and every [20-feet](#) for indoor air quality housekeeping purposes.

Minimum access opening size is [12 by 18-inches](#), unless precluded by duct dimensions or otherwise indicated.

Make airtight access doors that leak by adding or replacing hinges and latches or by construction of new doors adequately reinforced, hinged, and latched.

3.3.1.10 Duct Access for Cleaning

Make duct access particularly suitable for commercial duct cleaning methods utilizing vacuum devices. Space access openings with a frequency and at points that permits ready access to duct internals with essentially no duct or insulation cutting. Where access through an air-diffusion device or through access doors specified herein is not available at a specific point, provide [8-inch](#) diameter, [16-gage](#) access plates not more than [10-feet](#) on center. Where duct is insulated and vapor-sealed, provide mastic seals around circumference of access. When access plate is in place and insulated, externally identify the location.

3.3.1.11 Manual Volume Dampers

Provide balancing dampers of the splitter, butterfly, or multilouver type, to balance each respective main and branch duct.

For dampers regulated through ceilings provide a regulator concealed in a box mounted in the ceiling, with a cover finish aesthetically compatible with ceiling surface. Where ceiling is of removable construction, set regulators above the ceiling, and mark the location on ceiling in a manner acceptable to the Contracting Officer.

3.3.1.12 Flexible Connectors for Sheet Metal

Connect air handling equipment, ducts crossing building expansion joints, and fan inlets and outlets to upstream and downstream components by treated woven-cloth connectors.

Install connectors only after system fans are operative, and vibration isolation mountings have been adjusted. When system fans are operating, ensure connectors are free of wrinkles caused by misalignment or fan reaction. Width of surface is curvilinear.

3.3.2 Rectangular Sheet Metal Ducts

3.3.3 Round Sheet Metal Ducts

3.3.3.1 Duct Gages and Reinforcement

Sheet metal minimum thickness, joints, and reinforcement between joints shall be in accordance with [ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK](#), Chapter 16, [ASHRAE FUN IP](#), Chapter 32 and [SMACNA 1966](#).

3.3.3.2 Duct Joints

Provide duct joints manufactured by machine, with spiral locksets up to and including 60-inch diameters, and to dimensional tolerances compatible with fittings provided. Draw-band girth joints are not acceptable.

Prepare slip joints by coating the male fitting with elastomer sealing materials, exercising care to prevent mastic from entering fitting bore. Leave only a thin annular mastic line exposed internally. Use sheet metal screws to make assembly rigid, not less than four screws per joint, maximum spacing 6-inches. Do not use pop rivets. Tape and heat seal all joints.

3.3.3.3 Duct Transitions

Where the shape of a duct changes, ensure the angle of the side of the transition piece does not exceed 15 degrees from the straight run of duct connected thereto.

Where equipment is installed in ductwork, ensure the angle of the side of the transition piece from the straight run of duct connected thereto does not exceed 15 degrees on the upstream side of the equipment and 22-1/2 degrees on the downstream side of the equipment.

3.3.4 Radius Elbows

Fabricate elbow proportions and radius elbows in accordance with [ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK](#), Chapter 16, [ASHRAE FUN IP](#), Chapter 32 and [SMACNA 1966](#).

3.3.5 Plenum Connections

Ensure round duct connections are welded joint bellmouth type.

Ensure rectangular duct connections are bellmouth type, constructed in accordance with [ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK](#), Chapter 16, [ASHRAE FUN IP](#), Chapter 32 and [SMACNA 1966](#).

3.3.6 Duct Supports

Install duct support in accordance with [ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK](#), Chapter 16, [ASHRAE FUN IP](#), Chapter 32 and [SMACNA 1966](#). Meet the minimum size for duct hangers as specified in [ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK](#), Chapter 16, [ASHRAE FUN IP](#), Chapter 32 and [SMACNA 1966](#). Provide two hangers where necessary to eliminate sway. Support attachment to duct surfaces by bolt 4-inches on center.

Take the following into account in selection of a hanging system:

- a. Location and precedence of work under other sections
- b. Interferences of various piping and electrical conduit
- c. Equipment, and building configuration
- d. Structural and safety factor requirements
- e. Vibration, and imposed loads under normal and abnormal service conditions

Support sizes, configurations, and spacing are given to show the minimal type of supporting components required. If installed loads are excessive for the specified hanger spacing, hangers, and accessories reduce hanger spacing. After system startup, replace any duct support device which due to length, configuration, or size, vibrates or causes possible failure of a member. Do not use a ductwork support system that allows a cascade-type failure to occur.

Do not hang ductwork and equipment from roof deck, piping, or other ducts or equipment. Maximum span between any two points is **10-feet**, with lesser spans as required by duct assemblies, interferences, and permitted loads imposed.

Where support from metal deck systems is involved, coordinate support requirements with installation of metal deck.

3.3.6.1 Hangars

Attach hanger rods, angles, and straps to beam clamps. Receive approval from the Contracting Officer for concrete inserts, masonry anchors, and fasteners for the application.

Hardened high-carbon spring-steel fasteners fitted onto beams and miscellaneous structural steel are acceptable upon prior approval of each proposed application and upon field demonstration of conformance to specification requirements. Make fasteners from steel conforming to AISI Type 1055, treated and finished in conformance with **SAE AMS 2480**, Type Z (zinc phosphate base), Class 2 (supplementary treatment). Verify a 72-hour load-carrying capacity by a certified independent laboratory.

Where ductwork system contains heavy equipment, excluding air-diffusion devices and single-leaf dampers, hang such equipment independently of the ductwork by means of rods or angles of sizes adequate to support the load.

Cross-brace hangers to preclude swaying both vertically and laterally.

3.3.6.2 Installation

Ensure hanger spacing gives a 20-to-1 safety factor for supported load.

Maximum load supported by any two fasteners is **100 pounds**.

Install hangers on both sides of all duct turns, branch fittings, and transitions.

Friction rod assemblies are not acceptable.

3.3.6.3 Strap-type Hangars

Support rectangular ducts up to 36-inches by strap-type hangers attached at not less than three places to not less than two duct surfaces in different planes.

Perforated strap hangers are not acceptable.

3.3.6.4 Trapeze Hangars

Support rectangular ducting, 36-inches and larger, by trapeze hangers. Support ducts situated in unconditioned areas and required to have insulation with a vapor-sealed facing on trapeze hangers. Space hangers far enough out from the side of the duct to permit the duct insulation to be placed on the duct inside the trapeze. Do not penetrate the vapor-sealed facing with duct hangers.

Where trapeze hangers are used, support the bottom of the duct on angles sized as follows:

<u>WIDTH OF DUCT, INCHES</u>	<u>MINIMUM BOTTOM ANGLE SIZE, INCHES</u>
30 and smaller	1-1/4 by 1-1/4 by 1/8
31 to 48	1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8
49 to 72	1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 3/16
73 to 96	2 by 2 by 1/4
97 and wider	3 by 3 by 1/4

3.3.6.5 Purlins

Do not support ducting from roof purlins at points greater than one-sixth of the purlin span from the roof truss. Do not exceed 400 pounds load per hanger.

If the hanger load must exceed the above limit, provide reinforcing of purlin(s) or additional support beam(s). When an additional beam is used, have the beam bear on the top chord of the roof trusses, and also bear over the gusset plates of top chord. Stabilize the beam by connection to roof purlin along bottom flange.

Purlins used for supporting fire-protection sprinkler mains, electrical lighting fixtures, electrical power ducts, or cable trays are considered fully loaded. Provide supplemental reinforcing or auxiliary support steel for these purlins when used to support ductwork.

3.3.7 Flexible Connectors for Steel Metal

Connect air-handling equipment, ducts crossing building expansion joints, and fan inlets and outlets to upstream and downstream components with treated woven-cloth connectors.

Install connectors only after system fans are operative and all vibration isolation mountings have been adjusted. When system fans are operating, ensure connectors are free of wrinkles caused by misalignment or fan

reaction. Width of surface is curvilinear.

3.3.8 Insulation Protection Angles

Provide galvanized 20-gage sheet, formed into an angle with a 2-inch exposed long leg with a 3/8-inch stiffening break at outer edge, and with a variable concealed leg, depending upon insulation thickness.

Install angles over all insulation edges terminating by butting against a wall, floor foundation, frame, and similar construction. Fasten angles in place with blind rivets through the protection angle, insulation, and sheet metal duct or plenum. Install angles after final insulation covering has been applied.

3.3.9 Duct Probe Access

Provide holes with neat patches, threaded plugs, or threaded or twist-on caps for air-balancing pitot tube access. Provide extended-neck fittings where probe access area is insulated.

3.3.10 Openings In Roofs and Walls

Existing building openings are fixed in size and can not be resized without authorization. Provide equipment to suit existing opening size.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 Fire Damper Tests

Perform operational tests on each fire damper in the presence of the Contracting Officer by energizing a fusible link with localized heat. Provide and install new links after successful testing.

3.4.2 Inspection

Inspect ductwork in accordance with SMACNA 1987.

3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

3.5.1 Operation and Maintenance

Submit 6 copies of the operation and maintenance manuals 30 calendar days prior to testing the medium and high pressure ductwork systems. Update data and resubmit for final approval no later than 30 calendar days prior to contract completion.

Ensure operation and maintenance manuals are consistent with manufacturer's standard brochures, schematics, printed instructions, general operating procedures and safety precautions.

3.5.2 Record Drawings

Provide record drawings with current factual information. Include deviations from, and amendments to, the drawings. Include concealed or visible changes in the work. Label drawings "As-Built".

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 00 00.00 20

BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

07/06

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D709 (2017) Standard Specification for Laminated Thermosetting Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (2014) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14) National Electrical Code

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section applies to certain sections of Division 02, EXISTING CONDITIONS and Divisions 22 and 23, PLUMBING and HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING. This section applies to all sections of Division 26, ELECTRICAL, of this project specification unless specified otherwise in the individual sections. This section has been incorporated into, and thus, does not apply to, and is not referenced in the following sections.

Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

Section 26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- a. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, shall be as

defined in IEEE 100.

- b. The technical sections referred to herein are those specification sections that describe products, installation procedures, and equipment operations and that refer to this section for detailed description of submittal types.
- c. The technical paragraphs referred to herein are those paragraphs in PART 2 - PRODUCTS and PART 3 - EXECUTION of the technical sections that describe products, systems, installation procedures, equipment, and test methods.

1.4 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Electrical characteristics for this project shall be 480 volts secondary, three phase, four wire. Final connections to the power distribution system at the existing existing switchgear shall be made by the Contractor as directed by the Contracting Officer.

1.5 ADDITIONAL SUBMITTALS INFORMATION

Submittals required in other sections that refer to this section must conform to the following additional requirements as applicable.

1.5.1 Shop Drawings (SD-02)

Include wiring diagrams and installation details of equipment indicating proposed location, layout and arrangement, control panels, accessories, piping, ductwork, and other items that must be shown to ensure a coordinated installation. Wiring diagrams shall identify circuit terminals and indicate the internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnection between each item of equipment. Drawings shall indicate adequate clearance for operation, maintenance, and replacement of operating equipment devices.

1.5.2 Product Data (SD-03)

Submittal shall include performance and characteristic curves.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship shall be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.6.2 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year period shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar

circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in the technical section.

1.6.2.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.6.2.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site shall not be used, unless specified otherwise.

1.7 WARRANTY

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.8 POSTED OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

Provide for each system and principal item of equipment as specified in the technical sections for use by operation and maintenance personnel. The operating instructions shall include the following:

- a. Wiring diagrams, control diagrams, and control sequence for each principal system and item of equipment.
- b. Start up, proper adjustment, operating, lubrication, and shutdown procedures.
- c. Safety precautions.
- d. The procedure in the event of equipment failure.
- e. Other items of instruction as recommended by the manufacturer of each system or item of equipment.

Print or engrave operating instructions and frame under glass or in approved laminated plastic. Post instructions where directed. For operating instructions exposed to the weather, provide weather-resistant materials or weatherproof enclosures. Operating instructions shall not fade when exposed to sunlight and shall be secured to prevent easy removal or peeling.

1.9 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

1.10 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

ASTM D709. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified in the technical sections or as indicated on the drawings. Each nameplate inscription shall identify the function and, when applicable, the position. Nameplates shall be melamine plastic, 0.125 inch thick, black with white center core. Surface shall be matte finish. Corners shall be square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core. Minimum size of nameplates shall be one by 2.5 inches. Lettering shall be a minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block style.

1.11 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

Electrical installations shall conform to **IEEE C2**, **NFPA 70**, and requirements specified herein.

1.12 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

Where specified in the technical sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance of the specified systems and equipment, including pertinent safety requirements as required. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and shall be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work. Instruction shall be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished shall be as specified in the individual section.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FACTORY APPLIED FINISH

Electrical equipment shall have factory-applied painting systems which shall, as a minimum, meet the requirements of **NEMA 250** corrosion-resistance test.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Painting shall be as specified in the section specifying the associated electrical equipment.

3.2 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 20 00

INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

02/14

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- ASTM B1 (2013) Standard Specification for Hard-Drawn Copper Wire
- ASTM B8 (2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft
- ASTM D709 (2017) Standard Specification for Laminated Thermosetting Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

- IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms
- IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

- ANSI C80.1 (2005) American National Standard for Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit (ERSC)
- ANSI C80.3 (2015) American National Standard for Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT)
- NEMA 250 (2014) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
- NEMA FU 1 (2012) Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses
- NEMA ICS 1 (2000; R 2015) Standard for Industrial Control and Systems: General Requirements
- NEMA ICS 6 (1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures
- NEMA RN 1 (2005; R 2013) Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit and Intermediate Metal Conduit
- NEMA WD 1 (1999; R 2015) Standard for General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices

- NEMA WD 6 (2016) Wiring Devices Dimensions Specifications

- NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

- NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14) National Electrical Code

- TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

- TIA-607 (2011b) Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises

- U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

- 29 CFR 1910.147 The Control of Hazardous Energy (Lock Out/Tag Out)

- UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

- UL 1 (2005; Reprint Aug 2017) UL Standard for Safety Flexible Metal Conduit

- UL 1242 (2006; Reprint Mar 2014) Standard for Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit -- Steel

- UL 1449 (2014; Reprint Jul 2017) UL Standard for Safety Surge Protective Devices

- UL 1569 (2014; Reprint Jul 2016) UL Standard for Safety Metal-Clad Cables

- UL 1660 (2014) Liquid-Tight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit

- UL 360 (2013; Reprint Jan 2015) Liquid-Tight Flexible Steel Conduit

- UL 4 (2004; Reprint Feb 2018) Standard for Armored Cable

- UL 4248-1 (2017) UL Standard for Safety Fuseholders - Part 1: General Requirements

- UL 486A-486B (2013; Reprint Jan 2016) Wire Connectors

- UL 486C (2018) Splicing Wire Connectors

- UL 489 (2016) UL Standard for Safety Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures

- UL 498 (2017; Reprint Nov 2017) UL Standard for

Safety Attachment Plugs and Receptacles

- UL 50 (2015) UL Standard for Safety Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations
- UL 510 (2017) UL Standard for Safety Polyvinyl Chloride, Polyethylene and Rubber Insulating Tape
- UL 514A (2013; Reprint Aug 2017) UL Standard for Safety Metallic Outlet Boxes
- UL 514B (2012; Reprint Nov 2014) Conduit, Tubing and Cable Fittings
- UL 514C (2014; Reprint Dec 2014) Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes, and Covers
- UL 6 (2007; Reprint Nov 2014) Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel
- UL 67 (2009; Reprint Nov 2017) UL Standard for Safety Panelboards
- UL 797 (2007; Reprint Mar 2017) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Metallic Tubing -- Steel
- UL 83 (2017) UL Standard for Safety Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables
- UL 869A (2006) Reference Standard for Service Equipment
- UL 870 (2016) UL Standard for Safety Wireways, Auxiliary Gutters, and Associated Fittings
- UL 943 (2016; Reprint Feb 2018) UL Standard for Safety Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters

1.2 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, are as defined in IEEE 100.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Panelboards; G

Wireways; G

Marking strips drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Receptacles; G

Circuit breakers; G

Enclosed circuit breakers; G

Surge protective devices; G

Include performance and characteristic curves.

SD-06 Test Reports

600-volt wiring test; G

Grounding system test; G

SD-07 Certificates

Fuses; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Fuses

Submit coordination data as specified in paragraph, FUSES of this section.

1.4.2 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" or "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Provide equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.4.3 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship and:

- a. Have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening including applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size.
- b. Have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period.
- c. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, provide products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

1.4.3.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.4.3.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site are not acceptable.

1.5 MAINTENANCE

1.6 WARRANTY

Provide equipment items supported by service organizations that are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

As a minimum, meet requirements of UL, where UL standards are established for those items, and requirements of NFPA 70 for all materials, equipment, and devices.

2.2 CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

Conform to the following:

2.2.1 Rigid Metallic Conduit

2.2.1.1 Rigid, Threaded Zinc-Coated Steel Conduit

ANSI C80.1, UL 6.

2.2.2 Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC)

UL 1242, zinc-coated steel only.

2.2.3 Electrical, Zinc-Coated Steel Metallic Tubing (EMT)

UL 797, ANSI C80.3.

2.2.4 Plastic-Coated Rigid Steel and IMC Conduit

NEMA RN 1, Type 40(40 mils thick).

2.2.5 Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 1.

2.2.5.1 Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit, Steel

UL 360.

2.2.6 Fittings for Metal Conduit, EMT, and Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 514B. Ferrous fittings: cadmium- or zinc-coated in accordance with UL 514B.

2.2.6.1 Fittings for Rigid Metal Conduit and IMC

Threaded-type. Split couplings unacceptable.

2.2.6.2 Fittings for EMT

Steelcompression type.

2.2.7 Liquid-Tight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit

UL 1660.

2.3 SURFACE RACEWAY

2.4 OUTLET BOXES AND COVERS

UL 514A, cadmium- or zinc-coated, if ferrous metal. UL 514C, if nonmetallic.

2.5 CABINETS, JUNCTION BOXES, AND PULL BOXES

Volume greater than 100 cubic inches, UL 50, hot-dip, zinc-coated, if sheet steel.

2.6 WIRES AND CABLES

Provide wires and cables in accordance applicable requirements of NFPA 70 and UL for type of insulation, jacket, and conductor specified or indicated. Do not use wires and cables manufactured more than 12 months prior to date of delivery to site.

2.6.1 Conductors

Provide the following:

- a. Conductor sizes and capacities shown are based on copper, unless indicated otherwise.
- b. Conductors No. 8 AWG and larger diameter: stranded.
- c. Conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter: solid.
- d. Conductors for remote control, alarm, and signal circuits, classes 1, 2, and 3: stranded unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- e. All conductors: copper.

2.6.1.1 Minimum Conductor Sizes

Provide minimum conductor size in accordance with the following:

- a. Branch circuits: No. 12 AWG.
- b. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits: No. 14 AWG.
- c. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits: No. 16 AWG.
- d. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits: No. 22 AWG.

2.6.2 Color Coding

Provide color coding for service, feeder, branch, control, and signaling circuit conductors.

2.6.2.1 Ground and Neutral Conductors

Provide color coding of ground and neutral conductors as follows:

- a. Grounding conductors: Green.
- b. Neutral conductors: White.
- c. Exception, where neutrals of more than one system are installed in same raceway or box, other neutrals color coding: white with a different colored (not green) stripe for each.

2.6.2.2 Ungrounded Conductors

Provide color coding of ungrounded conductors in different voltage systems as follows:

- a. 208/120 volt, three-phase
 - (1) Phase A - black
 - (2) Phase B - red
 - (3) Phase C - blue
- b. 480/277 volt, three-phase
 - (1) Phase A - brown
 - (2) Phase B - orange

(3) Phase C - yellow

c. 2.6.3 Insulation

Unless specified or indicated otherwise or required by NFPA 70, provide power and lighting wires rated for 600-volts, Type THWN/THHN conforming to UL 83, except that grounding wire may be type TW conforming to UL 83; remote-control and signal circuits: Type TW or TF, conforming to UL 83. Where lighting fixtures require 90-degree Centigrade (C) conductors, provide only conductors with 90-degree C insulation or better.

2.6.4 Bonding Conductors

ASTM B1, solid bare copper wire for sizes No. 8 AWG and smaller diameter; ASTM B8, Class B, stranded bare copper wire for sizes No. 6 AWG and larger diameter.

2.6.5 Metal-Clad Cable

UL 1569; NFPA 70, Type MC cable.

2.6.6 Armored Cable

UL 4; NFPA 70, Type AC cable.

2.7 SPLICES AND TERMINATION COMPONENTS

UL 486A-486B for wire connectors and UL 510 for insulating tapes. Connectors for No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter wires: insulated, pressure-type in accordance with UL 486A-486B or UL 486C (twist-on splicing connector). Provide solderless terminal lugs on stranded conductors.

2.8 DEVICE PLATES

Provide the following:

- a. UL listed, one-piece device plates for outlets to suit the devices installed.
- b. For metal outlet boxes, plates on unfinished walls: zinc-coated sheet steel or cast metal having round or beveled edges.
- f. Screws: machine-type with countersunk heads in color to match finish of plate.
- g. Sectional type device plates are not be permitted.
- h. Plates installed in wet locations: gasketed and UL listed for "wet locations."

2.9 FUSES

NEMA FU 1. Provide complete set of fuses for each fusible switch. Coordinate time-current characteristics curves of fuses serving motors or connected in series with circuit breakers for proper operation. Submit coordination data for approval. Provide fuses with a voltage rating not less than circuit voltage.

2.9.1 Fuseholders

Provide in accordance with [UL 4248-1](#).

2.10 RECEPTACLES

Provide the following:

- a. [UL 498](#), hard use (also designated heavy-duty), grounding-type.
- b. Ratings and configurations: as indicated.
- c. Bodies: ivory as per [NEMA WD 1](#).
- d. Face and body: thermoplastic supported on a metal mounting strap.
- e. Dimensional requirements: per [NEMA WD 6](#).
- f. Screw-type, side-wired wiring terminals or of the solderless pressure type having suitable conductor-release arrangement.
- g. Grounding pole connected to mounting strap.
- h. The receptacle: containing triple-wipe power contacts and double or triple-wipe ground contacts.

2.10.1 Weatherproof Receptacles

Provide receptacles, UL listed for use in "wet locations". Include cast metal box with gasketed, hinged, lockable and weatherproof while-in-use, polycarbonate, UV resistant/stabilized cover plate.

2.10.2 Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter Receptacles

[UL 943](#), duplex type for mounting in standard outlet box. Provide device capable of detecting current leak of 6 milliamperes or greater and tripping per requirements of [UL 943](#) for Class A ground-fault circuit interrupter devices. Provide screw-type, side-wired wiring terminals or pre-wired (pigtail) leads.

2.11 PANELBOARDS

Provide panelboards in accordance with the following:

- a. [UL 67](#) and [UL 50](#) having a short-circuit current rating as indicated.
- b. Panelboards for use as service disconnecting means: additionally conform to [UL 869A](#).
- c. Panelboards: circuit breaker-equipped.
- d. Designed such that individual breakers can be removed without disturbing adjacent units or without loosening or removing supplemental insulation supplied as means of obtaining clearances as required by UL.
- e. "Specific breaker placement" is required in panelboards to match the breaker placement indicated in the panelboard schedule on the drawings.

- f. Use of "Subfeed Breakers" is not acceptable unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- h. Where "space only" is indicated, make provisions for future installation of breakers.
- i. Directories: indicate load served by each circuit in panelboard.
- j. Directories: indicate source of service to panelboard (e.g., Panel PA served from Panel MDP).
- l. Type directories and mount in holder behind transparent protective covering.
- m. Panelboards: listed and labeled for their intended use.
- n. Panelboard nameplates: provided in accordance with paragraph FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES.

2.11.1 Enclosure

Provide panelboard enclosure in accordance with the following:

- a. **UL 50.**
- b. Cabinets mounted outdoors or flush-mounted: hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication.
- c. Cabinets: painted in accordance with paragraph PAINTING.
- e. Front edges of cabinets: form-flanged or fitted with structural shapes welded or riveted to the sheet steel, for supporting the panelboard front.
- f. All cabinets: fabricated such that no part of any surface on the finished cabinet deviates from a true plane by more than **1/8 inch**.
- g. Holes: provided in the back of indoor surface-mounted cabinets, with outside spacers and inside stiffeners, for mounting the cabinets with a **1/2 inch** clear space between the back of the cabinet and the wall surface.
- h. Flush doors: mounted on hinges that expose only the hinge roll to view when the door is closed.
- i. Each door: fitted with a combined catch and lock, except that doors over **24 inches** long provided with a three-point latch having a knob with a T-handle, and a cylinder lock.
- j. Keys: two provided with each lock, with all locks keyed alike.
- k. Finished-head cap screws: provided for mounting the panelboard fronts on the cabinets.

2.11.2 Panelboard Buses

Support bus bars on bases independent of circuit breakers. Design main buses and back pans so that breakers may be changed without machining, drilling, or tapping. Provide isolated neutral bus in each panel for connection of circuit neutral conductors. Provide separate ground bus identified as equipment grounding bus per [UL 67](#) for connecting grounding conductors; bond to steel cabinet. All buses within the panelboard shall be copper. No aluminum busing will be accepted.

2.11.3 Circuit Breakers

[UL 489](#), thermal magnetic-type having a minimum short-circuit current rating equal to the short-circuit current rating of the panelboard in which the circuit breaker will be mounted. Breaker terminals: UL listed as suitable for type of conductor provided. Series rated circuit breakers and plug-in circuit breakers are unacceptable.

2.11.3.1 Multipole Breakers

Provide common trip-type with single operating handle. Design breaker such that overload in one pole automatically causes all poles to open. Maintain phase sequence throughout each panel so that any three adjacent breaker poles are connected to Phases A, B, and C, respectively.

2.11.3.2 Circuit Breakers for HVAC Equipment

Provide circuit breakers for HVAC equipment having motors (group or individual) marked for use with HACR type and UL listed as HACR type.

2.12 ENCLOSED CIRCUIT BREAKERS

[UL 489](#). Individual molded case circuit breakers with voltage and continuous current ratings, number of poles, overload trip setting, and short circuit current interrupting rating as indicated. Enclosure type as indicated.

2.13 LOCKOUT REQUIREMENTS

Provide disconnecting means capable of being locked out for machines and other equipment to prevent unexpected startup or release of stored energy in accordance with [29 CFR 1910.147](#). Comply with requirements of Division 23, "Mechanical" for mechanical isolation of machines and other equipment.

2.14 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Provide on each item of equipment a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

2.15 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

Provide field fabricated nameplates in accordance with the following:

- a. [ASTM D709](#).
- b. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified or as indicated on the drawings.

- c. Each nameplate inscription: identify the function and, when applicable, the position.
- d. Nameplates: melamine plastic, 0.125 inch thick, black with white center core.
- f. Surface: matte finish. Corners: square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core.
- g. Minimum size of nameplates: one by 2.5 inches.
- h. Lettering size and style: a minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block style.

2.16 FIRESTOPPING MATERIALS

Provide firestopping around electrical penetrations in accordance with -local codes.

2.17 WIREWAYS

UL 870. Material: steel epoxy painted 16 gauge for heights and depths up to 6 by 6 inches, and 14 gauge for heights and depths up to 12 by 12 inches. Provide in length required for the application with screw cover NEMA 1 enclosure per NEMA ICS 6.

2.18 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

Provide parallel type surge protective devices (SPD) which comply with UL 1449 at the service entrance. Provide surge protectors in a NEMA 3R enclosure per NEMA ICS 6. Use Type 1 or Type 2 SPD and connect on the load side of a dedicated circuit breaker.

Provide the following modes of protection:

FOR SINGLE PHASE AND THREE PHASE WYE CONNECTED SYSTEMS-

- Phase to phase (L-L)
- Each phase to neutral (L-N)
- Neutral to ground (N-G)
- Phase to ground (L-G)

SPDs at the service entrance: provide with a minimum surge current rating of 80,000 amperes for L-L mode minimum and 40,000 amperes for other modes (L-N, L-G, and N-G).

Provide SPDs per NFPA 780 for the lightning protection system.

Maximum L-N, L-G, and N-G Voltage Protection Rating:

1,200V for 480Y/277V, three phase system

Maximum L-L Voltage Protection Rating:

1,200V for 480Y/277V, three phase system

The minimum MCOV (Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage) rating for L-N and L-G modes of operation: 120% of nominal voltage for 240 volts and below; 115% of nominal voltage above 240 volts to 480 volts.

2.19 FACTORY APPLIED FINISH

Provide factory-applied finish on electrical equipment in accordance with the following:

- a. **NEMA 250** corrosion-resistance test and the additional requirements as specified herein.
- b. Interior and exterior steel surfaces of equipment enclosures: thoroughly cleaned followed by a rust-inhibitive phosphatizing or equivalent treatment prior to painting.
- c. Exterior surfaces: free from holes, seams, dents, weld marks, loose scale or other imperfections.
- d. Interior surfaces: receive not less than one coat of corrosion-resisting paint in accordance with the manufacturer's standard practice.
- e. Exterior surfaces: primed, filled where necessary, and given not less than two coats baked enamel with semigloss finish.
- f. Equipment located indoors: ANSI Light Gray, and equipment located outdoors: ANSI Light Gray.
- g. Provide manufacturer's coatings for touch-up work and as specified in paragraph FIELD APPLIED PAINTING.

2.20 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Electrical installations, including weatherproof and hazardous locations and ducts, plenums and other air-handling spaces: conform to requirements of **NFPA 70** and **IEEE C2** and to requirements specified herein.

3.1.1 Wiring Methods

Provide insulated conductors installed in rigid steel conduit, IMC, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or EMT, except where specifically indicated or specified otherwise or required by **NFPA 70** to be installed otherwise. Grounding conductor: separate from electrical system neutral conductor. Provide insulated green equipment grounding conductor for circuit(s) installed in conduit and raceways. Shared neutral, or multi-wire branch circuits, are not permitted. Minimum conduit size: **3/4 inch** in diameter for low voltage lighting and power circuits.

3.1.1.1 Pull Wire

Install pull wires in empty conduits. Pull wire: plastic having minimum **200-pound** force tensile strength. Leave minimum **36 inches** of slack at each end of pull wire.

3.1.1.2 Metal Clad Cable

Install in accordance with **NFPA 70**, Type MC cable.

3.1.1.3 Armored Cable

Install in accordance with **NFPA 70**, Type AC cable.

3.1.2 Conduit Installation

Unless indicated otherwise, conceal conduit under floor slabs and within finished walls, ceilings, and floors. Keep conduit minimum **6 inches** away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot water pipes. Install conduit parallel with or at right angles to ceilings, walls, and structural members where located above accessible ceilings and where conduit will be visible after completion of project.

3.1.2.1 Restrictions Applicable to EMT

- a. Do not install underground.
- b. Do not encase in concrete, mortar, grout, or other cementitious materials.
- c. Do not use in areas subject to severe physical damage including but not limited to equipment rooms where moving or replacing equipment could physically damage the EMT.
- d. Do not use in hazardous areas.
- e. Do not use outdoors.
- f. Do not use in fire pump rooms.
- g. Do not use when the enclosed conductors must be shielded from the effects of High-altitude Electromagnetic Pulse (HEMP).

3.1.2.2 Restrictions Applicable to Flexible Conduit

Use only as specified in paragraph FLEXIBLE CONNECTIONS. **Maximum length of flexible conduit shall be no more than 6 feet and used as a final connection to equipment or light fixtures.**

3.1.2.3 Conduit Through Floor Slabs

Where conduits rise through floor slabs, do not allow curved portion of bends to be visible above finished slab.

3.1.2.4 Conduit Support

Support conduit by pipe straps, wall brackets, threaded rod conduit hangers, or ceiling trapeze. Fasten by wood screws to wood; by toggle bolts on hollow masonry units; by concrete inserts or expansion bolts on concrete or brick; and by machine screws, welded threaded studs, or spring-tension clamps on steel work. Threaded C-clamps may be used on rigid steel conduit only. Do not weld conduits or pipe straps to steel structures. Do not exceed one-fourth proof test load for load applied to fasteners. Provide vibration resistant and shock-resistant fasteners attached to concrete ceiling. Do not cut main reinforcing bars for any holes cut to depth of

more than 1 1/2 inches in reinforced concrete beams or to depth of more than 3/4 inch in concrete joints. Fill unused holes. In partitions of light steel construction, use sheet metal screws. In suspended-ceiling construction, run conduit above ceiling. Do not support conduit by ceiling support system. Conduit and box systems: supported independently of both (a) tie wires supporting ceiling grid system, and (b) ceiling grid system into which ceiling panels are placed. Do not share supporting means between electrical raceways and mechanical piping or ducts. Coordinate installation with above-ceiling mechanical systems to assure maximum accessibility to all systems. Spring-steel fasteners may be used for lighting branch circuit conduit supports in suspended ceilings in dry locations. expansion fitting that maintains conduit electrical continuity by bonding jumpers or other means. For conduits greater than 2 1/2 inches inside diameter, provide supports to resist forces of 0.5 times the equipment weight in any direction and 1.5 times the equipment weight in the downward direction.

3.1.2.5 Directional Changes in Conduit Runs

Make changes in direction of runs with symmetrical bends or cast-metal fittings. Make field-made bends and offsets with hickey or conduit-bending machine. Do not install crushed or deformed conduits. Avoid trapped conduits. Prevent plaster, dirt, or trash from lodging in conduits, boxes, fittings, and equipment during construction. Free clogged conduits of obstructions.

3.1.2.6 Locknuts and Bushings

Fasten conduits to sheet metal boxes and cabinets with two locknuts where required by NFPA 70, where insulated bushings are used, and where bushings cannot be brought into firm contact with the box; otherwise, use at least minimum single locknut and bushing. Provide locknuts with sharp edges for digging into wall of metal enclosures. Install bushings on ends of conduits, and provide insulating type where required by NFPA 70.

3.1.2.7 Flexible Connections

Provide flexible steel conduit between 3 and 6 feet in length for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures; for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for motors. Install flexible conduit to allow 20 percent slack. Minimum flexible steel conduit size: 1/2 inch diameter. Provide liquidtight flexible conduit in wet and damp locations for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, movement or motors. Provide separate ground conductor across flexible connections.

3.1.3 Boxes, Outlets, and Supports

Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures. Boxes for metallic raceways: cast-metal, hub-type when located in wet locations, when surface mounted on outside of exterior surfaces, and when specifically indicated. In open overhead spaces, cast boxes threaded to raceways need not be separately supported except where used for fixture support; support sheet metal boxes directly from building structure or by bar hangers. Where bar hangers are used, attach bar to raceways on opposite sides of box, and support raceway with approved-type fastener maximum 24 inches from box. When penetrating reinforced concrete members, avoid cutting reinforcing steel.

3.1.3.1 Boxes

Boxes for use with raceway systems: minimum 1 1/2 inches deep, except where shallower boxes required by structural conditions are approved. Boxes for other than lighting fixture outlets: minimum 4 inches square, except that 4 by 2 inch boxes may be used where only one raceway enters outlet.

3.1.3.2 Pull Boxes

Construct of at least minimum size required by NFPA 70 of code-gauge aluminum or galvanized sheet steel, except where cast-metal boxes are required in locations specified herein. Provide boxes with screw-fastened covers. Where several feeders pass through common pull box, tag feeders to indicate clearly electrical characteristics, circuit number, and panel designation.

3.1.4 Mounting Heights

Mount panelboards, circuit breakers, and disconnecting switches so height of operating handle at its highest position is maximum 78 inches above floor.

3.1.5 Conductor Identification

Provide conductor identification within each enclosure where tap, splice, or termination is made. For conductors No. 6 AWG and smaller diameter, provide color coding by factory-applied, color-impregnated insulation. For conductors No. 4 AWG and larger diameter, provide color coding by plastic-coated, self-sticking markers; colored nylon cable ties and plates; or heat shrink-type sleeves.

3.1.5.1 Marking Strips

Provide marking strips in accordance with the following:

- a. Provide white or other light-colored plastic marking strips, fastened by screws to each terminal block, for wire designations.
- b. Use permanent ink for the wire numbers
- c. Provide reversible marking strips to permit marking both sides, or provide two marking strips with each block.
- d. Size marking strips to accommodate the two sets of wire numbers.
- e. Assign a device designation in accordance with NEMA ICS 1 to each device to which a connection is made. Mark each device terminal to which a connection is made with a distinct terminal marking corresponding to the wire designation used on the Contractor's schematic and connection diagrams.
- f. The wire (terminal point) designations used on the Contractor's wiring diagrams and printed on terminal block marking strips may be according to the Contractor's standard practice; however, provide additional wire and cable designations for identification of remote (external) circuits for the Government's wire designations.
- g. Prints of the marking strips drawings submitted for approval will be so marked and returned to the Contractor for addition of the designations

to the terminal strips and tracings, along with any rearrangement of points required.

3.1.6 Splices

Make splices in accessible locations. Make splices in conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter with insulated, pressure-type connector. Make splices in conductors No. 8 AWG and larger diameter with solderless connector, and cover with insulation material equivalent to conductor insulation.

3.1.7 Covers and Device Plates

Install with edges in continuous contact with finished wall surfaces without use of mats or similar devices. Plaster fillings are not permitted. Install plates with alignment tolerance of 1/16 inch. Use of sectional-type device plates are not permitted. Provide gasket for plates installed in wet locations.

3.1.8 Electrical Penetrations

Seal openings around electrical penetrations through fire resistance-rated walls, partitions, floors, or ceilings in accordance with local codes.

3.1.9 Grounding and Bonding

Provide in accordance with NFPA 70. Ground exposed, non-current-carrying metallic parts of electrical equipment, metallic raceway systems, grounding conductor in metallic and nonmetallic raceways, telecommunications system grounds, and neutral conductor of wiring systems. In addition to the requirements specified herein, provide telecommunications grounding in accordance with TIA-607. Where ground fault protection is employed, ensure that connection of ground and neutral does not interfere with correct operation of fault protection.

3.1.10 Equipment Connections

Provide power wiring for the connection of motors and control equipment under this section of the specification. Except as otherwise specifically noted or specified, automatic control wiring, control devices, and protective devices within the control circuitry are not included in this section of the specifications and are provided under the section specifying the associated equipment.

3.1.11 Repair of Existing Work

Perform repair of existing work, demolition, and modification of existing electrical distribution systems as follows:

3.1.11.1 Workmanship

Lay out work in advance. Exercise care where cutting, channeling, chasing, or drilling of floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, or other surfaces is necessary for proper installation, support, or anchorage of conduit, raceways, or other electrical work. Repair damage to buildings, piping, and equipment using skilled craftsmen of trades involved.

3.1.11.2 Existing Concealed Wiring to be Removed

Disconnect existing concealed wiring to be removed from its source. Remove conductors; cut conduit flush with floor, underside of floor, and through walls; and seal openings.

3.1.11.3 Continuation of Service

Maintain continuity of existing circuits of equipment to remain. Maintain existing circuits of equipment energized. Restore circuits wiring and power which are to remain but were disturbed during demolition back to original condition.

3.2 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

3.3 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Where field painting of enclosures for panelboards, load centers or the like is specified to match adjacent surfaces, to correct damage to the manufacturer's factory applied coatings, or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria, provide manufacturer's recommended coatings and apply in accordance to manufacturer's instructions.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Furnish test equipment and personnel and submit written copies of test results. Give Contracting Officer 5 working days notice prior to each test.

3.4.1 Devices Subject to Manual Operation

Operate each device subject to manual operation at least five times, demonstrating satisfactory operation each time.

3.4.2 600-Volt Wiring Test

Test wiring rated 600 volt and less to verify that no short circuits or accidental grounds exist. Perform insulation resistance tests on wiring No. 6 AWG and larger diameter using instrument which applies voltage of approximately 500 volts to provide direct reading of resistance. Minimum resistance: 250,000 ohms.

3.4.3 Grounding System Test

Test grounding system to ensure continuity, and that resistance to ground is not excessive. Test each ground rod for resistance to ground before making connections to rod; tie grounding system together and test for resistance to ground. Make resistance measurements in dry weather, not earlier than 48 hours after rainfall. Submit written results of each test to Contracting Officer, and indicate location of rods as well as resistance and soil conditions at time measurements were made.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 41 00

LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM

11/13

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 81 (2012) Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14) National Electrical Code

NFPA 780 (2017) Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 467 (2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 96 (2016a) UL Standard for Safety Lightning Protection Components

UL Electrical Constructn (2012) Electrical Construction Equipment Directory

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Verification of Dimensions

Confirm all details of work, verify all dimensions in field, and advise Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing work. Obtain prior approval of Contracting Officer before making any departures from the design.

1.2.2 System Requirements

Provide a system furnished under this specification consisting of the latest UL Listed products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in production of lightning protection system components. Comply with **NFPA 70**, **NFPA 780**, and **UL 96**.

1.2.3 Lightning Protection System Installers Documentation

Provide documentation showing that the installer is certified with a commercial third-party inspection company whose sole work is lightning protection, or is a UL Listed Lightning Protection Installer. In either case, the documentation must show that they have completed and passed the requirements for certification or listing, and have a minimum of 2 years documented experience installing lightning protection systems for DoD projects of similar scope and complexity.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval.. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Overall lightning protection system; G

Each major component; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test Plan; G

Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test; G

SD-07 Certificates

Lightning Protection System Installers Documentation; G

Component UL Listed and Labeled; G

Lightning protection system inspection certificate; G

Roof manufacturer's warranty; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

In each standard referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word "shall" or "must" has been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these standards to "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean Contracting Officer.

1.4.1 Installation Drawings

1.4.1.1 Overall System Drawing

Submit installation shop drawing for the [overall lightning protection system](#). Include on the drawings the physical layout of the equipment (plan view and elevations), mounting details, relationship to other parts of the work, and wiring diagrams.

1.4.1.2 Major Components

Submit detail drawings for **each major component** including manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature, catalog cuts, and installation instructions.

1.4.2 Component UL Listed and Labeled

Submit proof of compliance that components are UL Listed and Labeled. Listing alone in **UL Electrical Constructn**, which is the UL Electrical Construction Directory, is not acceptable evidence. In lieu of Listed and Labeled, submit written certificate from an approved, nationally recognized testing organization equipped to perform such services, stating that items have been tested and conform to requirements and testing methods of Underwriters Laboratories.

1.4.3 Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test Plan

Provide a lightning protection and grounding system test plan. Detail both the visual inspection and electrical testing of the system and components in the test plan. Identify (number) the system test points/locations along with a listing or description of the item to be tested and the type of test to be conducted. As a minimum, include a sketch of the facility and surrounding lightning protection system as part of the specific test plan for each structure. Include the requirements specified in paragraph, "Testing of Integral Lightning Protection System" in the test plan.

1.4.4 Lightning Protection System Inspection Certificate

Provide certification from a commercial third-party inspection company whose sole work is lightning protection, stating that the lightning protection system complies with **NFPA 780**. Third party inspection company cannot be the system installer or the system designer. Alternatively, provide a UL Lightning Protection Inspection Master Label Certificate for each facility indicating compliance to **NFPA 780**.

Inspection must cover every connection, air terminal, conductor, fastener, accessible grounding point and other components of the lightning protection system to ensure 100% system compliance. This includes witnessing the tests for the resistance measurements for ground rods with test wells, and for continuity measurements for bonds. It also includes verification of proper surge protective devices for power, data and telecommunication systems. Random sampling or partial inspection of a facility is not acceptable.

1.5 SITE CONDITIONS

Confirm all details of work, verify all dimensions in field, and advise Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing work. Obtain prior approval of Contracting Officer before changing the design.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Do not use a combination of materials that forms an electrolytic couple of such nature that corrosion is accelerated in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from the junction of such metals. Where unusual conditions exist which would cause corrosion of conductors,

provide conductors with protective coatings, such as tin or lead, or oversize conductors. Where a mechanical hazard is involved, increase conductor size to compensate for the hazard or protect conductors. When metallic conduit or tubing is provided, electrically bond conductor to conduit or tubing at the upper and lower ends by clamp type connectors or welds (including exothermic). All lightning protection components, such as bonding plates, air terminals, air terminal supports and braces, chimney bands, clips, connector fittings, and fasteners are to comply with the requirements of [UL 96](#) classes as applicable.

2.1.1 Main and Bonding Conductors

[NFPA 780](#) and [UL 96](#) Class I, Class II, or Class II modified materials as applicable.

2.2 COMPONENTS

2.2.1 Air Terminals

Provide solid air terminals with a blunt tip. Tubular air terminals are not permitted. Support air terminals more than [24 inches](#) in length by suitable brace, supported at not less than one-half the height of the terminal.

2.2.2 Ground Rods

Provide ground rods made of copper-clad steel conforming to conform to [UL 467](#). Provide ground rods that are not less than [3/4 inch](#) in diameter and [10 feet](#) in length. Do not mix ground rods of copper-clad steel or solid copper on the job.

2.2.3 Connections and Terminations

Provide connectors for splicing conductors that conform to [UL 96](#), class as applicable. Conductor connections can be made by clamps or welds (including exothermic). Provide style and size connectors required for the installation.

2.2.4 Connector Fittings

Provide connector fittings for "end-to-end", "Tee", or "Y" splices that conform to [NFPA 780](#) and [UL 96](#).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INTEGRAL SYSTEM

Provide a lightning protection system that meets the requirements of [NFPA 780](#). Lightning protection system consists of air terminals, roof conductors, down conductors, ground connections, and grounding electrodes. Expose conductors on the structures except where conductors are required to be in protective sleeves. Bond secondary conductors with grounded metallic parts within the building. Make interconnections within side-flash distances at or below the level of the grounded metallic parts.

3.1.1 Roof-Mounted Components

Coordinate with the roofing manufacturer and provide certification that the [roof manufacturer's warranty](#) is not violated by the installation methods for air terminals and roof conductors.

3.1.1.1 Air Terminals

Use adhesive shoes with adhesive approved by the roof manufacturer when installing air terminals on "rubber" (EPDM) type roofs. In areas of snow or constant wind, ensure that a section of roofing material (minimum dimensional area of 1 square foot) is first glued to the roof and then the air terminal is glued to it unless the roof manufacturer recommends another solution.

3.1.1.2 Roof Conductors

Use adhesive shoes with adhesive approved by the roof manufacturer when installing roof conductors on "rubber" (EPDM) type roofs.

3.1.2 Down Conductors

Protect exposed down conductors from physical damage as required by NFPA 780. Use Schedule 80 PVC to protect down conductors. Paint the Schedule 80 PVC to match the surrounding surface with paint that is approved for use on PVC.

3.1.3 Ground Connections

Attach each down conductor to ground rods by welding (including exothermic), brazing, or compression. All connections to ground rods below ground level must be by exothermic weld connection or with a high compression connection using a hydraulic or electric compression tool to provide the correct circumferential pressure. Accessible connections above ground level and in test wells can be accomplished by mechanical clamping.

3.1.4 Grounding Electrodes

Extend driven ground rods vertically into the existing undisturbed earth for a distance of not less 10 feet. Set ground rods not less than 3 feet nor more than 8 feet, from the structure foundation, and at least beyond the drip line for the facility. After the completed installation, measure the total resistance to ground using the fall-of-potential method described in IEEE 81. Maximum allowed resistance of a driven ground rod is 25 ohms, under normally dry conditions. Contact the Contracting Officer for direction on how to proceed when two of any three ground rods, driven not less than 10 feet into the ground, a minimum of 10 feet apart, and equally spaced around the perimeter, give a combined value exceeding 50 ohms immediately after having driven.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

3.2.1 Nonmetallic Exterior Walls with Metallic Roof

Bond metal roof sections together which are insulated from each other so that they are electrically continuous, having a surface contact of at least 3 square inches.

3.3 INTERFACE WITH OTHER STRUCTURES

3.4 RESTORATION

Where sod has been removed, place sod as soon as possible after completing the backfilling. Restore, to original condition, the areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Overfill to accommodate for settling. Include necessary topsoil, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging or mulching in any restoration. Maintain disturbed surfaces and replacements until final acceptance.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.5.1 [Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test](#)

Test the lightning protection and grounding system to ensure continuity is not in excess of 1 ohm and that resistance to ground is not in excess of 25 ohms. Provide documentation for the measured values at each test point. Test the ground rod for resistance to ground before making connections to the rod. Tie the grounding system together and test for resistance to ground. Make resistance measurements in dry weather, not earlier than 48 hours after rainfall. Include in the written report: locations of test points, measured values for continuity and ground resistances, and soil conditions at the time that measurements were made. Submit results of each test to the Contracting Officer.

-- End of Section --